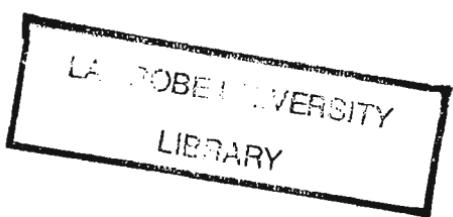


499.9925
C877G
1914



A
GRAMMAR AND COMMENTARY
ON THE
INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGE
ESPERANTO.

Translations by the same Author:

“ALI BABA, AŬ LA KVARDEK RABISTOJ.” Price, 4d.;
post free, 4½d.

“ALADIN, AŬ LA MIRINDA LAMPO.” Price, 6d.;
post free, 7d.

PUBLISHED BY
THE BRITISH ESPERANTO ASSOCIATION
(INCORPORATED),
133—136, HIGH HOLBORN, LONDON.

A
GRAMMAR AND COMMENTARY
ON THE
INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGE
ESPERANTO.

COMPILED BY
MAJOR-GENERAL GEORGE COX,
B.A. (CANTAB.).

THIRD EDITION.
REVISED.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

NEW YORK:
'NORTH AMERICAN REVIEW,' FRANKLIN SQUARE.
LONDON:
BRITISH ESPERANTO ASSOCIATION
(INCORPORATED),
133-136, HIGH HOLBORN.

499.9925
C877g
1914 d



CHATHAM:
W. & J. MACKAY & CO., LTD.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

ESPERANTO is the International Auxiliary Language created by Dr. L. L. Zamenhof, a doctor of medicine, residing at Warsaw, Poland. It is hardly now necessary to mention this fact, but there was a time, not very long ago, when many people thought that Esperanto was a patent medicine, or new kind of soap, or, in fact, anything except a language!

Its aim is not to displace existing languages, but to be a second language for the world, and its merits are now recognised by many eminent men of all nationalities. If we consider the enormous advantages of a common language, understood by all, we shall at once confess what a blessing Dr. Zamenhof has conferred upon mankind, for :—

Firstly.—It enables anyone to correspond on any topic, social, commercial, or scientific, with persons of all nationalities.

Secondly.—Books of all descriptions can at once be translated into this common language, and sold all over the world; consequently scientific and medical men will not have to wait, perhaps years, before some important treatise appears in their own language.

There is already an International Science Review (*Internacia Scienca Revuo*) published monthly, and also a Medical Review (*Internacia Revuo Medicina*), containing articles by eminent scientists, medical men, and others. Lovers of fiction would also have at command the works of all the best foreign novelists.

Thirdly.—At international congresses the speeches and discussions could be in Esperanto, and understood by all present, the aid of interpreters being unnecessary, by which great saving of time would be effected.

Fourthly.—Treaties and Conventions with foreign Powers could be drawn up in the international language, and there would be no difficulty in determining their exact signification. Take, for instance, the recent treaty of peace between Russia and Japan. The official copies of this treaty were drawn up in French and English, neither of which was the national language of the countries which the plenipotentiaries represented.

Esperanto was first introduced into England by Mr. Joseph Rhodes, of Keighley, Yorkshire, who formed the first group in that town in 1902. Shortly afterwards, in January, 1903, a group was formed in London, under the auspices of Mr. W. T. Stead, Miss E. A. Lawrence, and Mr. J. C. O'Connor, M.A., Ph.D., which resulted in the foundation of the present London Esperanto Club. The first English-Esperanto Gazette was founded by Mr. H. Bolingbroke Mudie in November, 1903; this was followed in January,

1905, by *The British Esperantist*, which is the official organ of the *British Esperanto Association*. Progress in the language was at first slow, but it is now advancing by leaps and bounds, and there are at present in England, Ireland, and Scotland some 60* societies, groups, and clubs, affiliated to the *British Esperanto Association*. There is also now an American Esperanto Association, with already a large number of energetic groups; and the Esperanto Society of India has just been formed.

I hope that those who take up this Commentary on Esperanto will not think it necessary to wade through all its pages before they can read and write the language. All that is necessary for this purpose is to read the 16 simple rules, written by Dr. Zamenhof himself (para. 94), and a few paragraphs and examples on the Formation of Words (40), and on the Parts of Speech (103), (107), (125), (149), (159), (238), (249), (262). This can easily be done in two or three hours; and then, with the aid of a small English Dictionary, you will be able to write a letter in Esperanto, which will be readily understood by any Esperantist.

Or, you can buy for a few pence various primers, first lessons or instruction books, most of which contain a small vocabulary of common words. A tiny book, costing $\frac{1}{2}$ d., called the "Esperanto Key," weighing $\frac{1}{2}$ th of an ounce, by Ĉefeĉ, containing a vocabulary of

* In 1907 more than 80.

over 1,500 roots, with explanations of the suffixes, formation of words, etc., etc., gives you the language in a nutshell. This little book is already published in eight different European languages ; and Chinese and Japanese editions are in preparation. If you wish to correspond with anyone of a different nation, all you have to do is to write your letter in Esperanto, enclose the "Esperanto Key" in the language of the person you are writing to, and he will understand your letter. This, you may say, is pure nonsense, but I assure you it is true, for on several occasions I have done this myself. In all cases my letters were thoroughly understood, and in two cases I received replies written in Esperanto, within three days of my writing, from persons who had never previously read a word in the language ; these replies were in perfectly good Esperanto, with only one or two trifling errors, and I was quite amazed when I got them. I sent one to the editor of "The Esperantist," and he informed me he had had letters equally good, and that, in fact, it was quite a common experience.

But then you will say, "What is the use of this Commentary ?" Well, it is compiled for the use of those who wish to go deeper into the study of this delightful, logical, flexible, and sonorous language, and who wish to write and speak it, not merely sufficiently well so as to be understood, but to write and speak it in good style. Esperanto, although so extraordinarily

easy to learn, has, like every national language, a certain style and elegance of expression of its own. If we translate French, or any other foreign language, literally into English, we see how bald and strange it reads, and probably some sentences would be unintelligible. A language literally translated into Esperanto would be quite intelligible to persons of all nationalities, owing to the latter being a purely logical, clear, and unidiomatic language, and to the use of the accusative case; but the literal translation might be wanting in style, grace, and smoothness, for the order of the words, although perfectly correct grammatically, might, in some cases, entail harshness of sound, and so the easy flow and euphony of the language would be lost.

The standard book for good style in the language is the “Fundamenta Krestomatio” (Fundamental Chrestomathy), or book of extracts for studying a language. This book, containing 458 pages of prose and verse on numerous subjects, was published by Dr. Zamenhof in 1903, and all the articles in it were either written by himself, or if written, as many were, by the best writers of other nationalities, were corrected by him to such a degree that they do not differ from the Doctor's own style.

The more the student studies this language, the more he will wonder how it could have been created by the brain of one man; for we must remember that Esperanto was not devised by a group of learned men

of different nationalities, bringing the knowledge of their own language to bear upon the construction of an entirely new language, but that it was born of one individual after years of intense thought and labour, and it is marvellous how he has discarded the illogical, and introduced the logical and best points of all the European and dead languages into Esperanto. How this result was obtained can best be shown by a short history of the language, taken generally from the Doctor's article on the subject in the "Krestomatio," page 241, and also from a letter he wrote to a friend, which was first printed by his consent in 1896, and reproduced in "Esperantaj Prozaĵoj," page 239.

THE ORIGIN OF ESPERANTO.

Doctor Ludovic Zamenhof, Doctor of Medicine, the inventor of Esperanto, was born on the 3rd December, 1859, at Bialystok (Bjelostok), in the Government of Grodno, West Russia, where he spent his boyhood. The inhabitants of Bjelostok were of four different nationalities, Russians, Poles, Germans, and Jews, all speaking different languages, and generally on bad terms with each other. The boy's impressionable nature caused him to reflect that this animosity was occasioned by diversity of language, and thus the first seeds of the idea of an International Language were sown. Even at an early age Dr. Zamenhof came to the conclusion that an international language was possible only if it were neutral, belonging to no nationality in particular. When he passed from the Bjelostok gymnasium to the second classical school at Warsaw he was for some time allured by the dead languages and dreamed of travelling through

the world to revive one of them for common use, but he was eventually convinced that this was impracticable, owing to the mass of grammatical forms and ponderous dictionaries of those languages.

In his boyhood he learnt French and German, and began to work out the idea of his new language, but when, in the 5th Class of the Gymnasium, he began to study English, the simplicity of its grammar was a revelation to him, and his own grammar soon melted down to a few pages without causing any loss to the language. But his giant vocabularies left him no peace of mind.

He tried to use similar economy in his dictionary as in the grammar, thinking that it did not matter what form a word took if it had a given meaning ; so he began to invent words, taking care only that they should be as short as possible. For instance, he argued that the word "conversation" has 12 letters ; why should not the same idea be conveyed by two, say "pa" ? He tried this by simply writing the shortest and most easily pronounced mathematical series of joined letters, and to these he gave a defined meaning, e.g., ab, ac, ad,...ba, ca, da,...eb, ec, ed,...etc. He, however, soon abandoned this idea, as he found these invented words very difficult to learn, and hard to remember, and thus he came to the conclusion that the word material for the dictionary must be Romance-Teutonic, changed only as regularity and other important conditions of the language required. He soon remarked that the present spoken languages possessed an immense store of ready-made international words known by all nations, and he commenced at once to make use of this unlimited supply.

One day, when he was in the 6th or 7th Class at the gymnasium, he, by chance, observed that the signs over shops had certain terminations, as we might notice in England, for instance, "Surgery," "Bakery," etc., and it then struck him for the first

time that these terminations had certain meanings, and that by using a number of suffixes, each always having the same meaning, he might make out of one word many others that need not be separately learnt. This thought shed a ray of light upon his great and terrible vocabularies, and he cried out "The problem is solved!" He at once understood how important it was to make use of this power, which, in the national languages, plays only a blind, irregular and incomplete rôle. So he began to compare words and to search out the constant and defined relationship between them. He cast out of his vocabularies a vast series of words, substituting for each huge mass a single suffix, which had always a certain fixed relationship to a root-word. He next remarked that certain words, which he had hitherto regarded as purely roots, might easily become formed words and disappear from the dictionary, such as *patr-ino* (mother), *mal-larga* (narrow), *tranê-ilo* (knife). Soon after this the Doctor had in manuscript the whole grammar and a small vocabulary.

In 1878, when he was in the 8th Class at the gymnasium, the language was more or less ready, and his fellow students commenced to study it. On the 17th December, 1878, they celebrated the birth of the language by a banquet, at which a hymn was sung, the commencing words being as follows.—

Malamikete de las nacjes
 Kadó, kadó, jam temp' está !
 La tot' homoze in familje
 Konunigare so debá.

The language then was very different from what it is now, as the following translation will show :—

Malamikeco de la nacioj
 Falu, falu, jam tempo estas !
 La tutá homaro en familion
 Unuiĝi devas.

" Let the enmity of nations fall, fall, for the hour is come
 All mankind must be united in one family."

On the table, in addition to the grammar and dictionary, were some translations in the new language.

The Doctor's fellow students were at first enthusiastic, but meeting with ridicule when they tried to discuss the language with their elders, they soon renounced it, and the Doctor hid his work from all eyes.

After he left school and was at the University, for five years and a-half he never spoke of it to anyone. This secrecy tormented him. Compelled to conceal his thoughts and plans, he went scarcely anywhere, took part in nothing, and the best period of his life, his student years, were, for him, his saddest. Occasionally he sought society, but it failed to enliven him, and he then tried to tranquillise his mind by writing poems in the language he was elaborating.

For six years he worked at perfecting and testing it. This gave him plenty of work, notwithstanding he had considered it ready in 1878; but severe trials showed him that, although it might be ready in theory, it was not so in practice. He had much to cut out, alter, and radically transform. Words, forms, principles, and postulates opposed one another in practice, although each, taken separately, appeared in theory right. Such things as the universal preposition *je*, the elastic verb *meti* (to put), the neutral, but definite, ending *aū*, would probably never have entered his head had he proceeded only on theory. Some forms, which appeared to him to possess a mine of wealth, were shown in practice to be useless ballast, and, on this account, he discarded several unnecessary suffixes.

He had thought, in the year 1878, that it was sufficient for the language to have a grammar and vocabulary; the heaviness and want of grace of the language he ascribed to his not knowing it sufficiently

well; but practice always kept convincing him that the language required an indescribable “something,” a uniting element, giving it life and soul. He therefore avoided all literal translations, and commenced to *think* in the language.

He soon noticed that his new language was not a mere shadowy reflection of the language he happened to be translating, but was becoming imbued with a life and spirit of its own, and was now no mere lifeless mixture of words. It flowed of itself as flexibly, gracefully, and freely as his own native tongue.

However, another circumstance delayed for a long time its public appearance. He knew that everyone would say “Your language will be useful to me only when the whole world accepts it, therefore, I shall not learn it until I find everyone else is adopting it.” This problem gave him much thought, till at last it struck him that correspondence was carried on in cipher by means of a key possessed by both parties. This gave him his great idea, namely, to construct his language in the fashion of such a key by inserting in it not only the vocabulary, but the whole grammar in its separate elements. Such a key, alphabetically arranged, would enable anyone possessing the key, giving the meaning of the elements in his own language, to understand without further ado a letter written in Esperanto.

Dr. Zamenhof illustrates this in the “Krestomatio,” page 249, by the following sentence:—“I do not know where I left my stick; did you not see it?” Now supposing that a German wished to write this to an Englishman or person of any other nationality, he would translate it from the German into Esperanto as follows, dividing the words into their elements by hyphens:—

*Mi ne sci-as, kie mi las-is mi-a-n baston-o-n; ĉu vi
gi-n ne vid-is?*

The Englishman, on receiving the letter, turns to his Esperanto dictionary, or to the Ĉefek Key, if it be enclosed, and reads as follows:—

MI	=I	<i>I</i>
NE	=no, not	<i>not</i>
SCI.	=know	<i>know</i>
{ -AS	=ending of present tense of verb	<i>where</i>
KIE	=where	
MI	=I	<i>I</i>
{ LAS.	=leave	<i>left</i> or <i>have</i>
{ -IS	=ending of past tense of verb	<i>left</i>
{ MI.	=I	
{ -A-	=ending of an adjective (nom. case)	<i>my</i>
{ -N	=ending for the objective case	
BASTON.	=stick	
{ -O-	=ending of noun (nom. case)	<i>stick</i>
{ -N	=ending for the objective case	
CU	=whether; asks a question	<i>whether</i>
VI	=you	<i>you</i>
{ GI-	=it (nom. case)	<i>it</i>
{ -N	=ending for the objective case	
NE	=no, not	<i>not</i>
{ VID-	=see	<i>saw</i> , or <i>did</i>
{ -IS	=ending of past tense of verb	<i>see</i> , or <i>have</i> <i>seen</i>

The above, therefore, in bald English is “I not know where I left my stick; whether you it not have seen (*or*, did see)?” Now this is perfectly comprehensible to any Englishman. But some may say “But if the German had written in his own language, and I had a German dictionary, I could quite as easily have made out his meaning.” Now the following is the German for this sentence:—*Ich weiss nicht wo ich meinen Stock gelassen habe; haben Sie ihn nicht gesehen?*

On referring to the German dictionary, and looking out the words, he would find:—ICH = I, WEISS = white, NICHT = not, WO = where, ICH = I, MEINEN = to think, STOCK = stick, GELASSEN = composed, calm, HABE = property, goods, HABEN = to have, SIE = she, her, it, they, them, you, IHN = (not in the dictionary), NICHT = not, GESEHEN = (not in the dictionary). Therefore the sentence

would read :—*I white not where I to think stick composed property ; to have she (blank) not (blank).*

It would be rather difficult to gather the meaning of this !

On leaving the university, Dr. Zamenhof commenced his medical practice, and began to consider the publication of his language. He prepared the manuscript of his first brochure, "An International Language, by Dr. Esperanto, Preface and Full Manual," and sought out a publisher. For two years he sought in vain, the financial question meeting him at every turn, but at length, after strenuous efforts, he succeeded in publishing the brochure himself, in 1887. He had "crossed the Rubicon," and Esperanto was given to the World !

Before concluding this preface let me give a word of advice to learners. Do not think, after a few days' study, as many do, that you can improve the language. If you have such thoughts, put down on a piece of paper your youthful would-be improvements, and think no more of them till you have a really good knowledge of the language. Then read them over, and they will go at once into the waste-paper basket ! or, perhaps, be preserved as curiosities ! The most skilled Esperantists have had these thoughts, and have wasted valuable time in thinking them out, only to find at last that the more they studied Esperanto, the less they found it needed alteration. This is what Dr. Zamenhof himself says on the point :—"As the author of the language, I naturally, more than anyone else, would wish that it should be as perfect as possible; it is more difficult for me than others to hold back from fancied improvements, and I

have at times been tempted to propose to Esperantists some slight alterations, but I bore in mind the great danger of this step and abandoned my intention." Copy the Doctor in this, and whatever you do, do not attempt to put your crude ideas of improvement into *print*.

In compiling this Commentary, my thanks are due to the following works I have consulted :—

"Fundamenta Krestomatio," by Dr. Zamenhof.

"Fundamento de Esperanto," by Dr. Zamenhof.

"The Student's Complete Text Book," by Mr. J. C. O'Connor, B.A.

"Grammaire et Exercices," "Commentaire sur la Grammaire Esperanto," "Ekzercoj de Aplikado," "Texte Synthetique," all by M. L. de Beaufront.

"Esperanto Sintakso," by M. Paul Fruictier.

Various articles in "The Esperantist" and "The British Esperantist" gazettes.

As regards personal assistance, Mr. Bolingbroke Mudie very kindly looked over the MS. before its completion.

In preparing the manuscript for publication, my warmest thanks are due to Mr. E. A. Millidge, F.B.E.A., who took infinite pains in correcting errors of all kinds. And I must take occasion here to say that any points of grammar that may be found incorrect, or failure in making explanations clear to learners, are, in all probability, due to my not strictly following his suggestions.

21st August, 1906.

GEORGE COX.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

IN this Second Edition of the "Grammar and Commentary" the press and other errors which appeared in the first edition have been corrected, and the book has been revised throughout; the text also has been altered, where explanations were not quite clear.

In Part I. an attempt has been made to give a nearer approach to the proper pronunciation of the vowels which differ in sound from those in English. In Part II. the use of some of the pronouns, relative words, and adverbs has been more fully explained, and fresh pages have been added to the verb section, showing, by numerous examples, the rendering of the common English verbs "*can, could, may, might, shall, will, should, would, must, ought*." In Part V. additions have been made in the list of useful words and expressions.

My thanks, for their kind assistance in the revision of the book, are especially due to Mr. E. A. Millidge, Mr. A. E. Wackrill, Mr. J. W. Warden (President of the Edinburgh Group), Mr. M. C. Butler, Mr. G. W. Bullen, Dr. R. Legge, Mr. W. Bailey, Mr. C. P.

Blackham, Mr. P. J. Cameron, Mr. H. Clegg, Mr. W. Morrison, Mr. G. Ledger, and many other kind Esperantists, who have written to me pointing out errors and giving useful suggestions.

Even in this second edition I fear that some errors will be found, and I shall, therefore, be extremely obliged if Esperantists will kindly point out to me any they may meet with.

12th April, 1907.

GEORGE COX.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

In this Third Edition of the "Grammar and Commentary" I have again to thank many kind Esperantist friends for assisting me in correcting errors, and for their advice in pointing out desirable alterations and improvements.

The book has been carefully revised, and a few additions have been made, which I trust will be found useful.

GEORGE COX.

L' ESPERO.

En la mondon venis nova sento,
Tra la mondo iras forta voko ;
Per flugiloj de facila vento
Nun de loko flugu ĝi al loko.

Ne al glavo sangon soifanta
Ĝi la homan tiras familion :
Al la mond' eterne militanta
Ĝi promesas sanktan harmonion.

Sub la sankta signo de l' espero
Kolektiĝas pacaj batalantoj,
Kaj rapide kreskas la afero
Per laboro de la esperantoj.

Forte staras muroj de miljaroj
Inter la popoloj dividitaj ;
Sed dissaltos la obstinaj baroj,
Per la sankta amo disbatitaj.

Sur neŭtrala lingva fundamento,
Komprenante unu la alian,
La popoloj faros en konsento
Unu grandan rondon familialan.

Nia diligenta kolegaro
En laboro paca ne lacigos,
Ĝis la bela songo de l' homaro
Por eterna ben' efektivigos.

L. ZAMENHOF.

El *Fundamenta Krestomatio*.

HOPE.

A new sentiment has come into the world,
A mighty call is passing through the land ;
On wings of light breeze
From place to place now let it fly.

Not to the sword thirsting for blood
Does it draw the family of mankind :
To the ever-warring world
It promises holy harmony.

Under the sacred sign of hope
Peaceful combatants are gathering,
And the cause is rapidly growing
Through the labour of the hopeful.

Strongly stand the walls of thousands of years
Between the divided peoples ;
But the obstinate barriers shall leap asunder,
Beaten down by sacred love.

On a neutral lingual foundation,
Understanding one another,
The peoples shall form in agreement
One great family circle.

Our diligent colleagues
Will not weary of their peaceful labour,
Until the beautiful dream of mankind
For eternal blessing shall be realised.

Literal Translation.

AL LA REĜO.

Vivu la reĝ' al ni, tre longe vivu li !
Gardu lin Di' !

Justa kaj pia reĝ',—Dio pro nia preĝ'
Estu kun li.

Forta la reĝa tron', ver' estas lia kron',
Glavo la leg'.
Kun amo en la kor', reĝas kun granda glor'...
Vivu la reĝ' !

Brulu, ho sankta flam' de la eterna am'
Pro la patruj' !
Kaj forte staros ni, ĉiuj por unu li
Pro la patruj' !

Longe, ho, restu vi gloro de la naci',
Sur reĝa seĝ' !
Via plej granda glor' en la popola kor'.
Vivu la reĝ' !

L. ZAMENHOF.

El *Fundamenta Krestomatio*.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

	PAGES
Alphabet.—Pronunciation.—Syntax.—Formation of Words.—Definitions.—Primary Words.— Foreign Words.—Grammatical Terminations. —List of Suffixes.—List of Prefixes.—Elision. —Interrogation.—Negation.—Affirmation.— The Accusative.—Capital Letters.—Punctua- tion.—Order of Words	1—56

PART II.

GRAMMAR AND COMMENTARY.

Rules.—Parts of Speech.—The Article.—Nouns.— Adjectives.—Numerals.—Pronouns.—Corre- lative Words.—Verbs.—Adverbs.—Preposi- tions.—Conjunctions.—Interjections.— Remarks on the Suffixes and Prefixes ...	57—247
--	--------

PART III.

Exercises	248—304
-------------------------------	---------

PART IV.

Phrases.—Conversation.—Correspondence ...	305—320
---	---------

PART V.

List of Primary Words.—List of Adverbs, Adjec- tives, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and Adver- bial and Prepositional Expressions ...	321—348
---	---------

HINTS TO LEARNERS	349—350
-----------------------------------	---------

INDEX	351—359
---------------------------	---------

PART I.

ALPHABET (Alfabeto).

1. **The Alphabet** (la alfabeto) consists of 28 letters, viz.:—5 vowels (vokaloj) and 23 consonants (konsonantoj).

Aa,	Bb,	Cc,	Ĉâ,	Dd,	Ee,	Ff,
Gg,	Ĝg,	Hh,	Ĥh,	Ii,	Jj,	Ĵj,
Kk,	Ll,	Mm,	Nn,	Oo,	Pp,	Rr,
Ss,	Ŝs,	Tt,	Uu,	Ŭŭ,	Vv,	Zz.

2. **The Characters** are written as in English, the marks over the letters requiring them being added as printed.

3. **Typewriting.**—If the letters ĉ, ĝ, ĥ, ĵ, ŝ, ŭ, are not on the machine, type the plain letters and add the supersigns afterwards with the pen; most makers, however, supply a machine with the necessary characters.

4. **The Names** given to the letters are different from those of other languages. For instance, in English we add E to *some* of the consonants to name the letter, but in Esperanto O is added to *all* the 23 consonants, and the alphabet runs thus:—A, Bo, Co, Ĉo, Do, E, Fo, Go, Ĝo, Ho, Ĥo, I, Jo, Ĵo, Ko, Lo, Mo, No, O, Po, Ro, So, Ŝo, To, Uo, Ŭo, Vo, Zo. Note particularly the pronunciation of the 12 consonants, given in the next paragraph.

See “Hints to Learners,” page 349.

PRONUNCIATION (Elparolado).

5. **The Consonants** are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :—

C	pronounced	<i>tso</i>	like <i>ts</i> in pits, Tsar.
Ĉ	"	<i>cho</i>	" <i>ch</i> in choke or church.
G	"	<i>go</i>	" <i>g</i> in get or go, always hard.
Ĝ	"	<i>djo</i>	" <i>j</i> in Joe, or G in George.
Ĥ	"	<i>hHo</i>	" <i>ch</i> in <i>loch</i> (is a very strong guttural aspirate).
J	"	<i>yo</i>	" <i>y</i> in yoke.
Ĵ	"	<i>zho</i>	" <i>s</i> in pleasure, leisure.
R	"	<i>ro</i>	" <i>rr</i> in terror (stronger than in English).
S	"	<i>so</i>	" <i>s</i> in so (has never the sound of <i>z</i>).
Ŝ	"	<i>sho</i>	" <i>sh</i> in show.
Ŭ	"	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{o} \text{o-o} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{wo} \end{matrix} \right\}$	" <i>w</i> in cow.
Z	"	<i>zo</i>	" <i>z</i> in zone.

For the pronunciation of the vowels, see paras. 8 and 9.

6. **In spelling** a word use the Esperanto name, thus :—A, No, To, A, Wo, spells *antaŭ* (before). E, Wo, Ro, O, Po, O, spells *Eŭropo* (Europe). U, No, U, spells *unu* (one).

7. **Consonants.** Note the following :—

(a). C and J are the only consonants which have a different sound than in English.

(b). C, Ĉ and Ŝ are the equivalents of the English combinations *ts*, *ch* and *sh*.

(c). G has always the English *hard* sound.

(d). Ĝ is like the English J.

(e). J is like the English Y.

(f). H is always aspirated.

(g). \hat{H} is a guttural aspirate similar to the Spanish *J* as heard in *mujer* (a woman), or like the Scotch *ch* in "loch," or the Irish *gh* in "lough." If the learner cannot catch this sound it will be sufficient to strongly aspirate the character as if it were a double letter *hH*, laying stress on the last *H*.

(h). *S* has *never* the sound of *Z*, as it has in the English words "rose, has, was," etc.

(i). *j*, the small letter, does not require the dot in addition to the circumflex.

(j). \tilde{U} is a consonant, and is used in the combinations *AÜ* and *EÜ* (see para. 10).

8. Vowels.—There are no *short* vowels in Esperanto, as heard in the words *bat*, *bet*, *bit*, *pot*, *but*. All vowels should be of *medium* length, but it is well to begin by sounding them *long* (see note, page 11).

9. The vowel *A* is sounded like "ah!" or the *a* in "father"; *I* like *ee* in "seen"; *U* like *oo* in "fool."

As regards the vowels *E* and *O*, we have no words in English exactly expressing their true sounds. The correct sound of *E* is something midway between the vowels heard in "bale" and "bell," and that of *O* something midway between those heard in "dole" and "doll," viz., "eh!" (cut short) and "oh!" (cut short), but without the *prolonged* sound heard in these words. In the vowel *E* there should be no trace of the *ee* sound heard in "cake"; its true sound is much nearer to the *e* in "bell." The vowel *O* approaches to the sound of *o* in "for," or of *aw* in "law."

In the scheme of pronunciation (para. 19) we have therefore used *ah* for *A*; *eh* for *E*; *ee* for *I*; *o* for *O*; *oo* for *U*.

N.B.—Do not clip or drag the vowels.

10. Combinations, Vowel and Consonant.—The following 6 combinations resemble diphthongs,

but are not so, since a diphthong consists of 2 vowels and *j* and *ü* are both consonants :—

AJ	pronounced	<i>ahyĕ</i>	or	<i>i</i>	something like <i>ai</i> in aisle.
AÜ	"	<i>ahöö</i>	"	<i>ow</i>	" <i>ow</i> in cow.
EJ	"	<i>ehyĕ</i>	"	<i>æe</i>	" <i>aye</i> in <u>cayenne.</u>
EÜ	"	<i>ehöö</i>	"	<i>ew</i>	" <i>ayw</i> in <u>wayward.</u>
OJ	"	<i>oyĕ</i>	"	<i>oi</i>	" <i>oy</i> in joy.
UJ	"	<i>ooyĕ</i>	"	<i>ooe</i>	" <i>uj</i> in <u>Hallelujah.</u>

It will be observed that if these double sounds be rapidly made the pronunciation will resemble the English words given, but remember they are each pronounced as one syllable, so the examples "cayenne," "wayward," "Hallelujah," are not strictly correct. AJ, EJ, OJ, UJ, have the same sound as heard in the French words "paille," "oseille," "boyard," "fouille," and AU as heard in the German word "Haus."

N.B.—It is difficult to explain the exact sound of EÜ. Pronounce our word "ewe," and then give the sound of eh (cut short) to the first letter, thus *ehwē*, pronouncing the word as one syllable. In the scheme of pronunciation at page 8 we have given it as *ehw*. It occurs very rarely.

11. Combinations of Consonants.—There are a few which do not occur in English, and the attention of the student is therefore called to the following:—

12. GV, KN, KV, SV. When these letters commence a word, both must be clearly pronounced, but the stress falls on the latter. The sound is as if a very short vowel intervened. SV is similar to our SW as heard in "swell," the sound of V replacing W.

13. ſ, being the same as our Sh, must be distinctly pronounced, when followed by one or two consonants. ſm =shm, ſn =shn, ſp =shp, ſt =sht, ſtr =shtr, ſv =shv. If the *sh* sound be not clearly given, mistakes might occur in a few words, as, for instance, **ſtupo** is a *step* (of a ladder), but **ſtupo** is *tow*; **ſtalo** is *steel*, but **ſtalo** a *stall*.

14. SC. This combination is rather a difficulty, especially when it commences a word, since it represents STS, which, with a following vowel, form but one syllable. There are, however, very few words commencing with SC, viz.:—The five given in the list of words (para. 19) and their derivatives, the word **scii** (*to know*) being the only one in common use. First the sound of S has to be given, then T, and lastly S. Since every letter has to be sounded, it is not sufficient to pronounce **scii** as *tsee-e*, for then the initial S is omitted; we must therefore pronounce it *estsee-e*, the “*es*” being uttered very rapidly (as if it were merely a short sibilant) before the voice reaches the TS, on which the stress is made. When SC is not preceded by a comma or other stop or is in the middle of a word, the pronunciation can be easily effected by joining the sound of the preceding letter to the S. Thus **mi scias** = *I know* can be pronounced *mees-tsee-ahs*. **Mi vidis brunan sciuron** = *I saw a brown squirrel*—*mee-ree-dees broonahns tsee-oo-ron*. But when the preceding word ends in S, the full sound of both of the letters S must be given, as **mi havas sciuron** = *I have a squirrel*—*mee huhrahs estsee-oo-ron* (the initial *e* very short to help to give the sound of the first *s*).

15. KZ. In pronouncing this combination, do not follow the English pronunciation of words like “exempt,” etc., which our dictionaries give as “egzempt.” Be careful not to turn the K into G in such words as **ekzemplo** = *example*, **ekzameni** = *to examine*. The full sound must be given to every letter in the three syllables, **ek-zem-plo**.

16. **Pronunciation of Words.**—Every vowel and consonant in a word is pronounced distinctly, and the sound never varies, whether the letters are initial, medial, or final; *there is no mute letter in Esperanto*. Each syllable must be distinct, and it must be

remembered that when two vowels come together, such as **ai**, **ae**, **ee**, **ii**, **oi**, etc., or two similar consonants, as **kk**, **ll**, **mm**, etc., each letter always belongs to a different syllable, and must be given its full sound.

17. **Tonic Accent.**—The stress of the voice, or the tonic accent, is always on the *penultimate* (last syllable but one). Even in words of two syllables the tonic accent must be strongly perceived in the first syllable. The euphony and beauty of the language would in a great measure be destroyed by non-observance of this rule.

(a). In compound words, as in others, the accent must very distinctly fall on the penultimate of the *whole* word; but when a compound word consists of four syllables, or more, the *meaning* of the prefixed word, or words, should be shown by laying a certain stress on those syllables which would be accented if they were complete independent words. It will be noticed how much easier it is to grasp the meaning of a prefixed word if a slight stress of the voice be given to that syllable on which we are accustomed to hear the accent fall when the word stands alone, as:—*Du-be-ni-gra*=Blackish. *La-bor-plen-a*=Hard-working. *An-taû-vi-di*=To foresee. *Gas-o-me-tro*=Gasometer. *Arm-il-far-ist-o*=Gunsmith. *Gar-den-la-bor-ad-o*=Gardening. *El-ar-tik-ig-o*=Dislocation. *In-ter-ri-lat-o*=Intercourse. *Sen-la-bor-of-ic-o*=Sinecure. *Le-ter-pa-per-o*=Note-paper.

18. Beginners should read aloud daily; at first slowly and slightly exaggerating the sounds, making free use of the organs of speech. It will then be found that in more rapid utterance the exaggeration will gradually disappear, and a good, bold, free pronunciation be attained. (See "Hints to Learners," page 349).

19. It is advisable that the student, before proceeding to the grammar, should get a thorough knowledge of the sounds of letters, syllables, and words; he should, therefore, read over the following list of words, which gives most of the combinations of sounds in the language. The italics denote where the tonic accent falls.

SCHEME OF PRONUNCIATION.

Esperanto Letter.

Esperanto.	Pronunciation.	English.
A abato . . .	ah-bah-to	abbot.
a-a la afero . .	lah ah-feh-ro	the affair.
a-e aero	ah-eh-ro	air.
a-i trairi	trah-ee-reed	to traverse.
balai	bah-lah-ee	to sweep.
aj ajlo	ahy-lo	garlic.
krajono	krah-yo-no	pencil.
majesta	mah-yehs-tah	majestic.
ajn	ahyn	ever.
palaj	pah-lahy	pale (adj., plur.).
a-o la ondo . . .	lah on-do	the wave.
a-u la ungo . . .	lah oon-go	the nail.

Esperanto.	Pronunciation.	English.
aŭ laŭdo.....	<i>lahw-do</i>	praise.
antaŭ.....	<i>ahn-tahw</i>	before.
hodiaŭ	<i>ho-dee-ahw</i>	to-day.
B Biblio	<i>Bee-blee-o</i>	Bible.
C cent	<i>tsehnt</i>	hundred.
citi.....	<i>tsee-tee</i>	to cite, quote
colo	<i>tso-lo</i>	inch.
paco	<i>pah-tso</i>	peace.
pacienco..	<i>pah-tsee-ehn-tso</i>	patience.
oficiro ..	<i>o-fee-tsee-ro</i>	officer.
proceso ..	<i>pro-tsheh-so</i>	lawsuit.
ĉ ĉar	<i>chahr</i>	because, for.
ēielo	<i>chee-eh-lo</i>	heaven, sky.
senĝesa ..	<i>sehn-chehl-sah</i>	incessant, ceaseless.
eĉ .. .	<i>ehch</i>	even.
E elemento..	<i>eh-leh-mehn-to</i>	element.
e-a oceano ..	<i>o-tseh-ah-no</i>	ocean.
e-e treege ..	<i>treh-eh-geh</i>	exceedingly.
e-i feino	<i>feh-ee-no</i>	fairy.
perei	<i>peh-reh-ee</i>	to perish.
ej plej	<i>plehy</i> (sound "y" short, as yě) (monosyllable)	most.
malplej ...	<i>mahl-plehy</i>	least.
hejmo ..	<i>hehy-mo</i>	home.
e-o neo	<i>neh-o</i>	negative.
teorio ...	<i>teh-o-ree-o</i>	theory.
e-u pereu.....	<i>peh-reh-oo</i>	perish (im- perative).
eŭ Eŭropo ...	<i>ehw-ro-po</i>	Europe.
G gento....	<i>gehn-to</i>	tribe.
gv gvidi	<i>gvee-dee</i>	to guide.
lingvo ..	<i>leen-gvo</i>	language.

Esperanto.	Pronunciation.	English.
g-u guano	goo-ah-no	guano.
Ĝ ĝui	djoo-ee	to enjoy.
gojo	djo-yo	joy.
paĝo	pah-djo	page.
H haro	hah-ro	hair.
senhara	sehn-hah-rah	bald.
Ĥ hemio	hHeh-mee-o (guttural aspirate)	chemistry.
eĥo	eh-hHo (do.)	echo.
I idilio	ee-dee-lee-o	idyl.
i-a ial	ee-ahl	for any cause.
i-e tiel	tee-ehl	thus.
i-i diigi	dee-ee-gee	to deify.
i-o tiom	tee-om	as much.
i-u ĉiu	chee-oo	each.
i-uj tiuj	tee-oo-y (dissyllable)	those.
J justa	yoos-tah	just.
ĉiu-jara	chee-oo-yah-rah	yearly.
Ĵ jus	zhoos	just (adv.).
jaŭdo	zhahw-do	Thursday.
bovajo	bo-vah-zho	beef.
K konkuri	kon-koo-ree	to compete.
kn knedi	kneh-dee	to knead.
kv kvankam	kvahn-kahm	although.
kvitance	kvee-tahn-tso	receipt.
malkvie- teco	mahl-kvee-eh-teh-tso	restlessness.
k-z ekzemplo	ehk-zehm-plo	example.
L mallumigo	mahl-loo-mee-djo	eclipse.
ellabori	ehl-lah-bo-ree	to achieve.
O ondo	on-do	a wave.
o-a boato	bo-ah-to	boat.
o-e troe	tro-eh	excessively.

Esperanto.	Pronunciation.	English.
o-i foiro	fo-ee-ro	a fair.
oj vojoj	vo-yoy	roads (plur.).
o-o zoologio	zo-o-lo-ghee-o	zoology.
o-u trouzi	tro-oo-zee	to abuse.
R rimarki	ree-mahr-ki	to remark.
rr forrampi	for-rahm-pee	to creepaway.
S sekci	sehk-tsee	to dissect.
sc sceno	(ĕ)stseh-no (a very short ĕ to help to give the sound of the first s) ...	scene.
sceptro	(ĕ)stsehp-tro	sceptre.
scienco	(ĕ)stsee-ehn-tso	science.
sciij	(ĕ)stsee-ee	to know.
sciuro	(ĕ)stsee-oo-ro	squirrel.
konscienco	kons-tsee-ehn-tso	conscience.
nescio	nehs-tsee-o	ignorance.
sf sfero	sfeh-ro	sphere.
sv sveni	sveh-nee	to swoon.
skl sklavo	sklah-vo	slave.
skv skvamo	skvah-mo	scale (of fish).
š ŝaŭmo	shahw-mo	froth.
malŝargi	mahl-shahr-djee	to unload (a cart).
šl ŝlosi	shlo-see	to lock.
šm ŝmiri	shmee-ree	to smear.
špr ŝpruci	shproo-tsee	to spurt (in- trans.).
štr ŝtrumpo	shtroom-po	stocking.
šv ŝveli	shveh-li	to swell (trans.).
št poštmarko	posht-mahr-ko	postage stamp.
T trajto	trahy-to	trait, feature.

Esperanto.	Pronunciation.	English.
U unu	oo-noo	one.
u-a unua	oo-noo-ah	first.
u-e duelo ...	doo-eh-lo	duel.
u-i kuirejo ...	koo-ee-reh-yo	kitchen.
detrui ...	deh-troo-ee	to destroy.
uj monujo ...	mo-noo-yo	purse.
tuj	tooy (monosyllable)	immediately.
prujno ...	prooy-no	white frost.
unuj	oo-nooy	some (plural of <i>unu</i>). double.
u-o duobla ...	doo-o-blah	
paruo	pah-roo-o	tomtit.
u-u detruu ...	deh-troo-oo	destroy (im- perative).
V envolvi ...	ehn-vol-vee	to envelop, wrap.
Z edzino ...	ehd-zee-no	wife.
noktomezo	nok-to-meh-zo	midnight.

NOTE.—Esperanto vowels are very similar in sound to those in German and Spanish, and in the Italian *do, re, mi, fa*.

SYNTAX (Sintakso).

20. **Syntax** (sintakso) treats of the connection, dependence, and arrangement of words to form intelligible speech.

21. **Speech** (parolado) consists of propositions.

22. **A Proposition** (propozicio) is a collection of words by which we assert, or question, the act, state, or quality of some person or thing. A complete proposition consists of two chief parts, viz., the Subject and Predicate.

23. **Subject** (subjekto) is the name of the person or thing spoken of.

24. **Predicate** (predikato) is what is said about the subject.

25. **The Subject** of a proposition is always :—

(a). One or more nouns.

(b). Some word used as a noun, e.g., (1), a pronoun, **mi=I**; (2), an adjective, **mia kara estas bona filino**=*my dear (one) is a good daughter*; (3), an infinitive, **mensogi estas honte**=*to lie (or lying) is shameful*; (4), a phrase. **Estas agrable por (or, al) mi, ke vi aĉetis tiun domon** (here "**ke vi aĉetis**" is the subject)=*I am glad (it is agreeable to me) that you bought that house*.

26. **The subject** is always in the nominative case. When the subject is a noun, it must, therefore, always end in -O, if the noun is singular, or in -OJ, if the noun is in the plural. The subject of any verb can always be determined by putting the word "who?" or "what?" before the verb, and the word giving the reply is the subject, as :—**La riĉulo havas multe da mono**=*The rich man has much (of) money*. (Who has much money? *The rich man*=**la riĉulo** is the subject). **La papero estas blanka**=*(The) paper is white*. (What is white? *The paper*=**la papero** is the subject). **De timo paliĝis Antono**=*Antony grew pale from fear*. (Who grew pale? *Antony*=**Antono** is the subject). **Miaj fratoj batis min**=*My brothers beat me*. (Who beat me? *My brothers*=**miaj fratoj** is the subject).

27. **Subject omitted.**—Sometimes the subject is omitted, as :—**Pluvias**=*It rains*. **Fulmis**=*It lightened*. (See remarks on impersonal verbs, para. 164).

28. **The Object** is the person or thing acted upon by the subject, hence the term objective (or accusative) case, as :—**Johano batas la knabon**=*John beats the boy*. **Knabon**=the

boy is acted upon by **Johano**, the subject, therefore **knabon** is the object, and has the accusative termination N.

29. The Direct Complement (*rekta komplemento*).—The noun or pronoun (not governed by a preposition), which is the direct complement of a transitive verb, must have the accusative form—N in the singular, or—JN in the plural. The direct complement of a verb can be determined by asking the question “whom?” or “what?” with such verb, and the word, giving the reply, is the direct complement, as :—**Diru al mi vian nomon?** = *Tell me your name?* (Tell what? Your name = **vian nomon** is the direct complement). **Johano min amas** = *John loves me.* (Loves whom? Me = **min** is the direct complement).

30. The direct complement of an active verb becomes the subject if the verb is put in the passive voice, as :—**Mia patro amas min** = *My father loves me.* Here **min** = me is the direct complement; but **Mi estas amata de mia patro** = *I am loved by my father.* Here **mi** = I is the subject of the verb. Note, therefore, that intransitive verbs cannot have a direct complement, for they have no passive voice (para. 162).

31. The Indirect Complement (*nerekta komplemento*) is formed with a preposition and a noun or pronoun in the nominative, but if direction towards something be implied, and the preposition of itself does not denote movement, the noun, or pronoun, will then be in the accusative case (see paras. 67, 256), as :—**Donu al la birdoj akvon** = *Give (to) the birds water*, or *Give water to the birds.* (Here “**akvon**” is the direct, and **la birdoj** the indirect, complement). **Venu kune kun la patro** = *Come together with (the) father.* **Li eniris en la domon** = *He went into the house.*

32. The Circumstantial Complement.—A word or phrase is termed a circumstantial complement (*cirkonstanca komplemento*) when it marks the time, place, manner, cause, etc., of an action, as :—**En printempo floroj aperas**, or **Printempe floroj aperas** = *In spring flowers appear.* **Li agas pro jaluzemo** = *He acts from (owing to) jealousy.*

The Predicate (Predikato).

33. The Predicate is what is said about the subject.

(a). **A predicative verb** is one which, of itself, shows in a definite manner some act, state, or quality, as :—**Arbo kreskas** = *A tree grows.* **La arbo verdigis** = *The tree became green.*

(b). **A non-predicative verb** is one which does not, of itself, show an act, but is accompanied by some adjective, participle,

or predicative noun, defining and describing the subject, as:—**La urbo estas belega** = *The city is magnificent.* **Kolombo estas birdo** = *A pigeon is a bird.* This is called a “Disjoined predicate” (disigita predikato).

34. The Predicate can be furthermore precisely defined by an adverb or a noun (or a word used as a noun) governed by a preposition. This serves to show the object of the act and circumstances surrounding it, as:—**Arturo batis Georgon per sia pugno** = *Arthur struck George with his fist.*

35. A noun can be more precisely defined by the addition of another noun or word used as a noun, as:—**Eduardo, rego de Anglujo** = *Edward, King of England.* This is called “apposition” (apozicio).

36. To every noun can be added adjectives or participles, which also can be defined by other nouns, as:—**Homo mortiginta sian patronon estas granda krimulo** = *A man who has murdered (having murdered) his mother is a great criminal.* An adjective added, without any intervening word, to a noun is termed “qualifying,” in order to distinguish it from an adjective having the verb **estí** (expressed or understood) between it and the noun, as:—**Homo bona** = *A good man (qualifying).* **La homo estas bona** = *The man is good (predicative).* (See remarks on adjectives, para. 108).

DEFINITIONS (Difinoj).

37. A **word** consists of one or more syllables or distinct sounds, and has a definite meaning.

38. A **root** is an incomplete word conveying only an idea. It may consist of one or more syllables, but requires one or more letters to form it into a word.

39. **Words** in Esperanto may be divided into four classes :—Primary, Simple, Compound, and Foreign.

(a). A **Primary word** is one which requires no additional letters to give it a distinct meaning (see list of Primary Words, Part V.).

(b). A **Simple word** is one formed by adding a grammatical termination to a single root, or to a primary word (which then becomes a root), with or without suffixes or prefixes.

EXAMPLES.—*Bon-a* = Good. *Cirkau-i* = To surround. *Antaŭ-ul-o* = A predecessor. *Dis-sem-i* = To scatter. *Malsan-ul-ejo* = An infirmary.

(c). A **Compound word** is one formed by adding a grammatical termination to two or more roots, or to a primary word and a root, with or without suffixes or prefixes. Any of the combinations may be complete words, if euphony requires it.

EXAMPLES.—*Bon-intenc-a* = Well-meaning. *Super-natur-a* = Supernatural. *Antaŭ-vid-i* = To foresee. *Cas-o-štel-ist-o* = A poacher. *Cas-gard-ist-o* = A gamekeeper. *Vapor-šipo* = A steamship. *Griz-har-a* = Grey-haired. *Super-akv-eg-o* = A deluge.

(d). A **Foreign word** is one common to most languages, being derived from the same root.

EXAMPLES.—*Teatr-o* = Theatre. *Teatr-a* = Theatrical. *Geologi-o* = Geology. *Geologi-a* = Geological.

FORMATION OF WORDS (*Vortfarado*).

40. **To show the manner** in which words are formed in Esperanto, it will perhaps be better first to do so in Dr. Zamenhof's own words, as given on page 248 of his "Fundamenta Krestomatio." He says:—

"I arranged a complete dismemberment of ideas into independent words, so that the whole language, *instead of* being words in various grammatical forms, consists solely of *unchangeable* words. If you will take a work written in my language, you will find that each word is always in one constant form, namely in that form in which it is printed in the dictionary, and that the various grammatical forms, reciprocal relation between words, etc., etc., are expressed by the union of unchanging words. But, because such a construction of language is quite strange to Europeans, I adapted this dismemberment of the language to the spirit of the European languages, so that anyone learning mine from a manual would not suppose that it differed in construction from his own. Take, for example, the word **fratino**, which in reality consists of three words, **frat**, **in**, **o**. **Frat** gives the idea of the offspring¹ of one's parents, **in** the idea of the female sex, and **o** the idea of existence (person or thing), hence a noun. These three ideas combined, in Esperanto, make **fratino=a sister**. The first and

¹ It must be remembered that all roots or root-words in Esperanto are either sexless, or have only the sex *naturally* belonging to the root, until the feminine suffix—**IN**—be added. For instance, **vir-** gives the idea of "man" (male), therefore **viro=a man**; and we always speak of **viro** as **li=he**, because we are sure the noun refers to the male sex. But the root **infan-** gives only the idea of a "child" (neuter), so, unless we actually know the child is a

last make **frato** = *a brother*.¹ The instruction book shows this in the following manner:—Brother = **frat-**, but because every substantive in the nominative ends in **o**, therefore **frato** = *brother*. For the formation of the feminine, the little word **-in-** is inserted, therefore **fratino** = *sister*. In this way, the dismemberment of the language in no way embarrasses the learner; he does not even suspect that which he calls a prefix, or suffix, or termination, is really an *independent word*, which always preserves its meaning, no matter whether it be used at the beginning, middle, or end of a word, or independently, and that every word, with equal right, can be used as a root word or grammatical particle.”

41. With reference to the above, it will be observed that Dr. Zamenhof calls all combinations of letters,¹ which convey an idea, a “word,” as for instance **frat**, **in**, **o**, but it will be clearer to the student to classify these combinations of letters as we have in paras. 37—39, and (with the exception of the primary words in the list, Part V.) to call no combination a “word” until it receives a grammatical termination.

male, we speak of **infano** = *child* as **gī** = *it*, just as we do in English. When a suffix denoting a person, such as **-estr-**, **-ist-**, **-ul-**, is added to a root, the noun is sexless, or may be presumed to be masculine, unless the feminine **-in-** be also added.

¹ Not only combinations of letters, but each vowel (as already shown in the case of **O**), conveys an idea, and is therefore, technically speaking, a word; for instance

A conveys the idea of *quality* and marks the *Adjective*.

E	”	<i>modification</i>	”	<i>Adverb.</i>
I	”	<i>indefiniteness</i>	”	<i>Infinitive mood.</i>
O	”	<i>existence</i>	”	<i>Noun.</i>
U	”	<i>order</i>	”	<i>Imperative mood.</i>

In the table of Correlative Words, Dr. Zamenhof carries out the idea of indefiniteness in the **I** series, **ia**, **ial**, **iam**, etc.; all, however, be it noted, independent indivisible roots (see para. 147). In fact **ia**, **ie**, **io**, might be considered as adjective, adverb, and noun, regularly formed from the indefinite word (or grammatical termination as we call it) “**i**.”

42. **Grammatical Terminations** (*gramatikaj finoj*).—Every word in Esperanto, except the primary words, has a grammatical termination which shows:—

- (a). The part of speech.
- (b). Whether the word is singular or plural.
- (c). Whether in the nominative or accusative case.
- (d). The mood, tense, and participles of a verb.

A list of the grammatical terminations will be found in para. 53.

43. **Suffixes**.—Suffixes are syllables placed between the root and grammatical termination, giving to the word the idea contained in the suffix as well as that in the root.

A list of suffixes will be found in para. 54.

44. **Prefixes**.—A prefix is a syllable placed before the root, giving to the root the idea contained in the prefix.

A list of prefixes will be found in para. 55.

45. From the foregoing definitions we see that words in Esperanto are either primary words, or words composed of:—

- (a). Roots and grammatical terminations.
- (b). Roots, suffixes, and grammatical terminations.
- (c). Prefixes, roots, and grammatical terminations.
- (d). Prefixes, roots, suffixes, and grammatical terminations.

46. **Order of Suffixes**.—The grammatical terminations, *A*, *E*, *I*, *O*, *U*, *AS*, *IS*, *OS*, *US*, showing the part of speech and mood and tense of verbs, must end all words (except some of the primary words), the accusative *N* or plural *J* being added if required. Suffixes precede this termination in their natural order. For instance, if we want to say “a tiny female kitten,” we commence with the root **kat-**, giving the idea only of “cat”; then add **-id-** (suffix

for “offspring of”) **kat-id-** = kitten; then **-in-** (female suffix) **kat-id-in-** = kitten female; then **-et-** (diminutive suffix) **kat-id-in-et-** = kitten female tiny; we have now got the root and all the suffixes, and we might make the word an adjective by adding *A*, but we want a noun, so add *O*; **kat-id-in-et-o** = a tiny female kitten. If we place **-et-** after **kat-**, we commence by speaking of a “tiny cat,” for **kateto** has that meaning, so **katetidino** would be the “female offspring of a tiny cat.” If we reversed the three suffixes, we should get **kat-in-et-id-o** = offspring of a tiny female cat. This exaggerated example of building up suffixes will show the importance of placing them in their natural order. The student cannot make a mistake if he commences with the root and forms a word of each suffix in succession; for instance, **hund-o** = a dog, **hund-id-o** = a puppy, **hundid-in-o** = a female puppy, **hundidin-eg-o** = a huge female puppy.

47. Order of Prefixes.—In like manner prefixes must come in their natural order, as:—**Sano** = health, **mal-sano** = illness, **re-mal-sano** = a return of illness, a relapse.

48. Order of roots in compound words.—The principal root is always placed last, and receives the grammatical termination, with or without a suffix. The root of a subordinate word is sufficient without any suffix.

EXAMPLES.—*Cas-gard-ist-o* = A gamekeeper, *casi* = to hunt, *cas-ajo* = a thing hunted, game; but it is unnecessary to add the suffix *-aj-* to the subordinate root. *Roz-kolora* = Rose coloured. *Skrib-tablo* = Writing table. *Lerno-libro* = Instruction book, manual (*lern-o*, the root, made a full word for euphony). *Tir-kesto* = A drawer (*tir-i* = to draw, *kesto* = a chest; in English we have “chest of drawers” = *tirkestaro*). *Lum-turo* = Lighthouse (*lum-i* = to shine, *turo* = a tower). *Radi-luma* = Radiant (*radi-o* = a ray, *luma* = luminous). *Lip-haroj* = Moustache (*lip-o* = a lip, *haroj* = hairs). *Vang-haroj* = Whiskers (*vang-o* = a cheek). *Mar-vetur-arto* = Seamanship (*mar-o* = sea, *vetur-i* = to travel, *arto* = art).

49. When the root should be a noun, adjective, or adverb.—When the joining of the root only makes the compound word difficult to pronounce, the root is generally made a noun by adding *O* for the sake of euphony, as :—**Lerno-libro** = *manual, instruction book*. **Aŭstro-lando** = *Austria*. But if the prefixed root alone would not give the required meaning, the noun, adjective, or adverb is prefixed, as :—**Estis unu-tagia laboro** = *it was one day's work*. **Estis la unua-tagia laboro** = *it was the first day's work*. **La supre-citita paragrafo** = *the above-quoted paragraph*. In case of adverbs, *N* to form the accusative is also added, if direction is implied, as :—**Li supren-iris la monto** = *he ascended the mountain* (see 67 (b)).

N.B.—The hyphens are not necessary.

50. The idea conveyed by the root.—In forming a word, the first thing is to find out the exact primary idea contained in the root. Do not think, for instance, that because you happen to know that one of the meanings of **cel-o** is *end*, that **cel-i** will mean *to finish* or *end*; the primary idea of **cel-** is *aim*, or *purpose*, therefore **cel-i** is *to aim, to purpose*. Do not, in the case of a word with one or more suffixes, think that because you know one of its meanings, you know also the idea conveyed in its root. For instance, **kresk-aĵ-o** is *a plant*, but do not at once say that **kresk-i** is *to plant*; **kreskajo** comes quite logically from **kreski** = *to grow*, therefore **kreskajo** is a thing grown, a growth, a plant. So **ov-ajo** is something derived from **ov-o** = *an egg*, viz., *an omelet*. Similarly from **kudr-i** = *to sew*, we get **kudr-il-o** = *a tool (or means) for sewing, a needle*.

PRIMARY WORDS (Vortoj fundamentaj).

51. **The Primary words** are 158 in number, and must be carefully learnt (see list, Part V.). They are not only complete words in themselves with a definite meaning, but they can be treated as root-words and receive prefixes, suffixes, and grammatical terminations. There is no rule against any of these words, ending in a vowel, from receiving, if logically allowable, the accusative *N* or the plural *J* (see para. 142).

EXAMPLES. — *Jen* (behold), *jene* = As follows. *Ne* (no, not), *nei* = To deny. *Tie* (there), *tieulo* = A man from there (that place). *Ĉirkaŭ* (around, round), *ĉirkaŭi* = To surround. *Jes* (yes), *jeso* = An affirmation. *Tiaj esprimoj* = Such (kind of) expressions. *Tiu ĉevaloj* = Those horses. *Li aĉetis tiujn ĉevalojn* = He bought all the horses. *Faru al mi ian respondon* = Make me some (kind of) reply. *Venu tien ĉi* = Come hither. *Diru al mi tion, kion vi faris* = Tell me what (that which) you did (have done). *Unuj tion ĉi faris, aliaj tion* = Some did this, others that.

Among the Primary Words are found all the personal and demonstrative pronouns, all the cardinal numbers and prepositions, and also most of the common adverbs and conjunctions. It is important, therefore, that the student should thoroughly master their meaning.

FOREIGN WORDS (Vortoj fremdaj).

52. **Foreign words** are those which in most languages are derived from the same source, and, being consequently much alike in formation, are easily understood by most nations, there being only a slight difference in spelling and that difference of termination which occurs in all languages. Dr. Zamenhof wisely lays down they should undergo no change, beyond conforming to Esperanto orthography and its grammatical terminations. It is, of course, necessary that these words should be spelt, and consequently pronounced, alike by all Esperantists, so, to show their change from English spelling, the following examples are given, not only of words which may be called "foreign," but of others that are a near approach to English in formation. This will not only help the student to form foreign words for himself, but may give him a knowledge of the construction of other words in common use. It must be borne in mind that these changes of letters by no means invariably take place ; they are only *general*.

52 (a).—Initial and Medial Letters.

- C** (hard)=*K* generally, as :—*Declaration*=**deklaracio**, *economy*=**ekonomio**, *decameter*=**dekametro**, *hectogram*=**hektogramo**. In a few cases *C* becomes *Ĝ*, as :—*Dedicate*=**dediĉi**, *carpenter*=**ĉarpentisto** (probably from the French *charpentier*).

C (soft) generally undergoes no change, so remains *C* with its sound of *TS*, as :—*Cipher*=**cifero**, *cigar*=**cigaro**, *galicism*=**galicismo**, *glycerine*=**glicerino**, *grimace*=**grimaco**, *spice*=**spico**. Some few words change to *Z*, as :—*Price*=**prezo**.

Ch (soft)=*C̄*, as :—*Chamber*=**čambro**, *charming*=**čarma**, *chaste*=**časta**, *chief*=**čefo**. Exception :—*China*=**Hinujo**.

Ch (hard)=*H̄* generally, as :—*Chameleon*=**ħameleono**, *chaos*=**ħaoso**, *chemistry*=**ħemio**, *cholera*=**ħolero**, *oligarchy*=**ħolgarho**, *hypochondria*=**ħipohondrio**, *chorister*=**ħoristo**. It will be seen that these words are mostly derived from the Greek.

G (soft or hard)=*G* generally, as :—*Geology*=**geologio**, *elegant*=**eleganta**, *general* (officer)=**generalo**. The exceptions in which *Ĝ* is used are mostly words following the French pronunciation, as :—*Danger*=**dangero**, *garden*=**ĝardeno**, *general* (adjective)=**ĝeneralala**, *germ*=**ĝermo**, *giraffe*=**ĝirafo**, etc.

PH=*F*, as :—*Elephantiasis*=**elefantiazo**, *sphere*=**sfero**, etc.

QU=*KV*, as :—*Equivalent*=**ekvivalenta**, *eloquent*=**elokventa**, *inquisition*=**inkvizicio**, *quantity*=**kvanto**, *quadratic*=**kvadrata**.

S=*S*, but in a few instances it becomes *Ŝ* (probably following German pronunciation) or *C*, as :—*Slime*=**slimo**, *smear*=**šimi**, *spare*=**špari**, *spin*=**špini**, etc. *Parsimony*=**parcimonio**.

S (sounded like *Z*)=*Z* generally, as :—*Desert*=**dezerto**, *rose*=**rozo**, *present*=**prezenti**, *preside*=**prezidi**, etc.

Sh=*Ŝ* generally, as :—*Shark*=**šarko**, *ship*=**šipo**, *shoe*=**šuo**.

Th=*T*, as :—*Theatre*=**teatro**, *mythology*=**mitogio**.

X=*KS* or *KZ*, which can generally be determined by the English sound of *X*, as :—*Example*=**ekzemplo**, *exercise*=**ekzerco**, *dispatch*=**ekspedi**, *excite*=**eksciti**, *exposition*=**ekspozicio**, *exist*=**ekzisti**. In a few instances *X* becomes *S*, as :—*Extinguish*=**estingi**, *explore*=**esplori**, *express*=**esprimi**. Occasionally *L* is used for *X*, as :—*Expel*=**elpeli**, *excrecence*=**elkreskojо**, etc. When *L* is substituted it will be observed that the English prefix *EX* means “out of,” and *that*, therefore, Esperanto logically uses the preposition *EL*, meaning “out of,” as the prefix.

52 (b).—Terminal Letters.

Terminal Letters.—If the last syllable ends in the sound of a consonant, it is generally right to add *O* to the last consonant of the English word, to form a noun, as :—*Diadem* = **diademo**, *diagonal* = **diagonalo**, *granite* = **granito**, *dialogue* = **dialogo**, *debate* = **debato**. There are, of course, exceptions. Beginners should always consult the Esperanto Dictionary if they have any doubt as to internationality or spelling. Note the following terminations, which have a peculiarity of their own :—

-ER. = *RO* generally, for a noun, as :—*December* = **Decembro**, *diameter* = **diametro**. Words like “centre,” “theatre,” etc., sometimes spelt “center,” “theater,” follow the rule, as :—**Centro**, **teatro**.

-IC. and **-ICAL.** = *A* or *IA*. These terminations are English suffixes for adjectives. Esperanto, however, discards them and gives its own adjectival suffix *A*, as :—*Galvanic* = **galvana**, *hypnotic* = **hipnota**, *theatrical* = **teatra**, *identical* = **identa**, *theoretic* = **teoria**, *geographical* = **geografia**. (See remarks on **-OCY** and **-ISM**).

-ICS. = *KO*. The English termination **-ICS** has a plural form, but in Esperanto **-CS** is generally represented by **-KO**, and not the plural **-KOJ**, as :—*Mathematics* = **matematiko**, etc.

-INE. The **I** in this termination is occasionally turned into **E**, as :—*Gelatine* = **gelateno**. It more commonly is retained as :—*Glycerine* = **glicerino**.

-ISH. = *DUBBE* (doubtful) prefixed to colours to form the adjective, as :—**Dubenigra** = blackish, **dubeblanka** = whitish, **dubeverda** = greenish.

-ISM. *O* is simply added to the great majority of the numerous English nouns ending in **-ISM**, to form the Esperanto word, but, as these letters rarely form part of the root of the word from which they are derived, it is better to look upon **-ISM** as an English suffix, and elide it in forming other parts of speech. The adjectives of these words nearly always end in **-IC** or **-ICAL**, which, as before stated, becomes **-A** in Esperanto. For instance :—*Galvanism* = **galvanismo**, *galvanic* = **galvana**, *galvanize* = **galvan-igi**; thus the root is really **galvan-**. So *hypnotism* = **hipnotismo**, *hypnotic* = **hipnota**, *hypnotize* = **hipnotigi** (root, **hipnot-**). A few words are formed

otherwise, as :—*Criticism* = **kritiko**, *criticize* = **kritiki** (root, **kritik-**), *fanatical* = **fanatika**, from which “fanaticism” is regularly formed by the suffix **-EC-**, viz., **fanatikeco**. Similarly, *sceptical* = **skeptika**, *scepticism* = **skeptikeco**. But **fanaticismo** and **skepticismo** are also sometimes used.

-IST. When an English word ends in **-IST**, which has the same meaning as the Esperanto suffix **-IST-**, be careful not to think that adding **O** will *always* form the noun. Find out first what the root is. For instance, **profesio** = “a profession” (root, **profesi-**), therefore **profesiisto** = “a professional” (not **profesisto**). *Drug* = **drogo** (root, **drog-**), therefore the double **i** is not required here, so *druggist* = **drogisto**.

-MENT. When this is the English termination of a noun derived from a root not ending in **-MENT**, it becomes **O**, as :—*Embarrass* = **embarasi**, *embarrassment* = **embaraso**, *rebate* = **rabati**, *rebatement* = **rabato**. But when **-MENT** is part of the English root it is retained, as :—*Element* = **elemento**, *experiment* = **eksperimento**, *fundament* = **fundamento**.

-OGY. Words derived from the Greek change *Y* into *IO*, as :—*Geology* = **geologio**, *theology* = **teologio**. The adjectives of these words end in **-IC** and **-ICAL**, and, as their Esperanto root ends in **-I**, **A** must be added to this to form the adjectives **geologia**, **teologia**.

-ON. Words derived from the Greek change **-ON** into a vowel, if the word is clearly recognizable without **-ON**, as :—*Automaton* = **automato**, *phenomenon* = **fenomeno**. When the word might be mistaken without the full letters, the vowel is added, as :—*Diapason* = **diapazono**.

-SIS. = *ZO* generally, as :—*Apotheosis* = **apoteozo**, *hypothesis* = **hipotezo**, *oasis* = **oazo**, *synthesis* = **sintezo**.

-TH. = *T*, as :—*Hyacinth* = **hiacinto**.

-TION. = *CIO*, as :—*Declaration* = **deklaracio**, *exposition* = **ekspozicio**, *arbitration* = **arbitracio**, *generation* = **generacio**, *situation* = **situacio**.

-UM. = *O* generally, as :—*Epithalamium* = **epitalamio**, *gymnasium* (college) = **gimnazio**, *geranium* = **geranio**.

-Y. = *IO* generally in words derived from Latin or Greek, as :—*Philosophy* = **filozofio**, *parsimony* = **parcimonio**, *sympathy* = **simpatio**, *industry* = **industrio**.

53.—GRAMMATICAL TERMINATIONS (Gramatikaj Finigoj).

X	A final denotes an Adjective. Patra , <i>paternal</i> .
Y E ,,	an Adverb. Patre , <i>paternally</i> .
Y I ,,	the Infinitive Mood. Fari , <i>to do</i> .
O ,,	a Noun. Patro , <i>a father</i> .
U ,,	the Imperative Mood. Faru , <i>do</i> . Li faru , <i>let him do</i> . Diru , <i>ke li faru tion</i> , <i>say, he is to do that</i> .
J ,,	the Plural. Patroj , <i>fathers</i> .
N ,,	the Accusative Case. Patron . Mi vidis mian patron , <i>I saw my father</i> .
AS ,,	the Present Tense. Mi faras , <i>I do, or, I am doing</i> .
IS ,,	the Past Tense. Li faris , <i>he did, or, he has done</i> .
OS ,,	the Future Tense. Ni faros , <i>we shall do</i> .
US ,,	the Conditional Mood. Vi farus , <i>you should, or would, do</i> .
ANTA ,,	Present Participle Active. Faranta , <i>doing</i> .
INTA ,,	Past Participle Active. Farinta , <i>having done</i> .
ONTA ,,	Future Participle Active. Faronta , <i>about to do</i> .
ATA ,,	Present Participle Passive. Farata , <i>being done</i> .
ITA ,,	Past Participle Passive. Farita , <i>having been done</i> .
OTA ,,	Future Participle Passive. Farota , <i>about to be done</i> .

N.B.—There are three forms of participles, the adjectival, substantival, and adverbial. The one given above is the adjectival. In the adverbial form the final **A** is changed into **E**. **Farante tion**, *li...=By (in, or, through) doing that, he....* To form the substantive, change **A** into **O**. **La Faranto**=*The doer (the person doing)*. These three forms are applicable to all the three participles in both the active and passive voices (see paras. 208—210).

LIST OF SUFFIXES (Sufiksoj).

54. The following lists of suffixes (31) and prefixes (7 in number) should be carefully studied, since innumerable words of the finest shade of meaning can be formed by their aid, in fact they are the groundwork of the language. In cases where a suffix can be used as a root, the word it helps to form is given. The hyphens are only used to show the root, suffix, and grammatical termination of the examples. The student should form other words himself, and study the works of the best authors. (For remarks on suffixes and prefixes see paras. 270—290).

-AC- Denotes badness of quality or condition.

dom-o, a house, **dom-ac-o**, a tumble-down house.
ceval-o, a horse, **ceval-ac-o**, a sorry nag.

-AD- Denotes the continuation of an action (para. 270):
paf-o, a shot, or discharge, **paf-ad-o**, a firing, fusilade.
ir-i, to go, **ir-ad-i**, to continue going.

-AJ- Denotes some real or concrete thing made from, or having the quality of, the root (**aj-o**, a thing), (para. 271):

mola, soft, **mol-aj-o**, a soft thing, or substance.
frukt-o, fruit, **frukt-aj-o**, jam.

-AN- Denotes a member, inhabitant, or partisan
(**an-o**, a member (of a club, etc.) (para. 272):
vilağ-o, a village, **vilağ-an-o**, a villager.
London-o, London, **London-an-o**, a Londoner.

-AR- Denotes a collection of the idea implied in the root (**ar-o**, a collection, flock), (para. 273):
arb-o, a tree, **arb-ar-o**, a wood.
hom-o, a man, **hom-ar-o**, mankind.

-CJ- These letters, substituted for one or more of the letters of a masculine name, make it an affectionate diminutive (para. 274) :

Petr-o, *Peter*, **Pe-ĉj-o**, *Pete*.

Vilhelm-o, *William*, **Vilhel-ĉj-o**, *Willie*, **Vilhe-ĉj-o**, *Will*, **Vil-ĉj-o**, *Billy*, **Vi-ĉj-o**, *Bill*.

-NJ- For feminine names insert *nj* instead of *ij* (para. 274) :

Mari-o, *Mary*, **Ma-nj-o**, *Polly*.

Helen-o, *Helen*, **Hele-nj-o**, *Nelly*, **He-nj-o**, *Nell*.

-EBL- Denotes possibility, similar to the English terminations *-able*, *-ible* (**ebl-a**, *possible*, **ebl-o**, *perhaps*), (para. 275) :

leg-i, *to read*, **leg-ebl-a**, *legible*.

tra-vid-i, *to see through*, **tra-vid-ebl-a**, *transparent*.

-EC- Denotes an abstract quality of the idea conveyed in the root, like the English terminations *-ness*, *-tude*, *-ity* (**ec-o**, *a distinctive mark*, or *quality*), (para. 271) :

bon-a, *good*, **bon-ec-o**, *goodness*.

kurag-o, *courage*, **kurağ-ec-o**, *fortitude*.

-EDZ- Denotes a married person (**edz-o**, *a husband*), (para. 276) :

doktor-o, *a doctor*, **doktor-edz-in-o**, *a doctor's wife*.

lav-ist-in-o, *a washerwoman*, **lav-ist-in-edz-o**, *a washerwoman's husband*.

-EG- Denotes augmentation, intensity of degree (**eg-a** *intense*, **eg-ec-o**, *intensity*), (para. 277) :

grand-a, *great*, **grand-eg-a**, *enormous*.

pord-o, *a door*, **pord-eg-o**, *a portal, outer-door*.

-EJ- Denotes the place specially used for, or allotted to, the idea implied in the root (*ej-o, place, location*), (para. 278) :

preg-i, to pray, preg-ej-o, a church.

tomb-o, a grave, tomb, tomb-ej-o, a graveyard, cemetery.

-EM- Denotes propensity, inclination, disposition (*em-o, a disposition, bias, tendency*), (para. 275) :

babil-i, to chatter, babil-em-a, chattering.

pac-o, peace, pac-em-a, inclined to peace, peaceful.

-ER- Denotes one of many objects of the same kind, a small fragment (*er-o, an item*), (para. 273) :

sabl-o, sand, sabl-er-o, a grain of sand.

mon-o, money, mon-er-o, a coin.

-ESTR- Denotes a chief, leader, ruler, or head of (*estr-o, a chief*), (para. 272) :

sip-o, a ship, sip-estr-o, a captain of a ship.

imperi-o, an empire, imperi-estr-o, an emperor.

-ET- Denotes diminution of degree (*et-a, little, small*), (para. 277) :

mont-o, a mountain, mont-et-o, a hill.

rid-i, to laugh, rid-et-i, to smile.

-ID- Denotes the young of, offspring, descendant (*id-o, offspring*), (para. 279) :

âsaf-o, a sheep, âsaf-id-o, a lamb.

Izrael-o, Israel, Izrael-id-o, an Israelite.

-IG- Denotes the causing, making, or rendering anything to be in the state implied by the root (*ig-i, to get, to cause, to make*), (para. 280) :

mort-i, to die, mort-ig-i, to kill.

pur-a, clean, pur-ig-i, to clean, purify.

- I-** Denotes the action of becoming, turning to, and has sometimes a reflexive force (**i-g-i**, *to become, to be made*), (para. 280) :
 - rug-a**, *red*, **rug-i-g-i**, *to become red, to blush*.
 - ric-a**, *rich*, **ric-i-g-i**, *to become, or grow rich, or to get rich*.
- IL-** Denotes the tool or instrument or means by which something is done (**il-o**, *a tool, means*), (para. 281) :
 - tran-c-i**, *to cut*, **tran-c-il-o**, *a knife*.
 - pres-i**, *to print*, **pres-il-o**, *a printing press*.
- IN-** Denotes the feminine gender (**in-o**, *a female*), (para. 282) :
 - frat-o**, *a brother*, **frat-in-o**, *a sister*.
 - leon-o**, *a lion*, **leon-in-o**, *a lioness*.
- IND-** Denotes worthiness, deserving of something worthy of (**ind-o**, *worth, merit*), (para. 275) :
 - laud-i**, *to praise*, **laud-ind-a**, *praiseworthy*.
 - estim-o**, *esteem*, **estim-ind-a**, *estimable, worthy of esteem*.
- INC-** Denotes a thing used for holding *only one* object (**ing-o**, *a socket, or sheath*), (para. 278) :
 - plum-o**, *a pen*, **plum-ing-o**, *a penholder*.
 - kandel-o**, *a candle*, **kandel-ing-o**, *a candlestick*.
- IST-** Denotes a person occupied with the idea contained in the root (para. 272) :
 - drog-o**, *a drug*, **drog-ist-o**, *a druggist*.
 - stel-i**, *to steal*, **stel-ist-o**, *a thief*.
- NJ-** See **ÇJ**, page 28, and para. 274.
- OBL-** Denotes a numeral multiple (para. 284) :
 - du**, *two*, **du-obl-a**, *double*.
 - tri**, *three*, **tri-obl-a**, *triple*.

-ON- Denotes a numeral fraction (para. 284) :

kvar, four, kvar-on-o, a fourth.

kvin, five, kvin-on-o, a fifth.

-OP- Denotes a numeral collective (**op-a, collective**), (para. 284) :

du, two, du-op-e, by twos.

dek, ten, dek-op-e, by tens, ten together.

-UJ- Denotes that which contains, produces, encloses, or bears, but capable of containing, etc., a quantity or more than one article (**uj-o, a receptacle**), (para. 278) :

ink-o, ink, ink-uj-o, an inkpot.

plum-o, a pen, plum-uj-o, a pencase (not a pen-holder).

turk-o, a Turk, Turk-uj-o, Turkey.

-UL- Denotes a person or being characterised by the idea implied in the root (para. 272) :

rič-a, rich, rič-ul-o, a rich man.

avar-a, avaricious, avar-ul-o, a miser.

-UM- Has no defined meaning. Its different meanings are easily suggested by the context and the signification of the root to which it is joined. It is rarely used (para. 285) :

kol-o, a neck, kol-um-o, a shirt collar.

plen-a, full, plen-um-i, to fulfil.

man-o, a hand, man-um-o, a cuff.

MOŠTO. This word is not exactly a suffix, although it is usually included amongst them. It is a general title of respect or politeness (para. 283) :

reğ-o, a king. Via Reğa Mošto, your Majesty.

Via Mošto, your Highness, your Eminence, your Worship, your Honour.

55. LIST OF PREFIXES (Prefiksoj).

BO- Denotes any relationship resulting from marriage (para. 286) :

patro, *a father*, **bo-patro**, *a father-in-law*.

filino, *a daughter*, **bo-filino**, *a daughter-in-law*,

DIS- Denotes division, dissemination, separation, etc., as it does in English (para. 287) :

jeti, *to throw*, **dis-jeti**, *to throw about, to scatter*.

Širi, *to tear*, **dis-Širi**, *to tear in pieces*.

EK- Denotes the beginning of an action, or its short duration (para. 288) :

kanti, *to sing*, **ek-kanti**, *to begin to sing*.

brili, *to shine*, **ek-brili**, *to flash*.

EKS- Denotes late, formerly, like the English *ex-*.

kolonelo, *colonel*, **eks-kolonelo**, *ex-colonel*.

edziĝo, *a wedding*, **eks-edziĝo**, *a divorce*.

GE- Denotes persons of both sexes taken together (para. 286) :

patro, *a father*, **ge-patroj**, *parents*, or *father and mother*.

mastro, *a master*, **ge-mastroj**, *master and mistress*.

MAL- Denotes the direct opposite of any idea (para. 289) :

forta, *strong*, **mal-forta**, *weak*.

estimi, *to esteem*, **mal-estimi**, *to despise*.

RE- Denotes, as in English, repetition, again, back (para. 290) :

iri, *to go*, **re-iri**, *to go again*.

diri, *to say*, **re-diri**, *to repeat*.

ELISION (Elizio).

56. **Elision** is not common in Esperanto, except in poetry, where it is used, when required, for the purpose of rhythm. Some prose writers use it, but it is better to avoid its use.

57. The letter *A* in the article **la** may be elided when the article is preceded by a preposition ending in a vowel, for then the *L* of the article can be sounded with the preposition and the full pronunciation given to the first letter of the following word, e.g., **de l' kreo de l' mondo** (for **de la**) = *since the creation of the world*.

(a). In poetry the letter *A* of the article, when not preceded by a preposition, may be elided before a word commencing with a vowel, and the final *O* of a substantive may also be elided, but in the latter case the tonic accent (para. 17) remains on the same syllable on which it would fall if no elision had taken place.

The dropped letter is in all cases noted by an apostrophe.

Ĝis la bela sonĝo de l' homaro (de l' for de la)

Por eterna ben' efektivigos (ben' for beno).

Till the beautiful dream of humanity

Shall be realized for an eternal blessing.

Ni semas kaj semas, neniam lacigas,

Pri l' tempoj estontaj pensante (pri l' for pri la).

We sow and sow, are never weary,

Thinking of times to be.

L' espero, l' obstino kaj la pacienco

Jen estas la signoj, per kies potenco...

Hope, tenacity, and patience

Are the signs by whose potency...

INTERROGATION (Demandado).

58. **Questions** are asked in two ways, viz.,—either by the interrogative adverb **ĉu** = *whether*, or by one of the interrogative words **kia** = *what kind of*, **kial** = *why*, **kiam** = *when*, **kie** = *where*, **kiel** = *how*, **kieſ** = *whose*, **kio** = *what*, **kiom** = *how much*, or *many*, **kiu** = *who*, *which*.

(a). **Ĉu** is used when none of the other words in a sentence are used in an interrogative sense. It is in fact the general word for interrogations.

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu vi kompreñas?* = Do you understand? *Ĉu li legas?* = Does he read? *Ĉu vi havas mian libron?* = Have you my book? *Ĉu vi havas tion, kion mi bezonas?* = Have you what (that which) I want? *Ĉu Johano iris lernejon?* (or, *al lernejo?*) = Did John go (or, has John gone) to school? *Ĉu vi pruntos al mi krajonon?* = Will you lend me a pencil? *Ĉu li estos foririnta, antaŭ ol vi alvenos?* = Will he have gone away before you (will) arrive? *Ĉu vi estus tion farinta, se mi estos tie?* = Would you have done that if I had been there?

When the **verb** following **ĉu** is in the **Imperative** mood, it shows the **ellipsis** of some other verb expressing “wish, desire, etc.” (see paras. 200, 237 (m)).

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu mi iru kaj kunpremu la gorgon de tiu ĉi hundo...?* (Zamenhof, “La Rabistoj”) = Shall I go and squeeze the throat of this dog...? Here the full phrase would be, *Ĉu vi volas, ke mi iru...?* = Do you wish me to go...? *Ĉu mi aĉetu por vi libron?* = Shall I buy you a book? *Ĉu ni prenu fiakron?* = Shall we take a cab?

The **verb** is sometimes **omitted** when a question is preceded by an assertion.

EXAMPLES.—*Hodiaŭ estas merkredo, ĉu ne?* (or, *ĉu ne vere?*) = To-day is Wednesday, isn't it? *Ili diris al vi la veron, ĉu ne?* = They told you the truth, didn't they?

(b). The following examples show the use of the interrogatives **kia**, **kial**, **kiam**, etc.

EXAMPLES.—*Kian leteron vi skribis?* = What kind of letter did you write? *Kial vi ne respondis?* Why did you not answer? *Kiam li alvenos?* = When will he come? *Kie estas la postoficejo?* = Where is the post-office? *Kiel vi fariſtion?* = How did you do that? *Kies domo estas tiu?* = Whose house is that? *Kion vi konsilas al mi fari?* = What do you advise me to do? *Kiom da ĉevaloj estas tie?* = How many horses are there? (at that place). *Kiom kostas tio?* = How much does that cost? *Kiu estas en la ĝardeno?* = Who is in the garden? *Kiuj estas la tagoj de la semajno?* = Which are the days of the week? *Kiun vi vidis en la preĝejo?* = Whom did you see in the church? *Kiu estas tie?* = Who is there?

(c). Of the above, those ending in a consonant are invariable. Those ending in a vowel can take the accusative *N*, but **kia** and **kiu** are the only words which take the plural *J* (para. 142).

EXAMPLES.—*Kien vi iras?* = Whither are you going? *Kiajn tranĉilojn vi bezonas?* = What kind of knives do you need? *Kiujn librojn vi acetis?* = Which books did you buy?

(d). From **kiom** the adjective **kioma** = *how much* is formed, and this also may be used as an interrogative.

EXAMPLE.—*Je kioma horo vi venos?* = At what o'clock (hour) will you come?

(See correlative words, paras. 147—157. For further examples see paras. 64, 170. For place of interrogative see para. 91).

NEGATION (Neado).

59. **Double negatives** are not used in Esperanto, for, if employed, they would, as in English, have an affirmative meaning.

(a). **Ne** = *no, not*, is the word in general use to imply negation. It is placed after the noun or pronoun and precedes the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ne havas libroon* = I have not a book. *Cu vi lin ne vidis* (or, *Cu vi ne vidis lin?*) = Did you not see him?

(b). The nine correlative words, **nenia, nenial, neniam, nenie, neniel, nenes, nenio, neniom, neniu**, also imply negation.

EXAMPLES.—*Li havas nenian sperton* = He has no kind of experience. *Li ne havas ian sperton* = He has not any kind of experience. *Nenial li subite foriris de Londono* = For no reason he suddenly left London. *Mi nenion trovis* = I found nothing. *Mi ne trovis ion (ion, not nenion, here)* = I did not find anything. (See correlative words, paras. 147—157).

(c). **Nek** = *nor* and **nek...nek** = *neither...nor* have also a negative meaning.

EXAMPLES.—*Nek mi nek li estis tie* = Neither I nor he was there. *Mi vidis nek Johanon nek Georgon* = I saw neither John nor George.

Nek is generally used in the second clause of a sentence, although the first is negative.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ne scias la francan lingvon, nek la anglan, nek la turkan* = I do not know the French language, or (nor) English, or (nor) Turkish. *Nenio estas al mi pli kara, nek dolca, ol vi* = Nothing is dearer to me or (nor) sweeter than you. *Mi ne renkontis lin, nek lian fraton* = I did not meet him or (nor) his brother.

(d). Compound words with **ne**, **sen**, **mal**, have also a negative signification, and such words are often employed with a negative to express an affirmative assertion.

EXAMPLES.—*La okazo ne estis neatendita*=The event was not unexpected. *Lia riĉeco ne estis senlima*=His fortune was not unlimited. *Li ne estis malhonesta*=He was not dishonest.

60. Double Negative.—Occasionally a double negative is used to give strong force to a negation. Dr. Zamenhof, in his translation of Hamlet, Act I., Scene 5, renders “Lay your hands again upon my sword: swear by my sword, never to speak of this that you have heard” by **Metu viajn manojn denove sur la glavon, kaj ripetu, ke vi neniam al neniu diros pri la apero de la nokto**, lit.=*Lay your hands again upon the sword, and repeat, that you never, to no one, will speak of the apparition of the night.*

Some Esperantists do not consider this a double negative, but it undoubtedly is, according to the literal English translation; in either case it expresses admirably the strong negative force of the oath.

61. Of course, when two negatives refer to different verbs, expressed or unexpressed, this is not a double negative.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ne volis, ne al vi skribi*=I did not wish, not to write to you. *Ne nur ne malamiko, sed kunbatalanto li estis*=(He was) not only not an enemy, but he was a comrade in arms (fellow combatant).

62. A double negative may be used in such an expression as “could not help,” etc.

EXAMPLE.—*Li ne povis ne kisi la malgrandulon*=He could not help kissing the little one. Lit.:—He could not not kiss the little one.

QUESTIONS AND REPLIES (Demandoj kaj Respondoj).

63. **Jes** = *yes* is the word used to answer a question affirmatively.

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu vi vidis mian patron?* *Jes!* = Did you see my father? Yes. *Jes*, with the conjunction *ke*, is also used for "it is so," as, *mi vin certigas, ke jes* = I assure you that it is so.

64. To give force to affirmative or negative replies one can add to **ne** or **jes** any suitable adverb, as **certe** = *certainly*, **ja** = *indeed*, **komprenable** = *of course*, etc., etc., or repeat the verb of the interrogation without its complement, in the same way as in English we often repeat the auxiliary of the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu vi faris tion?* = Did you do that? *Jes!* *Jes!* *Mi faris*, or *Ne!* *Ne!* *Mi ne faris* = Yes, yes, I did, or, No, no! I did not. *Ĉu vi finis rian laboron?* = Have you finished your work? *Jes!* *ja!* *Mi finis*, or, *Ne,* *ju!* *Mi ne finis* = Yes, indeed, I have, or, No, indeed, I have not. *Ĉu vi mortigis tiun birdon?* = Did you kill that bird? *Jes!* *Certe mi mortigis*, or, *Ne,* *komprenable*, *mi ne mortigis* = Yes! Certainly I did, or, No! Of course, I didn't! *Ĉu vi deziras kafon?* = Do you want coffee? *Jes,* *mi deziras*, or, *Ne,* *mi ne deziras*; *mi jam havas* = Yes, I do, or, No, I do not; I have (some) already.

64. (a). **When the verb is omitted** in the reply, the case which it governs must be used.

EXAMPLES.—*Kiom kostis la ĉapelo?* *Naŭ ŝilingojn* (*aŭ, ji kostis naŭ ŝilingojn*) = What did the hat cost? Nine shillings (or, it cost nine shillings). *Kien vi iras?* *En la ĝardenon* (*aŭ, mi irus en la ĝardenon*) = Where (whither) are you going? Into the garden (or, I am going into the garden). *Kiom pezas la kesto?* *Deknaŭ funtojn* = What does the chest weigh? Nineteen pounds; but, *Kiom estas la pezo de la kesto?* *Deknaŭ funtoj* = What is the weight of the chest? Nineteen pounds.

THE ACCUSATIVE (La Akuzativo).

65. Accusative when used.—The accusative is used in Esperanto :—

- (1). To show the direct object of a verb.
- (2). To show motion towards something (Rule 13, para. 94).
- (3). To show a preposition has been omitted (Rules 8 and 14, para. 94).

The following are examples of these three uses :—

66. (1). To show the direct object of a verb.

(a). **After transitive verbs** the accusative is used to show the direct object.

EXAMPLES.—*Johano vidas la knabon*=John sees the boy. *Georgo aĉeĉis bonan ĉevalon*=George bought a good horse. Now in either of these sentences the order of the words can be changed without altering the meaning, for *La knabon vidas Johano* would still mean “John sees the boy,” because *Johano*, being in the nominative, is clearly the subject, and *knabon*, being in the accusative, is clearly the object. But if we inverted the words in English, the sense would be entirely changed (see order of words, paras. 73—93).

(b). **After participles.**—The accusative is also used after active participles (adjectival or adverbial) to denote the object.

EXAMPLES.—*Johano estis rigardanta la knabon, kiam mi lin vidis*=John was looking at the boy, when I saw him. *Johano, vidante la knabon, donas al li pomon*=John, seeing the boy, gives him an apple. *Georgo estis aĉetinta ĉevalon*=George had bought a horse. *Georgo, aĉetinte ĉevalon, donis ĝin al sia frato*=George, having bought (or, after buying) a horse, gave it to his brother (para. 212 (d)).

(c). **When a verb is omitted.**—The accusative is also used in exclamations and in expressions in which some verb expressing “wish” or “desire” is understood (see para. 64 (a)).

EXAMPLES.—*Peston al la tranĉilo!* *Mi tranĉis al mi la fingron!*=Plague on the knife! I have cut my finger! *Bonan tagon,* *Sinjoro*=Good day, sir. *Saluton al vi,* *sinjorino*=(lit.) Salutation to you, madam. In reply to a question, the accusative is used, but only if the verb in the question, which is omitted, governs the accusative, as:—*Kiom kostas tiu ĉi krajono?* (*Ĝi kostas*) *du pencejn*=How much does this pencil cost? (It costs) twopence. *Kiom estas la kosto de tiu ĉi krajono?* (*Estus*) *du pencej*=What is the price of this pencil? (It is) twopence.

67. (2). To show motion towards something.

(a). **Accusative of direction.**—To show direction towards which movement (physical or moral) is made the accusative is used, and this is generally called “the accusative of direction.” It will be observed, however, that we can also use a preposition to show the motion, and, if such preposition in itself shows movement, its complement must be in the nominative, since all prepositions govern that case; but if the preposition does not in itself denote movement, then its complement must be in the accusative.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi iras Romon* (*aŭ, al Romo*)=I am going to Rome. *Li kuris en la ĝardenon*=He ran *into* the garden. The preposition *en* does not show movement, therefore *ĝardenon* is in the accusative, but *Li kuris en la ĝardeno*=He ran *in* the garden. This means he was already in the garden, and was running in it. *Sur la danan tronon mi havas rajtojn*=On the Danish throne I have rights. *Tio ĉi povas tre influi sur la sukceson de nia afero*=This can influence much the success of our affair.

(b). Adverbs also take the accusative of direction.

EXAMPLES.—*Kien vi iras?* *Mi iras nenien hodiaŭ*=Where (whither) are you going? I am going nowhere to-day. *Ĝi falis teren* (or, *sur la teron*)=It fell to the ground (or, on to the ground; lit., earthwards). *Li iris hejmen, sed mi restis hejme*=He went home, but I remained at home.

68. (3). To show that a preposition has been omitted.

As stated in Rule 8, para. 94, every preposition in Esperanto governs the nominative case.

By Rule 14 we are told that every preposition has a defined and constant meaning, but that if we *must use some preposition*, and the direct sense does not show what special preposition we are to take, we can then either use the indefinite preposition *je*, or the accusative without a preposition. The following are examples under this head in which the accusative may be used :—

(a). **After doubtful verbs.**—From the foregoing remarks it follows that if we do not know whether a verb governs the accusative or not, we can always use the accusative, if no ambiguity is occasioned thereby, otherwise some preposition should be employed instead.

For instance, we can say :—*Obeu vian patron*, or, *Obeu je via patro*, or *Obeu al via patro*=Obey your father. *Si helpis al sia frato*, or *Si helpis sian fraton*=She helped her brother. *Li pardonis sian filon*, or, *Li pardonis al sia filo*=He forgave his son. But in phrases where doubt as to meaning may arise we must always use a preposition, as :—*Li pardonis al sia filo lian kulpon*=He forgave his son his fault. Not *Li pardonis sian filon lian kulpon*, for the two accusatives here would create confusion. *Li sciigis la novajon en la dua de marto*, or, *Li sciigis pri la novajo la duan de marto*=He learnt the news on the 2nd of March.

(b). **Duration or any point of time.**

EXAMPLES.—*Mi restis tie kvar semajnojn* (or, *dum* or *tra, kvar semajnej*)=I remained there (during) four weeks. *La proksiman lunden* (or, *en la proksima lundo*) *mi veturo*s Londonon (or, *al Londono*)=Next Monday I shall go to London. *Printempon* (or, *en printempo*) *floroj aperas*=In Spring flowers appear. *Li venos dimancon* (or, *en dimancon*)=He will come on a Sunday. If we wish to say “He will come on Sunday,” we must translate the word “next,” and say, *Li venos la proksiman dimancon*. Similarly the accusative may be used for dates, as :—*Washington* (pronounced

Uashington) estis naskita la dudek-duan (or, *en la dudek-dua*) *de februaro* = Washington was born on the 22nd of February.
La 23^a marto, 1906^a, or, *Je la 23^a de marto, 1906^a* = 23rd of March, 1906.

(c). **Price, weight, measure.**

EXAMPLES.—*La libroj kostis dek ŝilingojn* (or, *po dek ŝilingoj*) *por dekduo* = The books cost ten shillings (or, at the rate of ten shillings) a dozen. *La ĉambro estas alta dekdu funtojn* (or, *je dekdu funtoj*) = The room is twelve feet high. *La kesto pezas tridek funtojn* (or, *je tridek funtoj*) = The chest weighs thirty pounds.

69. General Remarks on the Accusative.

From the foregoing examples we see the important part the accusative *N* plays in the construction of Esperanto, the clearness it gives to the meaning of a sentence, and the advantage it affords in permitting words to be placed in almost any order. The following examples will further illustrate this.

(a). **Qualifying and Predicative Adjectives.**—An adjective is termed “qualifying” when its noun or pronoun actually possesses the quality which the adjective denotes; and the adjective then agrees with the noun or pronoun both in case and number. But a predicative adjective, although it agrees in number, is always in the nominative (see para. 108).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi trovis la belajn rozojn* (*au, rozojn belajn*) = I found the beautiful roses. *Mi trovis la rozojn belajn* = I found the roses beautiful. In the first example the assertion is that beautiful roses were found; but in the second you assert only that you found, or discovered, that they were beautiful; they might, in someone else's opinion, have been the contrary.

(b). **Qualifying adverbs** are invariable.

EXAMPLES.—*Li skribis al mi tute malveran raporton pri la afero* = He wrote me an entirely false statement of the matter. *Mi pensis, ke ŝi estas treege bela* = I thought (that) she was (is) extremely beautiful.

(c). **Nouns and pronouns in apposition** have also like cases and numbers.

EXAMPLES.—*Vi serĉas la princon, Hamleton*=You seek the Prince, Hamlet. *La diablo lin prenu, la sentaĝulon*=The devil take him, the wretch !

N.B.—Note the difference of case of two nouns in the following sentences :—*Kuracisto havis du infanojn, filon kaj filinon*; *li nomis sian filon, Johano, kaj sian filinon, Mario*. *Kiam li parolis pri ili kun mi, li ciama nomis sian filon Johanon, kun roĉo de amo, sed sian filinon Marion, antipati*=A doctor had two children, a son and a daughter ; he named his son, John, and his daughter, Mary. When he spoke to me about them, he always named his son, John, in voice of affection, but his daughter, Mary, with antipathy.

N.B.—In this example, when the nouns (*Johano* and *Mario*) are in the nominative, they express what is *predicated* or said about the objects (*filon* and *filinon*). But when they agree in case with the objects (*filon* and *filinon*), they show they are nouns in apposition (see paras. 108, 109).

(d). **Proper names** can be shown to be in the accusative by adding an apostrophe and *N*, if considered necessary, but the *N* cannot be pronounced unless it is preceded by a vowel. Some writers add *ON* when the name ends with a consonant, or simply *N* if it ends in *O*; if it ends in any other vowel, they either simply add *N*, or substitute an apostrophe for the vowel, and add *ON*. We think the best plan is to write the name in full, and then add the apostrophe and *N*.

EXAMPLES.—Smith, *Smith'n.* Robinson, *Robinson'n.* Reeve, *Reeve'n.* Stella, *Stella'n.* Sara, *Saran.* Memfis, *Memfison.* Sargon, *Sargonon.* Of course proper names which have been converted by use into Esperanto are treated like other nouns in *O*, as, *Londono*, *Londonon*, *Berlino*, *Berlinon*. *Jones iris Berlinon, kaj renkontis Arturon Brown*=Jones went to Berlin and met Arthur Brown.

CAPITAL LETTERS (Grandaj Literoj).

70. **Capital Letters** (Grandaj Literoj) may be used as they are in English, but as their use varies in different languages, it is as well to follow the majority of Esperanto writers. We, therefore, advise the student to—

Use capital letters, as in English, except :—

(a). For words derived from the names of places, as :—**La angla nacio**=*The English nation.* **Li estas franco kaj logas en Francujo**=*He is a Frenchman and lives in France.* **Sur la danan tronon mi havas rajtojn**=*On the Danish throne I have rights.*

(b). For the names of the days of the week and the names of the months, as :—**Mi alvenos lunden**=*I shall arrive on a Monday.*¹ **Li estis naskita la dudek-duan de februaro**=*He was (had been) born (on) the 22nd of February.*

(c). For the pronoun “I”=*mi*.

Some authors write **Sinjoro**=*Mr.* with a small letter, but it is more complimentary to use a capital. Dr. Zamenhof uses capital letters for the names of months, but most authors follow the custom of their own language, hence we often find small letters used.

¹ Note that *lunden* means “on a (or, some) Monday.” If we wish to say “on Monday,” meaning “next Monday,” the translation would be *Mi alvenos la proksiman lunden*=*I shall arrive on (the next) Monday (see para. 68 (b)).*

PUNCTUATION (Interpunkcio).

71. **Punctuation** is only necessary to make clear the sense we wish to convey in writing. Happily it is not so important in Esperanto as in English, where a simple comma may make a great difference in the meaning of a sentence, and hence the verbosity of law documents in which stops are not used. Dr. Zamenhof places a comma before each interrogative or relative word, between the terms of comparison, etc.; also before "and," but only if the sense is clearly intended to be interrupted.

72. The following is what Dr. Zamenhof has written on the subject in the "Esperantisto." We give it in Esperanto, so that the student can see the punctuation for himself:—

La reguloj pri la uzado de la interpunkcioj estas en nia lingvo pli-malpli tiaj samaj, kiel en ĉiuj aliaj lingvoj; sekve ĉiu povas uzadi en Esperanto la interpunkciojn tiel, kiel li uzas ilin en sia nacia lingvo. Estas vere, ke en diversaj detaloj la uzado de la interpunkcioj estas malegala en diversaj lingvoj; sed ĉar la objekto ne estas tre grava, tial ni pensas, ke ne venis ankoraŭ la tempo por difini en nia lingvo severajn regulojn por tiuj ĉi detaloj. En tiuj ĉi dubaj detaloj ĉiu povas uzi en Esperanto la interpunkciojn tiel, kiel li uzas ilin en sia nacia lingvo, kaj nur la uzo iom post iom ellaboros por tiuj ĉi negravaj detaloj difinitajn regulojn.

Translation.—The rules regarding the use of stops are in our language more or less the same as in all other languages, therefore everyone can continue using in Esperanto stops in such a manner as he uses

them in his national language. It is true that in several details the use of stops is different in various languages, but since the matter is not very important, we think the time has not yet come to lay down in our language strict rules for these details. In these doubtful details everyone can use in Esperanto the stops he uses in his national language, and only custom, little by little, will work out for these unimportant details definite rules.

ORDER OF WORDS (Ordigo de Vortoj).

73. Since Esperanto has eliminated the defects of other languages, and embraced only the good points of each, its flexibility is great as regards the order of words in a sentence. This is principally owing to the accusative *N*, distinguishing clearly the object from the subject, it being available for all nouns, pronouns, adjectives, participles, and even adverbs; also to the fact that prepositions and conjunctions do not interfere with the proper functions of other words. In English the accusative case is only distinguished in the pronouns *he*, *him*, *she*, *her*, etc., etc., all other words of case being invariable, except, perhaps, the adverbs *here*, *hither*, *where*, *whither*, etc., etc., which, by the bye, are often not used. It is true that English has a possessive case, which in Esperanto is applied only to the correlative group of words ending in *-ES*, viz., **ies**, **kies**, etc. (see paras. 106 (*b*), 154); but even this doubtful advantage is lessened by the fact that the apostrophe *S* in English is useless in *speech* in the plural when the word ends in *S*. For instance, when one says, "*That is my brothers' house*," does one mean it belongs to one brother or more? Certainly, as *written*, with the apostrophe after the *S*, the meaning is two or more, but, as *spoken*, one would naturally suppose it belonged to one brother only. So, to be clear, we should have to fall back on the Esperanto mode of expression, and say, *That is the house of my brothers* = **Tiu estas la domo de miaj fratoj**; even then Esperanto is clearer than English, for the pronoun (**maj**) is a plural form, whereas in English *my* is the same for both numbers.

74. Owing to the above advantages, words may be arranged in almost any order in Esperanto, and yet be intelligible; but of course it is advisable they should follow one another in the natural sequence of our thoughts. The first point is, that the meaning of a sentence should be absolutely clear, and, secondly, that the sounds should be as harmonious as they can be, combined with clearness of expression. The student is advised to read the "Fundamenta Krestomatio," by Dr. Zamenhof, which will familiarize him with the construction of the language, and he will then rapidly acquire a knowledge as to the best order for words.

75. **Place of the subject and object.**—The subject is usually placed before and the object after the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Mia fratino aĉetis libron*=My sister bought a book. *Rikardo manĝas kukon*=Richard is eating a cake. *Kukon manĝas Rikardo* means exactly the same, and would be quite intelligible, but the mind would not grasp the meaning so rapidly, and it would be absurd, without a reason, to place words in such an unnatural order.

76. **Position for emphasis.**—Words are often placed out of the usual order, as they are in English, to give emphasis, or for the sake of contrast.

EXAMPLES.—*Lin mi renkontis, ne ŝin*=Him I met, not her. *Unu aferon ni scias, ke ni konas nencion*=One thing we know, that we know nothing.

77. **Place of the predicate.**—The predicate, or what is said about the subject, is usually placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Li estos kontenta* (or *Li kontentigos*) *se vi donos al li ŝilingon*=He will be satisfied if you (will) give him a shilling. *Si farigus pli sana, se la vetero estus pli varma, or Si pli sanigus, se la vetero pli varmigus*=She would get better if the weather became warmer. But after the word *kiel* it is preferable to put the predicate before the verb, as:—*Kiel malsana li ŝajnas!*=How ill he looks! *Kiel li ŝajnas malsana* would be quite right, but we see here that Esperanto

follows English exactly in its order of words, as it does in many phrases, in which the construction is quite different in other languages.

78. Place of the direct complement.—We have stated that the object is placed usually after the verb, but if it is a pronoun, it may follow or precede it.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi lin malamas*, or, *Mi malamas lin*=I detest him. If, however, the pronoun be followed by an explanatory phrase, it is better to place it after the verb, as:—*Mi vidis lin kušantan sur la lito*=I saw him lying on the bed. *Mi renkontis ŝin, guste kiam ŝi estis eliranta*=I met her just as she was going out (see para. 29).

79. Place of the indirect complement.—The complement is said to be indirect when it is governed by a preposition (see Syntax, para. 31). It is usually placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Zorgu pri tio*=Take care of (about) that. *Alkonduku lin al mi*=Bring him to me. *La domo estas konstruata de mia patro*=The house is being built by my father. *Mi ĝin donis* (or, *donis ĝin*) *al li por lia nepino*=I gave it to him for his granddaughter. Of course, we can place it before the verb if we wish, just as we can in English, and as we probably should in the following phrase:—*El la dirita regulo sekvas, ke...*=From the said rule, it follows that...

80. Place of circumstantial complements (see Syntax, para. 32).—These complements, which mark the time, place, manner, cause, etc., of an action, are usually placed first or last in a sentence.

EXAMPLES.—*En printempo floroj aperas*=In spring flowers appear. *Nur kelke da knaboj ludadis sur la kampo*=Only a few boys were playing in the field; or, *Sur la kampo ludadis nur kelke da knaboj*. In a sentence like the following the complement naturally is placed last, as:—*Mi kriegis pro la dolorego*=I howled with the intense pain. But in one like the following, where there are two or more circumstantial complements, they naturally should come first in the sentence, as:—*Kun la haroj malordigitaj, kaj la okuloj eksaltantaj el la kapo de (or, pro) teruro, ŝi kuregis tra la strato*=With dishevelled hair, and eyes starting out of her (the) head with terror, she rushed down the street.

81. The complements of nouns, adjectives, or participial adjectives, always follow them.

EXAMPLES.—*La amo al (or, por) Dio*=Love to (for) God.
Mirigita de liaj vortoj, mi eliris el la domo=Astonished at his words, I left (went out of) the house.

82. Place of the infinitive.—The infinitive being really a noun, takes its place, according as it is the subject, predicate, or complement. When it is the subject, it generally precedes the verb, unless one wishes to place it otherwise for the sake of emphasis.

EXAMPLES.—*Scii estas utile*=Knowledge (to know) is useful.
Honte estas mensogi=It is shameful to lie. **If the predicate**, it usually follows the verb, as:—*Tion fari estas agi malsage*=To do that is to act foolishly. **If the complement**, it follows the word of which it is the complement, as:—*Mi tre deziras paroli kun vi*=I want very much to speak with you. *Ni trinkas por sensoifī, kaj ni mangas por semalsati* (or *por sati*)=We drink to allay thirst (to be without thirst), and we eat to allay hunger (to be without hunger), (to be sated). *Mi devas iri hejmen*=I must go home. *La elekti tion fari restas ĉe vi*=The option of doing that rests with you. *Li estos tre felica vin vidi morgaŭ*=He will be very glad to see you to-morrow. *La deziro kontraŭdiri*=The desire of contradicting (to contradict).

83. Place of the noun.—The noun is placed according as it is the subject, predicate, complement (direct, indirect, or circumstantial), (see paras. 76—80).

84. Place of the adjective.—The position of the adjective varies in national languages. In English it is nearly always placed before the word it qualifies, and we may say that this is generally its place in Esperanto. The following remarks and examples of the four classes of adjectives, “qualifying,” “predicative,” “possessive,” and “demonstrative,” will give an idea of its position, in accordance with the sense or emphasis wished to be conveyed.

(a). **A qualifying** adjective may either precede or follow the word it qualifies.

EXAMPLES.—*La malfeliča knabo* (or, *knabo malfeliča*) *verdis sian monujon*=The unfortunate boy lost his purse. *Li renkontis maljunan virinon* (or, *maljunulinon*), *tre grasan, portantan* (or, *kiu portas*) *grandan korbon, plenan de* (or, *je*) *maturaj pomoj*=He met an old woman, very fat, carrying (or, who is carrying) a large basket, full of ripe apples.

(b). **A predicative** adjective is usually placed after the verb, and noun or pronoun, to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.—*La papero estas blanka*=The paper is white. *Ili trovis la mangajojn bonaj*=They found the eatables good. *Mi pensis, ke mi vidas ilin mortigantaj la homon*=I thought (that) I saw (see) them killing (that they are killing) the man.

N.B.—A predicative adjective does not agree in case, when its noun or pronoun is in the accusative (paras. 69 (a), and 108 (b)).

(c). **A possessive** adjective precedes the word to which it relates, but if we wish to speak in an affectionate strain, we can place it after the noun.

EXAMPLES.—*Mia patrino kaj miaj gefratoj donis al mi donacon en mia naskotago*=My mother and my brothers and sisters gave me a present on my birthday. *Ne ploru, patrino mia!*=Do not weep, mother dear! (or, mother mine!). *Johano mia, ne faru tion!*=John dear, do not do that.

(d). **A demonstrative** adjective always precedes the word to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.—*Tiu sinjorino estas mia fratino*=That lady is my sister. *Du ŝilingoj ne suficios por aĉeti tiun libron*=Two shillings will not buy that book.

(e). **To show emphasis**, adjectives can, as in English, be placed first in phrases.

EXAMPLES.—*Bona, malavara kaj ĝentila, li estis estimata de ĉiuj*=Kind, generous and courteous, he was esteemed by all. *Feliĉa estas la homo, kiu ne havas malamikojn*=Happy is the man who has no enemies.

85. Place of the pronoun.—The place of the pronoun (personal or otherwise) is fixed according as it may be the subject or complement (direct or indirect), (see paras. 75, 78, 79). As in English, a personal pronoun, when the subject, can follow the verb in some cases.

EXAMPLES.—“*Jes,*” *diris li,* “*vi estas prava*” = “Yes,” said he, “you are right.” “*Kial,*” *ekkriis la homo,* “*vi faris tion?*” = “Why,” cried the man, “did you do that?”

86. Place of the verb.—The verb is, as a rule, placed after the subject, but this does not mean that it is to follow it immediately, for it can be separated by predicates, complements, and adverbs.

EXAMPLES.—*La lingvo Esperanto, kreita de doktoro Zamenhof,* *estas jam uzata en la tuta mondo civilizita* = The language Esperanto, created by Dr. Zamenhof, is already used in the whole civilized world. In sentences like the following it is, as in English, often placed before the subject. “*Kien ni iros,*” *diris mi al li,* “*kiam via amiko alvenos?*” = “Where shall we go,” said I to him, “when your friend arrives (shall arrive)?” *Nun alvenas la horo de la sukceso por la lingvo internacia* = Now comes the hour of (the) success for the international language. *Aperis sur la monteto la figuro de rajdanto* = There appeared on the hill the figure of a horseman. (For the place of the Infinitive see para. 82).

87. Place of the participle varies as follows:—

(a). **When forming the compound tenses of verbs,** the participle follows the auxiliary verb *esti*, but not necessarily immediately after it (see (d)).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi estos fininta mian leteron, antaŭ ol li alvenos* = I shall have finished my letter before he arrives (will arrive). *Si estas tre amata de ĉiuj* = She is very much loved by all.

(b). **In a qualifying or predicative sense** they generally follow their noun or pronoun.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi vidis lin riproĉeganta kaj batanta la knabon* = I saw him (that he is) rebuking and beating the boy. *Cu vi vidas mian hundon ĉasantan ŝafon?* = Do you see my dog chasing a sheep? *La fraŭlino leganta la ĵurnalon estas tre*

bela = The young lady reading the newspaper is very beautiful.
La konstruata domo (or, *domo konstruata*) = The house under construction (being constructed). *Mi imagis, ke mi vidas la homon kisanta la virinon* = I fancied (that) I saw the man kissing (that he is kissing) the woman.

(c). **An adverbial participle** generally precedes its noun or pronoun.

EXAMPLES.—*L'idante sian amikon, li haltis* = (On) seeing his friend, he stopped. *Leginte la libron, si ekdormis* = After reading (or having read) the book, she fell asleep (para. 212(d)).

(d). **For emphasis** the participle may be put first in a sentence.

EXAMPLES.—*Tedita vojaĝi, mi decidis reveni hejmen* = Tired of travelling, I decided to return home. *Amataj kaj estimataj de ĉiuj, la fratoj havis multajn amikojn* = Loved and esteemed by all, the brothers had many friends.

NOTE.—If qualifying and predicative participles are not placed in their natural position, viz., after their nouns or pronouns, the sense may be entirely changed. For instance, in the following two sentences the words are the same, but the sense varies with their positions:—**Si, kuranta en la ĉambron, vidis mian hundon** = She, (who is) running into the room, saw my dog (here **kuranta** is the qualifying participle of **Si**). **Si vidis mian hundon kuranta en la ĉambron** = She saw my dog (that he is) running into the room (here **kuranta** is the predicative participle of **hundon**, and, being predicative, does not take the accusative (see paras. 69 (a) and 108 (b))). The above two sentences might be altered as follows, showing different meanings, by using in the first an adverbial participle, and in the second a qualifying participle, as:—**Kurante en la ĉambron, si vidis mian hundon** = (While) running into the room, she saw my dog. **Si vidis mian hundon kurantan en la ĉambo** = She saw my dog (which is) running in the room. (**Ĉambo** here; not **ĉambron**, accusative of direction). A phrase is often clearer if the conjunction **ke** be used instead of a predicative participle. For instance, instead of **Si vidis mian hundon kuranta en la ĉambron**, we can say **Si vidis, ke mia hundo kuras en la cambron** = She saw that my dog was (is) running into the room.

88. **Place of the adverb.**—The adverb, as a rule, immediately precedes or follows the word to which it refers, or which it qualifies.

EXAMPLES.—*Li rapide kuras*, or, *Li kuras rapide*=He runs rapidly. *La virino zorge legis* (or, *legis zorge*) *la leteron*=The woman read the letter carefully. *Li gentile demetas la ĉapelon*=He politely took off his hat.

N.B.—In this last example it is more elegant to place the adverb, as in English, before the verb.

(a). **To avoid ambiguity**, care, however, must be taken not to place the adverb in a position where it might be taken to refer either to the word which precedes or the word which follows it. For instance, if an adverb be placed between two verbs, it sometimes happens that we cannot tell to which it refers, and the sense is thus materially altered.

EXAMPLE.—*Li ekstreme deziris saĝigi*=He desired extremely to become wise. *Li deziris saĝigi ekstreme*=He desired to become extremely wise. In this example, if we place the adverb between the two verbs, and say *Li deziris ekstreme saĝigi*, the sentence might be translated in either of the above two ways.

(b). **Adverbs of comparison**, such as : **iom**, **multe**, **kiel**, **plej**, **pli**, **sufiĉe**, **tiel**, **tiom**, **tre**, **tro**, are always placed before the words to which they refer.

EXAMPLES.—*Li iom lacigis kaj multe senkuraĝigis*=He became somewhat fatigued and much discouraged. *Kiel malavare li agis, donante al sia frato tiom da mono, kiom li bezonis!*=How generously he acted in giving his brother as much money as he needed ! *Li venos pli aŭ malpli frue*=He will come sooner or later (lit., more or less early). *Vi agis plej sage, farante tion*=You acted most wisely in doing that. *Kio ajn okazos, li estis suficien ŝaĝa por tion fari*=At all events he was wise enough to do that. *Si tre amis sian fraton*=She loved her brother very much. *Li tro mangadas*=He eats too much.

(c). **To give emphasis**, adverbs and adverbial participles may commence a sentence.

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉarme, bele kaj kortusante estis vidi la birdon zorganitan pri sia ido*=Charming, beautiful and touching it was to see the bird taking care of its offspring. *Starante kun la brakoj eletenditaj, li paroladis al la popolamaso*=Standing with arms outstretched, he harangued the populace (see para. 245 (a)).

89. Place of the preposition.—The preposition always immediately precedes its complement.

EXAMPLES.—*Skribu al mi* = Write to me. *Li venis ĉe min kune kun la du hundoj je la tria (horo)* = He came to my house (to me) along with the two dogs at 3 o'clock.

90. Place of the conjunction.—The conjunction always precedes the verb to which it refers, but separated from it by the words which logically intervene.

EXAMPLE.—*Se iu, hodiaŭ matene, deziras min vidi, diru al ĝi, ke mi estas tre okupata* = If anyone (someone), this morning, should desire to see me, tell him (or her) I am very busy.

N.B.—Note that *iu* does not give the sex, therefore *gi* is rightly used; but, as in English, the sense would be clear without the words *al gi*.

91. Place of the interrogative.—In direct questions the subject usually precedes the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Cu vi havas mian libron?* = Have you my book? In English, in many cases, we place the subject first; for instance, in the present tense we often commence a question with "Do"; in the past, with "Have" or "Did"; in the future, with "Shall" or "Will"; so if we substitute *Cu* for any of these words, we have the Esperanto construction, as:—*Cu vi bezonas tiun plumon?* = Do you want that pen? *Cu vi faris tion?* = Did you do that? *Cu li venos tien ĉi?* = Will he come here?

92. Place of the negative.—The negative *ne* = *not*, when it relates directly to a verb, is placed immediately before such verb, but otherwise in its natural position in the clause. The negative correlatives **nenia**, **nenial**, etc., may be placed in almost any position, according to the emphasis we wish to give to the word.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi lin ne vidis*, or, *Mi ne vidis lin* = I did not see him. *Cu vi ne vidis lin?* or, *Cu vi lin ne vidis?* = Did you not see him? *Mi neniam renkontis ŝin*, or, *Nenium mi renkontis ŝin*, or, *Mi ŝin renkontis neniam* = I never met her. *Mi ne volas renkonto nur Johanon, sed ankaŭ Georgon* = I do not

wish to meet John only, but also George. *Mi volas ne renkonti nur Johanon, sed ankaŭ Georgon*=I wish not to meet John only, but also George.

93. **Order very similar to English.**—The foregoing remarks show that the order of words in Esperanto is very similar to the English construction of sentences, and we can hardly do wrong if we follow it nearly word for word. A slightly different order in Esperanto sometimes makes an expression more elegant, but this is generally owing to harmony of sound rather than grammatical construction.

PART II.

GRAMMAR.

94. **The following is the Complete Grammar of Esperanto**, as given by Dr. Zamenhof at page 254 of his "Fundamenta Krestomatio de la Lingvo Esperanto," which he says is "a book that should be in the hands of every earnest student who desires to acquire a correct Esperanto style." This book contains a series of Exercises, Fables, Legends, Stories, Extracts from Scientific Articles, Articles on Esperanto, Poetry, Translations from Hamlet and The Iliad, showing how well Esperanto is adapted for every kind of subject.

It will be seen that the whole Grammar consists of sixteen short Rules, which can be learnt in less than an hour. The Esperanto is given alongside the translation. Remarks on the Rules, with examples, will be found by referring to the paragraphs given after each Rule.

COMPLETE GRAMMAR PLENA GRAMATIKO OF ESPERANTO. DE ESPERANTO.

Alphabet.

Alfabeto.

The twenty-eight letters Aa, Bb, Cc, Ĉē, Dd, Ee, and their pronunciation Ff, Gg, Ĝg, Hh, Ĥh, Ii, are given in paras. 1—4. Jj, Ĵj, Kk, Ll, Mm, Nn, Oo, Pp, Rr, Ss, Ŝs, Tt, Uu, Ũu, Vv, Zz.

N.B.—Printing offices *Rimarko.* — Presejoj, which do not possess the kiu(j) ne posedas la literojn letters ĉ, ĝ, ĥ, ĵ, ŝ, ũ, can ĉ, ĝ, ĥ, ĵ, ŝ, ũ, povas use instead of them ch, anstataŭ ili uzi ch, gh, hh, gh, hh, jh, sh, u. jh, sh, u.

Rules.

I.

THE ARTICLE.—There *Artikolo* nedifinita ne is no indefinite article; ekzistas; ekzistas nur arti there is only a definite kolo difinita (*la*), egala article *LA*, alike for all por ĉiuj seksoj, kazoj kaj sexes, cases, and numbers. nombroj.

N.B.—The use of the article is the same as in other languages. People to whom the use of the article presents a difficulty need not at first use it at all.

(See paras. 96—102).

Reguloj.

I.

Rimarko.—La uzado de la artikolo estas tia sama, kiel en la aliaj lingvoj. La personoj, por kiu(j) la uzado de la artikolo prezentas malfacilajon, povas en la unua tempo tute ĝin ne uzi.

II.

THE SUBSTANTIVE.—Substantives have the termination *O*. For the formation of the plural the termination *J* is added. There are only two cases: the nominative and accusative; the latter is obtained from the nominative by the addition of the termination *N*. The other cases are expressed by the help of a preposition (the genitive by *DE*, the dative by *AL*, the ablative by *PEK* or other prepositions according to sense).

(See paras. 103—106).

II.

III.

III.

THE ADJECTIVE.—The La *adjektivo* finiĝas per adjective ends in *A*. Cases *a*. Kazoj kaj nombroj and numbers as with the kiel ĉe la substantivo. La substantivo. The komparativo estas farata parative is made by means per la vorto *pli*, la super- of the word *PLI*, the lativo per *plej*; ĉe la superlative by *PLEJ*; komparativo oni uzas la with the comparative the konjunkcion *ol*. conjunction *OL* is used.

(See paras. 107—114).

IV.

IV.

THE NUMERALS.—The La *numeraloj* fundamental numerals (they taj (ne estas deklinaciataj) are not declined) are: estas: *unu, du, tri, kvar, UNU, DU, TRI, KVAR, kvin, ses, sep, ok, naŭ, dek, KVIN, SES, SEP, OK, cent, mil.* La dekoj kaj *NAŬ, DEK, CENT, MIL.* centoj estas formataj per The tens and hundreds simpla kunigo de la are formed by the simple numeraloj. Por la signa junction of the numerals. For the signification of cardinal numerals, the terminacion of the adjective For the ordinal numerals, the termination of the adjective is added; for the multiple—the suffix *-OBL*, for the fractional—*ON*, for the collective—*OP*, for the distributive—the word *PO*. Besides that, substantival and adverbial numerals can be used.

(See paras. 115—124).

V.

V.

THE PRONOUNS. — *Pronomoj personaj*: *mi*, Personal pronouns = *MI*, *vi*, *li*, *si*, *gi* (pri objekto aŭ *VI*, *LI*, *SI*, *GI* (referring besto), *si*, *ni*, *vi*, *ili*, *oni*; to thing or animal), *SI*, la pronomoj posedaj estas *NI*, *VI*, *ILI*, *ONI*; the formataj per la aldono de possessive pronouns are la finiĝo adjektiva. La formed by the addition of deklinacio estas kiel ĉe la the adjectival termination. substantivoj.

Declension is as with the substantives.

(See paras. 125—138).

VI.

VI.

THE VERB. — The verb *La verbo* ne estas ŝanĝata is not changed in person laŭ personoj nek nombroj. or number. Forms of Formoj de la verbo : la the verb : the present tempo estanta akceptas la tense (the time being) finiĝon *-as*; la tempo takes the termination estinta *-is*; la tempo *-AS*; the past tense (the estonta *-os*; la modo kon-time been, or having been) diĉa *-us*; la modo ordona *-IS*; the future tense *-u*; la modo sendifina *-i*. (the time about-to-be, or Participoj (kun senco going to be) *-OS*; the adjektiva aŭ adverba): Conditional mood *-US*; aktiva estanta *-ant*; aktiva the Imperative (ordering) estinta *-int*; aktiva eston-mood *-U*; the Infinitive ta *-ont*; pasiva estanta (indefinite) mood *-I*. *-at*; pasiva estinta *-it*; Participle (with an adjec-tival or adverbial sense) : pasiva estonta *-ol*. Ĉiuj formoj de la pasivo estas Active present *-ANT*; formataj per helpo de active past *-INT*; active responda formo de la future *-ONT*; passive verbo *esti* kaj participo present *-AT*; passive pasiva de la bezonata

past *-IT*; passive future verbo; la prepozicio ĉe la *-OT*. All forms of the pasivo estas *dē*.
passive are formed by help
of a corresponding form
of the verb *ESTI* and a
passive participle of the
required verb. The pre-
position with the passive
is *DE*.

(See paras. 159—237).

VII.

THE ADVERB.—Adverbs La *adverboj* finiĝas per end in *E*; degrees of *e*; gradoj de komparado comparison as with adjectives.
kiel ĉe la adjektivoj.

(See paras. 238—248).

VII.

VIII.

THE PREPOSITION. — Ĉiuj *prepozicioj* per si All prepositions of them- mem postulas la nomina- selves require the nomina- tivon.
tive.

(See paras. 249—261).

VIII.

IX.

PRONUNCIATION.— Ĉiu vorto estas legata,
Every word is read as it kiel ĝi estas skribita.
is written.

(See paras. 5—19).

IX.

X.

ACCENT. — The accent La akcento estas ĉiam is always on the penulti- sur la antaŭlasta silabo.
mate syllable.

(See para. 17).

X.

XI.

COMPOUND WORDS. — Vortoj kunmetitaj estas Compound words are formataj per simpla kuni-formed by the simple go de la vortoj (la ĉefa junction of words (the vorto staras en la fino); chief word stands at the la gramatikaj finigoj estas end); the grammatical rigardataj ankaŭ kiel terminations are also regarded as independent words.

(See paras. 39—50).

XI.

Vortoj kunmetitaj estas Compound words are formataj per simpla kuni-formed by the simple go de la vortoj (la ĉefa junction of words (the vorto staras en la fino); chief word stands at the la gramatikaj finigoj estas end); the grammatical rigardataj ankaŭ kiel terminations are also regarded as independent words.

(See paras. 39—50).

XII.

NEGATION. — With $\hat{\text{C}}$ e alia nea vorto la another negative word vorto *ne* estas forlasata. the word *NE* is omitted.

(See paras. 59—62).

XII.

With $\hat{\text{C}}$ e alia nea vorto la another negative word vorto *ne* estas forlasata. the word *NE* is omitted.

(See paras. 59—62).

XIII.

DIRECTION. — In order to show direction, words vortoj ricevas la finigon take the termination of de la akuzativo. the accusative.

(See para. 67).

XIII.

In order to show direction, words vortoj ricevas la finigon take the termination of de la akuzativo. the accusative.

(See para. 67).

XIV.

USE OF PREPOSITIONS. — Ciu prepozicio havas Every preposition has difinitan kaj konstantan a defined and constant signifon; sed se ni devas meaning; but if we have uzi ian prepozicion kaj la to use some preposition rekta senco ne montras al and the direct sense does ni, kian nome prepozicion not show to us what ni devas preni, tiam ni special preposition we are uzas la prepozicion *je*, to take, then we use the kiu memstaran signifon preposition *JE*, which has ne havas. Anstataŭ la

no independent meaning. prepozicio *je* oni povas Instead of the preposition *JE* we can also use *sen* prepozicio. the accusative without a preposition.

(See para. 251).

XV.

FOREIGN WORDS.—The so-called foreign words, *fremdaj*, t.e., *tiuj, kiujn la* that is, those which the majority of languages have taken from one source, are used in the Esperanto language without change, receiving only the orthography of the latter language; but with various words from one root it is better to use unchanged only the fundamental word, and to form the rest from this latter according to the rules of the Esperanto language.

(See paras. 39, 52).

XVI.

ELISION. — The final vowel of the substantive and the article can be omitted and replaced by an apostrophe.

(See paras. 56, 57).

La tiel nomataj vortoj plimulto de la lingvoj prenis el unu fonto, estas uzataj en la lingvo Esperanto *sen ŝango*, ricevante nur la ortografion de tiu ĉi lingvo; sed ĝe diversaj vortoj de unu radiko estas pli bone uzi senĝange nur la vorton fundamentan kaj la ceterajn formi el tiu ĉi lasta laŭ la reguloj de la lingvo Esperanto.

XV.

La fina vokalo de la substantivo kaj de la artikolo povas esti forlasata kaj anstataŭigata de apostrofo.

XVI.

COMMENTARY
ON THE
GRAMMAR.

PARTS OF SPEECH (Parolparto).

95. There are nine parts of speech in Esperanto, as found in most other languages, viz., the Article (Artikolo), Noun (Substantivo), Pronoun (Pronomo), Adjective (Adjektivo), Verb (Verbo), Adverb (Adverbo), Preposition (Prepozicio), Conjunction (Konjunkcio), Interjection (Interjekcio).

With the exception of the 158 Primary Words (see page 21), every part of speech has its distinctive termination, so the student, when he has learnt the Primary Words, knows at a glance to what part of speech every other word belongs, and, as regards a verb, he can also tell its tense or mood. If a word ends in *-O*, it is a noun ; if in *-A*, an adjective ; if in *-E*, an adverb ; if in *-I*, *-U*, *-AS*, *-IS*, *-OS*, or *-US*, a verb. If it ends in *-N*, it is in the accusative case and if in *-J*, it is plural.

EXAMPLES.—*Domo*=a house. *Facila*=easy. *Felice*=happily. *Doni*=to give (Infinitive). *Batu lin*=beat him (Imperative and Accusative). *Mi vidas la homojn*=I see the men (Present tense and Accusative plural). *Vi diris*=you said (Past tense). *Ni iros*=we shall go (Future tense). *Se ili estus bonaj*=If they were good (Conditional mood and plural adjective).

THE ARTICLE (La Artikolo).

96. **There is no word** in Esperanto for the Indefinite Article. It is, as in Latin, implied in the noun, if the sense in English requires it.

EXAMPLES.—*Tiu estas floro*=That is a flower. *Patrino kaj filo*=Mother and son. *Ĉu vi vidas birdon sur tiu arbo?*=Do you see a bird on that tree?

97. **The definite article** is **La** = *The*. It is, as in English, the same for all genders, numbers, and cases.

EXAMPLES.—*La patro*=The father. *La patrino*=The mother. *Donu al mi la libron*=Give me the book. *Ili estas la lernantoj diligencaj*=They are the diligent scholars.

98. **As regards its use**, **La** is used very nearly as the definite article “the” in English, namely, to show that one is speaking of something known or definite, as opposed to what is indefinite.

EXAMPLES.—*En la mezo de la korto mi vidis du infanojn el la apuda vilaĝo*=In the middle of the yard I saw two children of the neighbouring village. In this sentence the yard and village are each defined by the article *la*, as they are also in English by “the.” But if we omit the article the sentence runs:—*En la mezo de korto mi vidis du infanojn el apuda vilaĝo*=In the middle of a yard I saw two children of a neighbouring village. In this case the children might have been in *any* yard, and have belonged to *any* village in the neighbourhood of the speaker.

99. There are, however, cases in which the article is used in Esperanto, but omitted in English, and also *vice versa*.

(a). **It is used** before nouns denoting the *totality* of persons or things.

EXAMPLES.—*La homo estas mortema*=Man is mortal. *La homoj estas mortemaj*=Men are mortal. *La medicino estas scienco kaj la pentrado arto*=Medicine is a science and painting an art. *Kelkaj kuracistoj pretendas, ke la vino estas malutila al la sano*=Some doctors maintain that wine is hurtful to health. *Sen la akvo nia terglobo rapide farigus dezerto*=Without water our earth would rapidly become a desert. *La nokto estis tiel nigra, kiel la peço*=The night was as dark as pitch. *La azenoj amas la kardojn*=Donkeys love thistles. *La vento kaŭzas ofte teruran detruon en kelkaj landoj*=Wind often causes terrible ruin in some countries. (In this case *la vento* means wind in general, spoken of as a whole, but “To-day we shall have wind” (meaning some wind) would be: *Hodiaŭ ni havos venton*). *Hajlo falas*=Hail is falling (viz., some hail), but *La hajlo estas tre malutila al la vinberoj*=Hail is very injurious to grapes (to the grape), means hail in general.

(b). **It is not used** before proper names, for the simple reason that they cannot be more definite than they are in themselves. In English it is sometimes used and sometimes not.

EXAMPLES.—*Danubo*=The Danube. *Tibro*=The Tiber. *Mediteraneo*=The Mediterranean. *Alpoj*=The Alps. *Unuigitaj Ŝtatoj Amerikaj*=The United States of America.

(c). If, however, a proper name is preceded by a qualifying word, the article is used.

EXAMPLES.—*La glora poeto, Dante*=The famous poet, Dante. *La imperiestro de Japanujo*=The Emperor of Japan. *La bona regino Viktorio*=The good Queen Victoria.

100. **The article** may be used sometimes where, in English, we use a possessive pronoun.

EXAMPLES.—*Li havas doloron en la kapo*=He has a pain in his (the) head. *Si prezentis al mi la manon*=She offered me her hand. *Mi malkovris la okulojn*=I uncovered my eyes (see also para. 134 (a)).

(a). It is also frequently used instead of a possessive pronoun in speaking of one's own relatives, or when there is no doubt as to the person to whom the article **la** refers.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi amas la patron*=I love my (the) father.
Iru al la patrino=Go to your (the) mother. *Kie estas la kuzo?*=Where is your (the) cousin? *La patro staras apud la filo*=The father stands by (at the side of) his (the) son.

101. The article is almost always used before numeral adjectives showing the day, hour, month, etc., when these nouns are understood.

EXAMPLE.—*Hodiaŭ estas la dudek-sepa (tago) de Marto*=To-day is the 27th of March.

(a). Its use is optional before the names of the seasons, and also before each separate noun or adjective.

EXAMPLES.—*En la vintro*, or, *En vintro*=In the winter.
En la somero, or, *En somero*=In the summer. *La arboj, la floroj kaj la kreskajoj de la ĝardeno* (or, *La arboj, floroj kaj kreskajoj*)=The trees (the) flowers and (the) plants of the garden.

(b). It is not used after **ĉiu**=all, or, all the.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi ne vidis ĉiujn arbojn en la ĝardeno*=I did not see all the trees in the garden.

N.B.—From the foregoing remarks it will be seen that the English student will have no difficulty in the use of the article, if he be careful *always* to use it with words defining a *class* or the *totality* of persons or things. He will get a good idea of its use if he will carefully study the first few exercises in the "Ekzercaro," or Exercises 1 to 4 in Part III.

102. **Elision.**—The final *A* of the article may be omitted in certain cases (see para. 56 and Rule 16, para. 94).

THE NOUN (La Substantivo).

103. **A noun** (in the singular number) in all its cases, except the accusative, ends in *-O*. The accusative is formed by the addition of *N*. In the plural it ends in *-OJ*, and the accusative plural is formed by adding *N* to these letters. Thus the root **arb-** is made into a noun with its numbers and cases as follows :—

- Arb-o** = *a tree* (nominative, singular).
- Arb-on** = *a tree* (accusative, „ „).
- Arb-oj** = *trees* (nominative, plural).
- Arb-ojn** = *trees* (accusative, „ „).

EXAMPLES.—*Domo*=A house. *La domo*=The house. *La domoj*=The houses. *Rigardu la domojn*=Look at the houses. *Knabo*=A boy. *La knabo*=The boy. *Mi vidis la knabon*=I saw the boy. *Knabino*=A girl. *La knabino*=The girl. See the list of suffixes, para. 54, showing that *-IN-* is the suffix for all words in the feminine gender. The word divided is *knab-in-o*; *knab-* is the root, *in-* is the suffix, and *o* the grammatical termination.

Declension of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns.

104. **There are but two cases** in Esperanto (Rule 2, para. 94), viz., the nominative and the accusative (or objective); the latter is obtained from the nominative by adding *N* to the singular or plural.

Other cases are expressed by the aid of prepositions, as :—

Nominative ...	Mia bona patro	= <i>My good father.</i>
Accusative ...	Mian bonan patron	= <i>My good father.</i>
Genitive or Possessive }	De mia bona patro	= <i>Of my good father,</i> or, <i>My good father's</i>
Dative	Al mia bona patro	= <i>To my good father.</i>
	De mia bona patro	<i>From (by, see para.</i> <i>259 (9)) my</i> <i>good father.</i>
Ablative ..	Kun mia bona patro	= <i>With my good</i> <i>father.</i>
	Per bona glavo	= <i>With (by means</i> <i>of) a good</i> <i>sword.</i>

Note that **per** = *by* is the instrumental ablative, meaning "by means, or aid, or use, of," and that **kun** = *with* means "in company with," but not in an instrumental sense, as it is sometimes in English, e.g., *I held him with both hands* = **Mi lin tenis per ambaŭ manoj**, not **kun ambaŭ manoj** (see para. 259 (22)).

Plural.

(a). In the plural the declension is the same, with the addition of the plural termination *J.* as :—

- Genitive **De miaj bonaj filoj** = *Of my good sons.*
Accusative **Miajn bonajn filojn** = *My good sons.*

EXAMPLES.—*La frato skribas, kaj la fratino legas* = The brother is writing and the sister reading. *La patro donis la librojn al sia filo* = The father gave the book to his son. *Tiu ĉi kaŭčuka ringo (or, ringo el kaŭčuko) estas por la infaneto* = This india-rubber ring is for the baby. *Mi vidis Jozefon kun lia kuzo* = I saw Joseph with his cousin. *Venu, ni atendas Vin (Cin), Savinto de la mondo* = Come, we await You (Thee), O Saviour of the world. *Mi lin prenis per la mano* = I took him by the hand. *La domo estas kovrita per ardezoj* = The house is covered with slates. *Mi vidis vian patron kun liaj du filoj* = I saw your father with his two sons. *Kie estas la domo de via patro?* = Where is your father's house?

105. **Ellipsis.**—The case (nominative or accusative) of words in Esperanto often depends upon the verb omitted when ellipsis occurs in a phrase, and unless we write the sentence in full, or think what the ellipsis is, we may not at first know what case to use to express our meaning. A glance at the following examples will show how easy it is to determine the case. The words in brackets show the ellipsis:—

Mi konas lin pli bone, ol vi (*konas lin*) = I know him better than you (do, or know him).

Mi konas lin pli bone, ol vin (*ol mi konas vin*) = I know him better than you (than I know you).

Petro amas Paŭlon tiom, kiom (*li amas*) *Johanon* = Peter loves Paul as much as (he loves) John.

Petro amas Paŭlon tiom, kiom Johano (*amas lin*) = Peter loves Paul as much as John (loves him).

N.B.—In the above sentences we cannot, in English, tell the meaning until the ellipsis is supplied, whereas, in Esperanto, the meaning is at once clear from the case of the noun or pronoun (para. 112).

Li iris tien, kiel ankaŭ vi (*iris*) = He went there as well as you (went).

Mi vidis lin tie, kiel ankaŭ (*mi vidis*) *vin* = I saw him there as well as (I saw) you.

Mi neniam vidis tian hundon, kiel (*estas*) *la via* = I never saw such a dog as yours.

105. (a). **Elision.**—The final *O* of a noun may be omitted (para. 57, and Rule 16, para. 94).

106. **Possession** is (a) expressed by help of the preposition **de**.

EXAMPLES.—*Lu domo de la patro* = The father's house, or, the house of the father. *La libro de mia patrino* = My mother's book, or, the book of my mother. *La tranĉilo de Georgo* = George's knife. *Tiu estas la domo de miaj fratoj* = That is my brothers' house (the house of my brothers). Note that in this sentence, spoken in English, there is no difference in sound between "my brother's" and "my brothers," therefore the house might belong to one brother or several, but in Esperanto both the pronoun *miaj* and the noun *fratoj* show the plural.

(b). Possession is also denoted by the correlative words ending in *ES*, viz.:—**īes** = someone's, somebody's, **Ȳies** = everyone's, **kies** = whose, **nēnies** = nobody's, **ties** = such a one's, that one's (see para. 154).

EXAMPLES.—*Ȳies ideo estis diversa* = Everyone's idea was different. *Kies domo estas tiu?* = Whose house is that? *Ȳi estas nēnies domo* = It is nobody's house. *Ȳu tiu ĉi estas ties tranĉilo?* = Is this anyone's (someone's) knife? (see para. 154).

(c). An adjective is sometimes conveniently used when in English we employ an apostrophe.

EXAMPLES.—*Unutaga laboro* (for, *la laboro de unu tago*) = One day's work. *La unuataga laboro* (for, *la laboro de la unua tago*) = The first day's work. *Lia unuataga laboro estis en la ĝardeno, kaj poste li faris unutagan laboron en la domo* = His first day's work was in the garden, and then (afterwards) he did one day's work in the house. *Mi atendis la kapitanan respondon* = I awaited the captain's reply.

(d). In speaking of places, the English preposition "of" is not translated.

EXAMPLES.—*La urbo Londono* = The City of London. *La Kolonio Natalo* = The Colony of Natal (see para. 253).

For numeral nouns, see para. 118; for participial, paras. 208, 209; for predicative, para. 109; for compound nouns, para. 49; for form of accusative with proper names, para. 69 (d); for the infinitive used as a noun, para. 180.

THE ADJECTIVE (La Adjektivo).

107. **The Adjective** always ends in *-A* in the singular. *J* is added to *A* to form the plural. The accusative case is formed by the addition of *N* to the singular or plural termination.

EXAMPLES.—*Forta* = Strong. *Saga* = Wise. *Brava* = Brave. *Forta homo* = A strong man. *Saga patro* = A wise father. *Sagaj patroj* = Wise fathers. *La brava filo* = The brave son. *La bravaj filoj* = The brave sons.

108. **There are two kinds** of adjectives, viz.:—
 (a) Qualifying or attributive (*apudmetita* = *put adjacent*), and (b) Predicative (*predikateca*).

(a). **A qualifying adjective** is one placed before or after its noun, with which it agrees both in number and case (para. 36).

EXAMPLES.—*Johano havas bonan panon* = John has good bread. *Vilhelmo akrigis la tranĉilojn malakrajn* = William sharpened the blunt knives.

(b). **A predicative adjective**, usually placed after the verb, denotes what is said about the noun or pronoun to which it refers, or denotes their state, condition, appearance, etc. It agrees with them in number, but is never in the accusative case (para. 36).

EXAMPLES.—*La pomo estas bona* = The apple is good. *Vilhelmo trovis la tranĉilojn malakrajn* = William found the knives blunt. If the adjective were in this sentence in the accusative, the meaning would be quite altered, for, *Vilhelmo trovis la tranĉilojn malakrajn* would mean, "William found the blunt knives," that is to say, he was looking for blunt knives, and he found them. A predicative adjective shows that ellipsis has taken place, and the omitted verb is generally *esti*. For instance, the ellipsis in

the above sentence might be as follows:—William found (that) the knives (are) blunt= *Vilhelmo trovis, ke la tranĉiloj estas malakraj*. If we elide *ke* and *estas*, the substantive takes the accusative (*tranĉilojn*) and the adjective (*malakraj*) remains in the nominative. Other examples are:—*La kutimo faris lin (ke li estu) indiferenta por tio ĉi* (Hamleto V., 1)= Habit made him (to be, lit., that he be) indifferent to this. *Kion vi intencas nun fari, por viu montri (ke vi estas) ina filo de via kara patro?* (Hamleto IV., 7)= What do you now intend to do to show yourself (that you are) a worthy son of your dear father? (see para. 105 on ellipsis).

109. Predicative Noun.—A noun can also be predicative (see para. 35).

EXAMPLES.—*La patro nomis sian filon Johano*=The father named his son John. Now in English it is not clear whether the father gave the name of "John" to his son, or whether he made mention of his son whose name was John. In Esperanto it is quite clear that he gave the name, for otherwise "John" would be in the accusative (*Johanon*), so:—*La patro nomis sian filon Johanon*=The father named (made mention of) his son John. *Ili nomis lin Adolfo*=They called him (gave him the name of) Adolphus.

110. Nominative or Accusative.—The rule, therefore, for qualifying and predicative adjectives or nouns is:—

(a). The word will be in the accusative if the object already possesses the quality in question.

(b). The word will be in the nominative if that quality, which it did not before possess, or was not known to possess, is being given to the object.

111. Participial Adjectives.—Participles are often used in Esperanto to qualify nouns and pronouns, and they are then in reality true adjectives. To distinguish them from other adjectives they are called "Participial Adjectives" (**Participaj adjektivoj**).

EXAMPLES.—*Johano kaj Georgo estis perditaj*=John and George were lost. *Ni trovis ilin mortantajn*=We found them (who are) dying. *Ni estis finintaj, kiam vi alvenis*=We had finished when you arrived (see para. 209 (b)).

112. Comparison of Adjectives.

(a). **The comparative of equality** is **tiel ..kiel-as, so...as.**

Johano estas tiel forta, kiel Georgo = *John is as strong as George.*

(b). **The comparative of superiority** is **pli...ol=more...than.**

Johano estas pli forta, ol Georgo = *John is stronger than George.*

(c). **The comparative of inferiority** is **malpli...ol=less...than.**

Johano estas malpli forta, ol Georgo = *John is less strong (weaker) than George.*

(d). The other modes of expressing comparison are :—

tia ... kia = *such, such a, such kind...as*

sama ... kia = *the same...as.*

same ... kiel = *the same...as.*

Ju pli ..des pli = *the more...the more.*

Ju malpli...des malpli = *the less...the less.*

Ju pli...des malpli = *the more...the less.*

Ju malpli...des pli = *the less...the more.*

EXAMPLES.—*Tia domo, kia tiu, estas malofte vidata* = Such a house as that is rarely seen. *Mia bastono estas tia sama, kia (la) via, or, Mia bastono estas same, kiel (la) via* = My stick is the same as yours. *Ju pli mi lin konas, des pli mi lin estimas* = The more I know him the more I esteem him. *Ju malpli mi dormas, des malpli mi sentas la bezonon dormi* = The less I sleep, the less I feel the want (need) to sleep. *Ju pli mi lin vidas, des malpli li plaças al mi* = The more I see him the less he pleases me. *Ju malpli mi manĝas, des pli mi trinkas* = The less I eat, the more I drink.

Be careful to note that the second term in a comparison is in the nominative or accusative, according as it is the subject or complement, e.g., **Mi amas mian fraton pli, ol mia fratino** = *I love my brother more than my sister (loves him).* **Mia fratino** is in the

nominative, **amas lin** being understood. But **Mi amas mian fraton pli, ol mian fratinon** = *I love my brother more than my sister.* Here **fratinon** is in the accusative, and the meaning is perfectly clear. In English we should have to add “does” to the first example to make the phrase clear, “I love my brother more than my sister does” (see para. 105).

113. Superlatives (*Superlativoj*).

(a). **The superlative of superiority** is **la plej** = *the most.*

(b). **The superlative of inferiority** is **la malplej** = *the least.*

The preposition **el** = *out of, of,* is used with the superlative when it relates to numbers, or something collective, as a “group,” “society,” etc. But when the superlative relates to the place or position where the superiority is or was, then some other appropriate preposition is used.

EXAMPLES. — *Johano estas la plej forta el la knaboj* = John is the strongest of the boys. *Petro estis la plej malforfa el ĉiuj* = Peter was the weakest of (out of) all. *Georgo estas la malplej kuraĝa knabo en la domo* = George is the least courageous boy in the house. *Si estis la plej bela virino, kiun mi jam vidis* = She was the most beautiful woman whom I ever saw. *Tiu ĉi estas la plej grandaj arboj en la arbaro* = These are the largest trees in (of) the wood. *Li estis la plej bona esperantisto el la grupo (klubo, societo)* = He was the best esperantist of the group (club, society). *Metu la plej grandajn glasojn sur la tablon* = Put the largest glasses upon the table. *Ne jetu la plej grandajn stonojn en la puton, sed la plej malgrandajn (multiplej grandajn)* = Do not throw the largest stones into the well, but the smallest (the least large).

(c). **The superlative absolute** is indicated by **tre** = *very,* or **treege** = *exceedingly,* or **troe** = *excessively,* or some other suitable adverb.

EXAMPLE. — *Tiu virino estas tre malbela kaj treege grasa* = That woman is very ugly and exceedingly fat.

114. **Degrees of intensity** of adjectives can also be shown by the aid of the suffixes *-EG-* and *-ET-* with or without an adverb. The suffix *-EG-* is stronger in its application than the adverb **tre** = *very*. For instance, take the adjective **bela** = *beautiful*, or, *fine*, **tre bela** = *very beautiful*, or, *very fine*; but **belega** = *magnificent*, or, *superb*. So, the diminutive *-ET-* shows more diminution than the adjective **malgranda** = *small*, or, *little*. would show when qualifying a noun. For instance, **malgranda rivero** = *a small river*, but **rivereto** = *a brook*, or, *stream*. The following list shows how twelve adjectives of varying shades of intensity can be formed from the root **varm-**, between the extremes **tre varmega** = *broiling hot* and **tre malvarmega** = *intensely cold*, supposing we were speaking of the weather :—

Tre varmega = <i>Broiling hot.</i>	Tre malvarmega = <i>Intensely cold.</i>
Varmega = <i>Hot.</i>	Malvarmega = <i>Bitterly cold.</i>
Tre varma = <i>Very warm.</i>	Tre malvarma = <i>Very cold.</i>
Varma = <i>Warm.</i>	Malvarma = <i>Cold.</i>
Iom varma = <i>Warmish.</i>	Iom malvarma = <i>Coldish.</i>
Varmeta = <i>Mild.</i>	Malvarmeta = <i>Cool.</i>

See remarks on the suffixes *-EG-* and *-ET-*, para. 277.

NUMERALS.

Cardinal Numbers (*Numeraloj fundamentaj*).

115. **The cardinal numbers** are :—

(1) **unu**, (2) **du**, (3) **tri**, (4) **kvar**, (5) **kvin**, (6) **ses**,
 (7) **sep**, (8) **ok**, (9) **naŭ**, (10) **dek**, (100) **cent**, (1,000)
mil.

Milono (million) is a noun ; root **milion**—

(a). The numbers 11 to 19 are formed by simply placing (10) **dek** before the first nine, as :—(11) **dek unu**, (12) **dek du**, (13) **dek tri**, (14) **dek kvar**, (15) **dek kvin**, (16) **dek ses**, (17) **dek sep**, (18) **dek ok**, (19) **dek naŭ**.

(b). The numbers (101 to 119), or (1,001 to 1,019), are formed by the addition **cent**, or **mil**, as :—(101) **cent unu**, (102) **cent du**, (110) **cent dek**, (116) **cent dek ses**, (1,001) **mil unu**, (1,006) **mil ses**, (1,114) **mil cent dek kvar**.

(c). The tens, hundreds, and thousands are formed by prefixing one of the numbers 2 to 9 before **dek**, **cent**, or **mil**, as :—(20) **dudek**, (30) **tridek**, (40) **kvardek**, (200) **ducent**, (500) **kvincident**, (900) **naūcent**, (2,000) **dumil**, (4,000) **kvarmil**, (8,000) **okmil**.

(d). The intermediate numbers (21 to 29), (31 to 39), etc., are formed by adding the required number to the tens, as :—(21) **dudek unu**, (22) **dudek du**, (33) **tridek tri**, (96) **naūdek ses**, (121) **cent dudek unu**, (342) **tricent kvardek du**, (1,021) **mil dudek unu**, (8,754) **okmil sepcent kvincident kvar**.

(e). The cardinal numbers never change their forms for case or number.

EXAMPLES.—*La du infanoj dividis inter si sep pomojn*=The two children divided between themselves seven apples. *Unu prenis tri kaj la alia prenis kvar el la pomoj*=One took three and the other took four of the apples. *Kvin kaj sep farus* (or, *estas*) *dek du*=5 and 7 make (are) 12.

(f). **Unu** is sometimes used in the plural, and **unuј** then means *some*. It is used generally in relation with **aliaj**=*others*.

EXAMPLES.—*El ŝiaj multaj infanoj, unuj estas bonaj kaj aliaj malbonaj*=Among (out of) her many children, some are good and others bad. *Li ekzamenis la pomojn, kaj trovis unujn bonaj kaj aliajn malbonaj*=He examined the apples, and found some good and others bad. Note that *bonaj* and *malbonaj* are predicative adjectives, and therefore in the nominative (see paras. 36, 108 (b)).

(g). **Unu** is used when our indefinite article is employed as a numeral.

EXAMPLE.—*Ĉar ĉiu el ni havas unu vortaron, prenu la vian kaj lasu la mian*=Since we have each a dictionary, take yours and leave mine.

Ordinal Numbers (*Numeraloj ordaj*).

116. **Ordinal numbers**, being really adjectives, are, in Esperanto, made such in the usual way by adding *A* to the cardinals, as:—**unua**, *first*, **dua**, *second*, **tria**, *third*, **kvara**, *fourth*, **kvina**, *fifth*, **sesa**, *sixth*, **sepa**, *seventh*, **oka**, *eighth*, **naŭa**, *ninth*, **deka**, *tenth*.

(a). If the cardinal is composed of two or more numbers, *A* is added to the last only, as:—**dek-unua**=eleventh, **dek - dua**=twelfth, **dek - naŭa**=nineteenth, **dudeka**=twentieth, **dudek - unua**=twenty-first, **cent-tridek-naŭa**=hundred and thirty-ninth.

N.B.—Note that the ordinal numbers are linked by hyphens.

(b). The Ordinals follow all the rules of adjectives as to case and number.

EXAMPLES.—*Donu al li la trian, kaj prenu la kvaran*=Give him the third, and take the fourth. *La kvinaj etafoj de tiuj domoj estas tre altaj*=The fifth storeys of those houses are very high.

(c). The Ordinals are used in speaking of pages, hours, days, months, years, kings, etc.

EXAMPLES.—*Pago trideka*=Page thirty. *Vidu pagon kvardekan* (or, 40th)=See page forty (40). *Henriko kvara*=Henry IV. *La dek-unua horo*=11 o'clock. *En la dek-sesa (tago) de aprilo*=On the 16th of April. *En la jaro mil-oikcent-naŭdek-naŭa*=In 1899. *Mil-naŭcent-kvara*=1904, A.D.

In asking questions about the above, the adjective **kioma** is often used.

EXAMPLES.—*Sur kioma pago vi vidis tion?*=On what page did you see that? *Kioma pago estas?*=What page is it? *Kioma horo estas?*=What o'clock is it? *Estas la dua?*=It is two o'clock. *Kiun daton ni havas?*=What is the date (or, day of the month)? *Hodiaŭ estas la dudek-sepa* (or, 27th) *de marto*=To-day is the 27th of March.

117. **Ordinal adverbs** are formed by adding *E* to the cardinals, as:—**unue**, *firstly*, **due**, *secondly*, **sepe**, *seventhly*, etc.

118. **Substantives** are formed from the cardinals by adding *O*. They have various meanings, as:—**Unuo**=a unit, or, a one. **Duo**=a duet, or a two (of cards). **Trio**=a trio, or, triplet, or, a three (of cards). **Kvaro**, etc.=a four, etc. (of cards, etc., up to ten). **Dekduo**=a dozen. **Deko**=half a score. **Dudeko**=a score. **Cento**=a hundred. **Milo**=a thousand. **Milono**=a million.

EXAMPLES.—*Li havas dudekojn da ĉevaloj, centojn da ŝafoj, kaj milojn da birdoj*=He has scores of horses, hundreds of sheep, and thousands of birds. *Tiu ludkartoj estas la kvaro da pikoj kaj la seso da keroj*=Those cards are the four of spades and the six of hearts. *Tiu cifero estas oko*=That figure is an eight.

Multiples (*Numeraloj multoblaj*).

119. **Multiples** are formed by the addition of the suffix *-OBL-* to the cardinals, and then adding *A*, *E*, or *O* to mark the adjective, adverb, or noun. They can also be formed into transitive verbs by the suffix *-IGI-*, or intransitive by the suffix *-IGI-*.

EXAMPLES.—*Unuobla*=Single. *Unuoble*=Singly. *Duobla*=Double, twofold. *Duoble*=Doubly. *La duoblo*=The double. *Duooblige*=To double, to duplicate. *Duoobligi*=To become double. *Triobla*=Triple, threefold. *Trioble*=Treble. *La trioblo*=The treble (of). *Trioblige*=To treble, to triplicate. *Kvarobla*=Fourfold, quadruple. *Kvaroble*=Quadruply. *Kvaroblo*=A quadruple. *Kvaroblige*=To quadruple, to make fourfold. *Kvarobligi*=To become quadruple. *Sepobla*=Sevenfold, septuple. *Centoblo*=A centuple. *Kvinoble sep estas tridek kvin*=Five times (fivefold) 7 is 35. *Naŭoble ok estas sepdek du*=Nine times (ninefold) 8 is 72. *Kvaroble kvar estas dek ses*=Four times four is 16. *Dudek estas la kvaroblo de kvin*=Twenty is the quadruple of five. *Duobla fadeno estas pli forta ol unuobla*=A double thread is stronger than a single (one). *Kuaroobligeante sepdek kvin vi ricevas la centoblon de tri*=By quadrupling 75 you get the centuple of 3.

Fractional Numbers (*Numeraloj nombronaj*).

120. **Fractional numbers** are formed by the addition of the suffix *-ON-* to the cardinals, and then adding *A*, *E*, or *O* to mark the adjective, adverb, or noun, as:—**Duona**=half, **duone**=by halves, **duono**=a half ($\frac{1}{2}$), **triona**=third, **trione**=by thirds, **triono**=a third ($\frac{1}{3}$).

EXAMPLES.—*La kvarona parto de dudek kvar estas la duono de dek du, tio estas ses*=The fourth part of 24 is the half of 12, that is 6. *Unu triono*=One third ($\frac{1}{3}$). *Tri okonoj*=Three eighths ($\frac{3}{8}$). *Neniam faru ion poduone*=Never do anything by halves.

The Collectives (*Numeraloj kolektaj*).

121. **The collectives** are formed by the addition of the suffix *-OP-* to the cardinals, and then adding *A* or *E* to mark adjectives or adverbs, as :—**Duopa** = double, two together, **duope** = by twos, in pairs, **triope** = in threes, in triplets, **dekope** = by tens.

EXAMPLE.—*Krinope ili sin jetis sur min* = Five together (five at a time) they threw themselves upon me.

Reiteratives (*Numeraloj ripetaj*).

122. **Reiteratives** are formed by adding the adverb **foje** to the cardinals, as :—**Unufoje** = once, **dufoje** = twice, **trifoje** = thrice, **kvarfoje** = four times.

EXAMPLES.—*Hieraŭ mi renkontis lin unufoje* (or, *unufojon*), *sed hodiaŭ dufoje* (or, *du fojojn*) = Yesterday I met him once, but to-day twice.

N.B.—Note that when the substantive *fojo* is used, it is in the accusative, as denoting point of time (para. 68 (b)).

Distributives (*Numeraloj disdividaj*).

123. **Distributives** are marked by the preposition **po** placed before the cardinals, meaning *at the rate of*, *in the proportion of*.

EXAMPLES.—*Al ĉiu el la laborantoj mi pagis po kvin ŝilingoj* = I paid each of the workmen at the rate of five shillings. *Tiu ĉi libro enhavas sesdek paĝojn*; *tial, se mi legos en ĉiu tago po dek kvin paĝoj, mi finos la tutan libron en kvar tagoj* = This book contains 60 pages, therefore if I (shall) read (in) each day at the rate of 15 pages, I shall finish the whole book in 4 days (see “*po*” in list of prepositions, para. 259 (29)).

The Time of Day (*La horo*).

124. There are three ways of expressing the time of day. “A quarter to three” (2.45) may be either :—

(a). **Tri kvaronoj de la tria** = three-quarters of the 3rd (hour).

(b). **La dua kaj tri kvaronoj** = the 2nd (hour) and three-quarters.

(c). **Unu kvarono antau la tria** = one quarter before the 3rd (hour).

The last example is the only one which would be easily understood by an Englishman. Other nations use one or two of these methods, so these three were probably devised to meet all nationalities. There is, however, one way used by nearly all nations, namely, that in railway time tables, and it is to be hoped that this will come into general use. Therefore to the question :—*Kioma horo estas?* = What time (hour) is it? we might simply say as follows :—

2.0 = *La dua (horo)*, or, *Du*, or, *Du horoj*.

2.15 = *La dua (horo) dek kvin*, or, *Du kaj dek kvin*.

3.5 = *La tria (horo) kvin*, or, *Tri kaj kvin*.

10.2 = *La deka (horo) du*, or, *Dek kaj du*.

11.45 = *La dek-unua (horo) kvardek kvin*, or, *Dek unu kaj kvardek kvin*.

In Italy, Belgium, etc., where the hours are numbered from one to twenty-four, this system is equally applicable, as :—
4.10 p.m. in Italy = 16.10 = *La dek-sesu (horo) dek*, or, *Dek ses kaj dek*.

[If we used the cardinal numbers, as in English, and called 10.1 or 10.2, *Dek unu*, or, *Dek du*, these words would also apply to 11.0 or 12.0 ; and in Italy, etc., all the hours from 10.1 to 10.9, and the hours 13.0, 14.0 up to 24.0, would represent two times of day. Therefore, the better plan would be to use the ordinal numbers for the hour and the cardinal for the minutes, as :—2.15 = *La dua dek kvin*.]

PRONOUNS (*Pronomoj*).

125. **There are seven classes** of Pronouns :—
 (1) Personal, (2) Possessive, (3) Relative, (4) Interrogative, (5) Demonstrative, (6) Distributive or Collective, (7) Indefinite.

As, however, the last five classes are so intimately connected with other parts of speech, and as some of the pronouns represent two classes, and some two parts of speech, it is better to treat them as **correlative words** (see paras. 139—157), so under the head of “Pronouns” we give only the **personal** and **possessive**.

Personal Pronouns (*personaj pronomoj*).

126. **The personal pronouns** are :—

Nominative. 	Singular.	1st Person.	Mi = <i>I.</i>
	“	2nd “	Vi = <i>you, thou.</i> (Ci = <i>thou</i> is rarely used).
	“	3rd “	Li = <i>he, Si</i> = <i>she, Ci</i> = <i>it.</i>
	Plural.	1st “	Ni = <i>we.</i>
	“	2nd “	Vi = <i>you, ye.</i>
	“	3rd “	Ilia = <i>they.</i>
Accusative. 	Singular.	1st Person.	Min = <i>me.</i>
	“	2nd “	Vin = <i>you, thee.</i> (Cin = <i>thee</i> is rarely used).
	“	3rd “	Lin = <i>him, Sin</i> = <i>her,</i> Cin = <i>it.</i>
	Plural.	1st “	Nin = <i>us.</i>
	“	2nd “	Vin = <i>you.</i>
	“	3rd “	Ilia = <i>them.</i>

Oni=*one, people, they, we* (like the French “on”), is an indefinite pronoun of the 3rd person, and is invariable. **Oni** may be deemed singular or plural.

Si=*self, selves, oneself*, is a reflexive pronoun of the 3rd person, singular or plural.

Vi, like “you” in English, represents both the singular and plural, but when it refers to more than one person, words depending on it take the plural form.

Ĝi, like “it” in English, is used to represent things, and also persons and animals when the name does not reveal the sex.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi lin amas*=I love him. *Li min vidas*=He sees me. *Ili trovis lin kaj min en la ĝardeno*=They found him and me in the garden. *Vi ne vidis nin*=You did not see us. *Vi* (plural) *estas pli saĝaj, ol ili* (*estas*)=You are wiser than they are. *Si vidis ilin en la dormoĉambro*=She saw them in the bedroom. *Oni diras, “Per mono oni povas aĉeti ĉion”*=They (people) say (it is said), “With money one (or, we) can buy everything. *Mi vidis la domon, sed ĝi estis tro malgranda*=I saw the house, but it was too small. *Se oni estus riĉa, or riĉaj*=If one were rich.

(a).—In words like **infano**=child, **persono**=person, **individuo**=individual, etc., the sex is not revealed; neither is it in the general name of an animal, as:—**Leono**=A lion. **Hundo**=A dog. **Birdo**=A bird, etc., unless we add the feminine suffix **-ino**. In all such cases, when we do not know the sex, we use the pronoun **ĝi**. If, however, the sex is known to be masculine, and we wish to demonstrate it, we can use the masculine pronoun **li**. If the word has the feminine termination **-ino**, we use the pronoun **si**; it would be illogical to use **ĝi**.

EXAMPLES.—*La infano forkuris, kiam mi parolis al ĝi* (or *li* if we know the sex)=The child ran away when I spoke to it. *Tiu estas bela ĉevalino, si trotas bone*=That is a fine mare, she trots well. *Se iu vizitos min dum mi forestas, diru al ĝi, ke ĝi revenu morgaŭ*=If anyone (someone) should call upon (visit) me whilst I am away, tell him or her (it) to come again to-morrow.

127. The word **mem**=*self or selves* is sometimes used with a personal pronoun or noun to give emphasis.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi mem gin vidis*=I myself saw it. *Ni mem gin troris*, or, *Ni gin troris mem*=We found it ourselves. *Vi venu mem*=Come yourself. *Si mem parolos*=She herself will speak. *Li mem respondu*=Let him answer himself. *La virinoj venu mem*=Let the women come themselves.

128. **Si** is a **reflexive** pronoun of the 3rd person, and therefore cannot refer to the pronouns of the 1st and 2nd persons. We cannot say *Mi lavas sin*, or *Mi*, or *ni*, or *vi lavas sin*, for “I wash myself,” “We wash ourselves,” “You wash yourself.” We must, in each of these cases, use the pronoun which is the subject of the verb, as:—**Mi lavas min**—**Ni lavas nin**—**Vi lavas vin**=*I wash myself*—*We wash ourselves*—*You wash yourself* (or if **vi**=you is plural), *You wash yourselves*. **Si**, therefore, is used for the 3rd person, singular or plural, when it refers to the *subject* of the verb. It takes the accusative termination *N* when necessary, and then represents him, “himself, her, herself, it, itself, oneself, them, themselves”; also sometimes in poetry “him, her, it, them.”

EXAMPLES.—*Li razis sin*=He shaved himself. *Petro razis sin*=Peter shaved himself (*Petro razis lin* would mean Peter shaved *him*, viz., some other man referred to in the sentence). *Si diris al si*=She said to herself (*Si diris al si* would mean “She said to her,” viz., some other woman). *Gi vundis sin*=It wounded itself (*Gi vundis gin* would mean “It wounded it,” viz., some other animal). *Ili mortigis sin*=They killed themselves. *Li pensis en si mem, ke...*=He thought to (in) himself that... *La du fratoj renkontas la rabistojn: la fratoj atukas kaj vundas ilin, sed, tiel farante, ili vundas sin* (or, *sin mem*)=The two brothers meet the robbers: the brothers attack and wound them, but, in so doing, they wound themselves. *Mia fraterno havas amikinon, kiu faras ĉion por si, kaj nenion por si*=My sister has a friend, who does everything for herself, and nothing for her. *Oni kelkfoje tro laŭdas sin*=One (or people) sometimes praises oneself (or praise themselves) too much (see conjugation of a reflexive verb, para. 170).

129. The pronoun “it” is not expressed with impersonal verbs (see para. 164).

EXAMPLES.—*Kiu estas tie?* *Estas mi*=Who is there? It is I. *Negas*=It snows. *Pluvis*=It rained. *Necesas, ke oni manĝu*=It is necessary to eat.

Possessive Pronouns (*Pronomoj posedaj*).

130. **Possessive pronouns** are formed by adding the adjectival *A* to the personal pronouns. They are essentially adjectives, and follow the adjectival rules as to the formation of the plural and the accusative.

131. They are **mia**=my, **mine**, **via**=your, **yours**, **thy, thine** (**cia**=thy, thine, like its personal pronoun, **ci**, is rarely used), **lia**=his, **šia**=her, **hers**, **gia**=its, **nia**=our, **ours**, **ilia**=their, **theirs**, **sia**=his (own), her (own), hers, its (own), their (own), theirs, one's (own).

EXAMPLES.—*Mia patro, via frato, lia fraterno, šia onko, kaj iliaj onklinoj, estas en la domo*=My father, your brother, his sister, her uncle, and their aunts are in the house. *Mi vidis vian libron, lian bastonon, ŝian ombrelon, kaj ilian keston en la stacidomo*=I saw your book, his stick, her umbrella, and their box in the station. *Mi havas viajn librojn*=I have your books. *Gia koloro estas ruĝa.*=Its colour is red. *Mia fraterno renkontis vian fraton kaj viajn amikojn*=My sister met your brother and your friends.

132. When a possessive pronoun stands alone, as in sentences like the following, it may or may not be preceded by the article **la**, at the writer's option.

EXAMPLES.—*Car ni havas ĉiuj (or, ĉar ĉiuj el ni havas) unu vorturon, prenu (la) vian kaj lasu (la) mian*=Since we have each a dictionary, take yours and leave mine. *Šiaj infanoj estas pli grandaj, ol (la) viaj*=Her children are bigger than yours.

Note in the first example that **ĉiuj** is in the plural because it is in apposition to **ni** (see para. 69 (c)).

133. **Mia** is sometimes placed after a noun to denote affection.

EXAMPLES.—*Patrino mia*=Mother mine, or, Mother dear. *Fratino mia*=Sister dear.

134. When a possessive pronoun refers to two or more nouns, it may, as in English, be repeated or not.

EXAMPLE.—*Lia patro, (lia) patrino, kaj (lia) fraterno estis en la domo*=His father, (his) mother, and (his) sister were in the house.

134. (a). Personal pronouns, preceded by the preposition **al**, are sometimes used in a possessive sense.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi kovris al mi la orelojn*=I covered my (to myself the) ears. *Li fermis al si la okulojn*=He closed his (to himself the) eyes (see also para. 100).

135. **Sia, Lia, etc.** Great care must be taken not to use **sia**, when the sense requires one of the other possessives of the 3rd person, or *vice versa*. **Sia** can *only* refer to the *subject* of the sentence or proposition in which it occurs, and *being reflexive*, it can never form *part of the subject* of a sentence, as:—*Li diris al ni, ke lia* (not, **sia**) *hundo jus mortis*=He told us that his dog had just died. Like its root **si**, it is used for the 3rd person, singular or plural, and may represent “his (own), her (own), hers, its (own), their (own), theirs, or ones (own).

Since **sia**, being reflexive, can never form *part of the subject* of a sentence, we cannot say *Li kaj sia edzino iris Parizon*, because *li* and *edzino* are equally subjects of the same clause. But if we substitute **kun** for **kaj**, then *li* becomes the *sole* subject, and we can correctly say, *Li kun sia edzino iris Parizon*, or, *Li iris Parizon kun sia edzino*=He went to Paris *with* his wife. If we use **kaj** we must say, *Li kaj lia edzino iris Parizon*=He *and* his wife went to Paris.

136. In the four following examples **sia** refers to the *subject* of the sentence:—

Mia patrino forgesis sian libron=My mother forgot (or, has forgotten) her book. *Tiu infanaj perdis siajn gepatrhojn*=Those children have lost their parents. *La hundo amas sian mastron*=The dog loves its master. *Oni devas ami sian najbaron, kiel sin mem*=One must love one's neighbour as oneself. N.B.—*Sin* is here in the accusative owing to ellipsis, the words *oni devas ami* after *kiel* being understood (see para. 105).

137. In the following three sentences the possessive pronoun *does not refer to the subject* of the sentence, and therefore we use **lia**, **śia**, **gia**, or **lia**, as the case may be :—

Li vidis mian amikon kaj lian edzinon = He saw my friend and his (his friend's) wife. *Si venis al mi hieraū, por ke mi redonu śiajn leterojn al si* = She came to me yesterday in order that I might return her letters to her. *La refo amas Johanon kaj lian filon* = The king loves John and his son.

N.B.—Here the English does not show whether it is John's son or his own son whom the king loves, but in Esperanto it is clear it is John's son, otherwise it would be *stan filon*; *lian filon* is in the accusative here, because the conjunction *kaj* connects like cases (see para. 266).

(a). Note in the following examples how the possessive varies in accordance with the construction of the sentence.

El ĉiuj śiaj amikinoj, si plej amas Marion = Of all her friends (female), she loves Mary best. (Here *śiaj* refers to *si*).

El ĉiuj śiaj amikinoj, Mario estas la plej amata = Of all her friends, Mary is the most loved. (Here *śiaj* refers to some woman not mentioned).

Leginte sian libron, li ekdormis = After reading (having read) his book, he fell asleep. (Here *sian* refers to *li*, understood in *leginte* = When *he* had read his book, *he...*). *Leginte lian libron, li ekdormis* = After reading his book, he fell asleep. (Here *lian* refers to some man not mentioned, who might have lent him the book).

Johano, legante sian libron, venkiĝis de dormo = John, while reading his book, was (became) overcome by sleep.

138. The following are sentences more complicated, showing the advantage of Esperanto over English, or indeed over most national languages, in respect of its great clearness of expression :—

Petro skribis al Paŭlo, ke li konduku al li sian hundon = Peter wrote to Paul to bring him his dog (*sian* refers to Paul because *li* = he (Paul) becomes the subject, and *śia* always, as we have said, refers to the subject of its own particular clause; if, therefore, *lian* had been the possessive, it would have been Peter's dog).

Post kiam la rego mortis, lia filo edzigiis kun sia kuzino=
 After the king died, his son married his cousin. Here *sia* would refer to *filo*, the son's cousin, but *lia* to *rego*, the king's cousin.

Mia patrino petis sian filinon, ke si donu al sia fratino sian libron. This sentence in English, whichever of the possessives be used, would be "My mother requested her daughter to give (that she give) to her sister her book." Now the mother is the first subject in this sentence, therefore *sian filinon* is the mother's daughter (*sian* would mean someone else's daughter). But afterwards *si* (the daughter) becomes the subject, therefore *sia fratino* would be the daughter's sister, and *sia fratino* the mother's. For the remainder of the sentence *si* (the daughter) still remains the subject, therefore *sian libron* would be the daughter's book, and *sian libron* the sister's or the mother's book. Whether the sister be the mother's or the daughter's sister, the first possessive (*sia* or *sia*) will decide.

138. (a). From the examples given in paragraphs 128, 135, 136, and 138, we see that the reflexive pronoun **si** and the possessive **sia** always refer to the subject (noun or pronoun) of their own clause.

(b). **Si** and **sia** are likewise used when the noun or pronoun to which they refer is not expressed, but only understood.

EXAMPLES.—*Tio estas nova metodo por brosi sian capelon!*= That is a new method for brushing one's hat! *Estas bone ne trompi sin*=It is well not to deceive oneself. (This is a case of ellipsis, the full phrase being *estas bone, ke oni ne trompu sin*, where *sin* refers to the pronoun *oni* (see para. 105)).

CORRELATIVE WORDS.
(Korelativaj Vortoj).

139. **The 45 correlative words** (see table, para. 147) form a very important part in the construction of the Esperanto language. Their uses and meanings are very easily learnt and remembered, since they have been exceedingly cleverly devised on a simple and uniform plan. They are all to be found in the list of Primary Words given in Part V.

140. They consist of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs. Most of them can be applied to denote not only one word, but often expressions which require several English words to clearly define.

141. The words in the table (para. 147) are placed in series horizontally and vertically. All the words in each of the vertical series commence with the same letter, and in the horizontal series they have the same termination. It will be seen that the letter *I* is the first letter in the first vertical series, and that this is a central letter in each of the other words in the table. The first letter of a word conveys an idea of its meaning, and the terminal letters following *I* show how that idea is applied, and consequently the full meaning of the word.

(a). **The initial letters** convey the following ideas :—

- I-** that the word is “ indefinite.”
- Ĝ-** ” ” ” “ distributive ” or “ collective.”
- K-** ” ” ” “ interrogative ” or “ relative.”
- NEN-** ” ” ” “ negative ” (**nen-** = **ne**, *not*, and *N* added for euphony).
- T-** ” ” ” “ demonstrative.”

(b). **The terminal letters** following *I* denote that the idea is to be applied, in accordance with the termination, as follows :—

- A** that it relates to “ quality ” or “ the kind of ” (adjectival).
- AL** ” ” ” ” “ motive ” or “ reason for ” (adverbial).
- AM** ” ” ” ” “ time ” (adverbial).
- E** ” ” ” ” “ place ” (adverbial).
- EL** ” ” ” ” “ manner ” (adverbial).
- ES** ” ” ” ” “ possession ” (pronominal).
- O** ” ” ” ” “ a thing ” (substantival or pronominal).
- OM** ” ” ” ” “ quantity ” or “ number of ” (adverbial).
- U** ” ” ” ” “ persons ” or “ things specified ” (pronominal).

142. **The correlative words** are all complete in themselves, but some of them can be used as root-words, taking grammatical terminations when required by the sense to be conveyed. Those ending in the vowels *A*, *E*, *O*, *U*, must not necessarily be presumed to be the parts of speech these letters indicate ; the letters are not grammatical terminations, they simply show, as before stated, how the idea conveyed in the preceding letters is to

be applied. Those ending in a vowel all take the accusative *N*, and those ending in *A* and *U* also take the plural *J*.

143. The demonstrative pronouns, **tio** = *that* (thing), **tiu** = *that one, the former*, and sometimes **čio**, are followed by the separate word **či** = *nearest*, to express the demonstrative pronoun "this." **Či** is invariable, but **tio** and **tiu** can be inflected as before stated. Thus **tio** = *that (thing)*, **tio či** = *this (thing)* (lit., "that here"), **tion či** (accusative) = *this (thing)*. **Tiu** = *that one, the former*, **tiu či** = *this one, the latter*. **Tiuj** = *those*, **tiuj či** = *these* (lit., "those here"). Occasionally **či** is placed first, as:—**či tiu** = *this one* (lit., "here that"). **čio či** = *all this*.

144. The adverb, **tie** = *there*, is also followed by **či** to denote "here." Thus **tie** = *there*, **tie či** = *here*, **ties** (accusative) = *thither*, **tien či** = *hither*. Occasionally **či** is placed first, as **či tie** = *here, hereat*.

145. The interrogative or relative series (viz., those commencing with *K*) may be followed by the word **ajn** = *ever*, as **kia ajn** = *whatever kind of*, **kial ajn** = *for whatever reason*, **kiam ajn** = *whenever*, **kie ajn** = *wherever*, **kiel ajn** = *however*, **kies ajn** = *whose-soever*, **kio ajn** = *whatever*, **kiom ajn** = *however much, whatever quantity*, **kiu ajn** = *whoever, whichever*.

Some writers use **ajn** after other correlatives, but Dr. Zamenhof uses it himself only after the series *kia*, *kial*, etc. However, he does not say it is wrong to extend its use, for when asked the question whether it could be employed after the series *ia*, *ial*, etc., he replied that it could, because, in Esperanto, any word could be combined with any other.

146. Grammatical terminations and suffixes may be added to the correlatives if required, thus making them nouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, etc.,

as shown in the following examples. The hyphens are given to show the construction of the words, so should not be used in writing, except where *či* occurs, as shown in brackets in the following examples:—

Čiam-a=Everlasting, continual. *Čiam-e*=Everlastingly, forever. *Čie-a*=Of everywhere. *Či-tie-a* (*či-tiea*)=Of here. *Tie-a*=Of there. *Či-tie-ulō* (*či-tieulo*)=A man of this place. *Tie-ulō*=A man of that place. *Kiom-a*=Of what quantity. *Kioma horo estas?*=What time is it? *Neni-igi*=To reduce to nothing, destroy completely. *Neni-igi*=To become nothing, to vanish. *Tiam-a*=Of then, of that time. *Tiam-ulō*=A man of that time, a contemporary. *La kial-o*=The why and wherefore, the reason (cause). *Tiel-e*=In that way.

147. TABLE OF CORRELATIVE WORDS.

46

	Indefinite.	Distributive, General or Collective.	Interrogative and Relative.	Negative.	Demonstrative.
Quality Kind of (adjectival)	IA some } kind of (any) } some (any)	âIA every kind of each, every (any sort of)	KIA what kind of? of what kind? what a! as	NENIA no kind of no, no such of no kind (not any kind of)	TIA such kind of such a of that kind
Motive Reason for (adverbial)	IAL for { some } reason (any) } or cause	âIAL for every reason for all reasons	KIAL for what reason why? wherefore	NENIAL for no { reason (cause	TIAL for that reason for such a reason therefore
Time (adverbial)	IAM at { some } time (any) ever once	âIAM always every time for all time ever (at any time)	KIAM at what time? when	NENIAM at no time never	TIAM at that time at such time then
Place (adverbial)	IE in { some } place (any) somewhere, (anywhere)	âIE everywhere in every place (anywhere)	KIE in what place where	NENIE in no place nowhere (not anywhere)	TIE in that place there yonder

Manner (adverbial)	IEL in some way (in any manner) somehow (anyhow)	CIEL (in) every manner (in) every way all ways	KIEL in what manner how?as like	NENIEL in no { manner way nohow by no means not at all	TIEL in that manner thus, so, like (that) as in such a manner
Possession (pronominal)	IES somebody's (anybody's) (anyone's)	CIIES everyone's each one's	KIES whose	NENIES no one's nobody's	TIES that one's such a one's
Thing (not specified) (substantival or pronominal)	IO something (anything)	CIIO everything all things all	KIO what (thing) which that which	NENIO nothing not anything	TIIO that (thing)
Quantity (adverbial)	IOM some quantity somewhat rather, some a little (any)	CIOM every quantity all, the whole all of it	KIOM what quantity how much how many	NENIOM no quantity none none at all	TIOM that quantity so { much as { many
Individuality Person or thing (pronominal)	IU some one (anyone)	CIU each one, each <i>čiuj=</i> all, all the... everybody	KIU who, he who which, that what one	NENIU no one nobody	TIU that one the former

Examples of the Use of Correlative Words.

148. In the following examples (paras. 149—159) we have taken the correlative words in the table in the nine horizontal series, since in this way we can best show how some of the words are used in pairs.

149. **Series ending in A** (quality, kind of), adjectival.

Ia = *some sort of, some (any kind of, any)*, *a, an*.

Ĉia = *every kind of, every (any sort of)*.

Kia = *what a! what kind of? of what kind, ...as*

Nenia = *no, no such, no kind of, of no kind (not any kind of)*.

Tia = *such a, such kind of, of that kind*.

Tia...kia = *such...as*.

EXAMPLES.—*Cu vi ne haras ian libron, kiu klarigos tion?* =, Have you not some book which will explain that?

Mi haras ian ideon kiel ĝin fari = I have some (or, an) idea how to do it.

Ekster ĉia dubo = Beyond any (every sort of) doubt.

Tiaj frazoj trovigas en ĉiaj libroj = Such (kind of) phrases are found in all kinds (sorts) of (or, in any) books.

Ni nescias, kiel ili faris tiaj, kiaj ili estas = We do not know how they became what (such as) they are.

Nenia antaŭa sperto estas necesa = No (kind of) previous experience is necessary.

Tian virinon oni ĉiam estimas = Such a woman one always esteems.

Mi donis al li la libron tian, kia gi estis = I gave him the book such as it was.

Kian aĝon li haras? = How old (what kind of age) is he?

Kia estas la vetero? = How (what kind) is the weather?

Komencante de kia aĝo momento = Commencing at any (whatever) moment.

Kia bela domo! = What a beautiful house!

Kiaj estas la kondiĉoj? = What are the stipulations (or terms)?

Ili estas fieraj, ni ne estas tiaj = They are proud, we are not so.

Si eksentis ion tian, kion ŝi mem komence ne poris komprendi = She began to feel something such as she herself at first could not understand.

Jus mi eksciis iajn aferojn, kiuj ne plaĉas al mi=I have just learnt some things that do not please me (that I do not like).

Jen estas la monumento tia, kian oni ĝin priskribis=Here is the monument such as they described it.

Via aĝo estas tia sama, kiel tiu de via frato=Your age is the same as your brother's.

N.B.—Do not confuse the series ending in *A* with that ending in *U*.

EXAMPLES.—*Kian libron vi bezonas?*=What (sort of) book do you want? *Kiun libron vi bezonas?*=What (or which) book do you want? *Tia homo*=Such a man, that sort of man. *Tiu homo*=That man. *Ĉiuj libroj*=All (kinds of) books. *Ĉiuj libroj*=All (or, all the) books. *Mi ĝin prenos, kia aĵo ĝi estas*=I shall take it whatever (sort of thing) it is.

150. Series ending in AL (motive, reason for), adverbial.

Ial=for some reason or cause (for any reason).

Ĉial=for all reasons, for every reason (for any cause).

Kial=why? wherefore, for what reason.

Nenial=for no reason, or cause.

Tial=therefore, for that reason.

EXAMPLES.—*Ial li subite forlasis Londonon*=For some reason he suddenly left London.

Ĉial tio estas la plej bona=For every reason that is the best.

Kial vi ne respondis?=Why did you not answer?

Li nenial ĉesis skribi al mi=He for no reason ceased writing to me.

Si neniam volis sekvi mian konsilon, tial mi forlasis ŝin=She never would follow my advice, therefore I forsook her.

Mi ne povas imagi kial aĵo li ĝin faris=I cannot imagine why ever he did it.

151. Series ending in AM (time), adverbial.

Iam=ever, some time (any time), once, one day, once upon a time.

Ĉiam=always, for all time, ever (at any time).

Kiam=when, at what time, as (relating to time).

Neniam=never, at no time.

Tiam=then, at that time.

EXAMPLES—*Se iam mi venos*=If ever I come (shall come).

Venu hodiaŭ, ĉar iam morgaŭ estos tro malfrue=Come to-day, for any time to-morrow will be too late.

¶ 151—152. CORRELATIVE WORDS.

Ciam skribu legible = Always write legibly.

En tiaj okazoj ciam mankas io = On such occasions something is always wanting.

Kiam vi skribis tiel? = When did you write like that (thus)?

Kiam la pastro venos, diru al li la veron = When the priest comes (shall come), tell him the truth.

Tiam, kiam mi estis riĉa, mi ne estis feliĉa, or, Kiam mi estis riĉa, tiam mi ne estis feliĉa = At that time when (or, when) I was rich I was not happy, or, When I was rich then I was not happy, or the sentence might be simply Kiam mi estis riĉa, mi ne estis feliĉa = When I was rich I was not happy.

Mi neniam skribas longajn leterojn = I never write long letters.

Mi neniam aŭdis tion = I never heard that.

Sendu lin al mi, kiam ajan li venos = Send him to me whenever he comes.

Kiam ajan li venos? = Whenever will he come?

N.B.—**Kiam** is used after **tiam**, and any word denoting “time” except **antaŭ** = before, when **ol** is generally used, but **kiam** is used occasionally after **antaŭ** (see para. 259 (3)).

EXAMPLES.—*Unutage, kiam = One day, when. Tagon, kiam = On a day, when. Tuj kiam = As soon as, immediately when. Jus kiam = Just as (when). Samtempe, kiam = At the same time, when. De ĉi tempo kiam = From the time when, since. Post kiam = After. Antaŭ ol li venis = Before he came.*

152. Series ending in E (place), adverbial.

Ie = somewhere (anywhere), in some (any) place.

Ĉie = everywhere, in every place, in all places (anywhere).

Kie = where, in what place.

Nenie = nowhere, in no place.

Tie = there, yonder, in that place. **Tie ĉi** = here, in this place.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ne poris trovi mian libron ie en la ĉambro = I could not find my book anywhere in the room.*

Ĉu vi metis ĝin ien? = Did you put it anywhere (somewhere)?

Ĉie mi trovis amikojn = Everywhere I found friends.

Tion oni poras aĉeti ĉie = That can be bought (one can buy) anywhere (everywhere).

Kien vi iras? = Where are you going?

Mi iras nenie = I am going nowhere.

Kie estas la poštosticejo? = Where is the post office?
Ĝi estas tie, kie staras tiu domo = It is there where that house stands.

Kien vi iras? = Whither are you going?

Mi iras tien = I am going thither.

Ĉu vi estas tie ĉi? = Are you here?

Li venas tien ĉi = He is coming here.

Kie ajan li estas? = Wherever is he?

Kie ajan li estas, li ne estas tie ĉi = Wherever he is, he is not here.

153. Series in EL (manner), adverbial.

Iel = somehow (anyhow), some way, in any manner.

Ĉiel = in every way, in every manner, all ways.

Kiel = how, in what manner, like,...as.

Neniel = nohow, in no manner, not at all, by no means.

Tiel = thus, in that manner, like (that), so, as...

Tiel...kiel (in comparison) = as...as.

EXAMPLES.—*Iel li ĉiel sukcesas* = Somehow he succeeds in every way.

Mi havis nenian ideon, kiel gin fari = I had no idea how to do it.

Kiel vi fartas? = How do you do? or, How are you?

Tia homo, kiel vi = Such a man as you.

Si neniel povis lin kompreni tiel longe, kiel li la lingvon franca parolis = She could nohow (or, not at all) understand him as long as he spoke in the French language.

Same kiel la prudento estas donita al la homo, tiel la instinkto estas donita al la besto = Just as reason has been given to man, so instinct has been given to beasts.

Kiel eble plej baldaŭ = As soon as possible (lit., as possible, soonest).

Kaj tiel plu (often written *k.t.p.*) = And so on, and so forth.

Li estas tiel forta, kiel vi = He is as strong as you.

Kiel ajan malmulte = However little.

154. Series ending in ES (possession), pronominal.

Ies = somebody's, someone's (anyone's, anybody's).

Ĉies = everyone's, each one's.

Kies = whose.

Nenies = no one's, nobody's.

Ties = such a one's, that one's.

¶ 154—155. CORRELATIVE WORDS.

EXAMPLES.—*Cies dero estas nenes*=Anybody's(everybody's) duty is nobody's.

Ies perdo ne estas ĉiam ies gajno=Someone's loss is not always somebody's gain.

Cies ideo estas diversa=Everyone's idea was different.

Kies libro estas tiu ĉi?=Whose book is this?

Kies plumon vi uzas?=Whose pen are you using?

La domo, kies tegmenton vi vidas, apartenas al mia patro=The house whose roof you see belongs to my father.

El kies ĉiu paſo, oni povas konkludi, ke ili estas lacaj=From all of whose steps we can conclude that they are tired.

Tiu libro estas tre malpura, kies ajan ĝi estas=That book is very dirty, whosesoever it is.

Ties opinio ne multe valoras=Such a one's opinion is not worth much.

Mi neniam sekras ties konsilon=I never take (follow) such a one's advice.

N.B.—Be careful not to use *kies* for "of which," when it does not mean possession. We cannot say *La afero kies ni parolis* for "The affair of which we spoke"; we must say *La afero, pri kiu ni parolis*.

155. Series ending in O (thing (not specified) indefinite), substantival or pronominal.

Tio = something (anything).

Ĉio = everything, all things, all.

Kio = what (thing), which, that which.

Nenio = nothing, not any thing.

Tio ĉi = that (thing). **Tio ĉi** = this (thing).

EXAMPLES.—*Kio estas tio, kion vi skribas?*=What is that (or, that which) you are writing?

Io estis sub la tablo, sed mi ne poris vidi ion tie=Something was under the table, but I could not see anything (something) there.

Li ridis ion, kion li tre amis=He saw something he liked very much.

Estas tempo por ĉio=There is a time for everything.

Ĉio tio ĉi montras, ke...=All this shows that...

Ĉio, kion mi haras, estas (la) via=All I have is yours.

Kio estas tio ĉi, kion mi ridas?=What is this that I see?

Nenio estas preta=Nothing is ready.

Mi nenion trovis=I found nothing.

Tio havas malbonan odoron, kio ajan ĝi estas=It (that) has a bad smell, whatever it is.

Li ne diris eĉ unu vorton pri ĉio tio ĉi (or, ĉio ĉi) al iu=He did not say even one word about all this to anyone.

156. Series ending in OM (quantity), adverbial.

Iom = somewhat, some quantity, rather, a little, some.**Ĉiom** = all, all of it, the whole, every quantity.**Kiom** = how much, how many, what quantity.**Neniom** = none, none at all, no quantity.**Tiom** = so much, so many, as much, as many, that quantity.**Tiom...kiom** = as much (many)...as.EXAMPLES.—*La vetero estas iom pli varma* = The weather is somewhat (a little) warmer.*Jen estas suko, prenu iom da ĝi, sed ne prenu ĉiom* = Here is sugar, take some of it, but do not take all (the whole of it).*Kiom da ĉeraloj ri haras?* = How many horses have you?*Mi haras neniom* = I have none (none at all).*Tiom pli bone* = So much the better.*Tiom estas malfacile memori* = So much is difficult to remember.*Donu al mi tiom da akvo, kiom da vino* = Give me as much water as wine.*Kiom ri scias* = As far (much) as you know.*Kiom eble* = As far (much) (many) as possible.*Kiom ajan da tio tiu kesto poras enhari, tiu ĉi poras enhari duoble tiom* = Whatever quantity (however much) of tea that chest will (can) hold, this one will hold twice as much.

157. Series ending in U (persons or specified things), pronominal.

Iu = someone (anyone).**Ĉiu** = everyone, each one. **Ĉiu** = all, all (of) the...**Kiu** = who, he who, which, that, what one.**Neniu** = nobody, no one.**Tiu** = that (one), the former. **Tiu ĉi** = this one, the latter.EXAMPLES.—*Iu estas tie* = Someone is there.*Mi ne vidis iun* = I did not see anyone (someone).*Ĉiu aĝo havas siajn derojn* = Each age has its duties.*Si legis ĉiun libron, kiun ĝi poris ricevi* = She read every book she could get.*Kiu estas en la ĝardeno?* = Who is in the garden?*Mi konis ĉiun riron, kiun mi renkontis* = I knew every man whom I met.

¶ 157—158. CORRELATIVE WORDS.

Mi legis ĉiujn librojn, kiujn vi pruntis al mi=I read all the books that you lent to me.

Tiu pano estas frēsa, sed tiu ĉi estas pli frēsa=That bread is new, but this is newer.

Tiu, kiu havas la harojn nigrajn=He who has the black hair.

Neniu estis tie, tial mi vidis neniu=No one was there, therefore I saw nobody.

Tiu homo, kiun ajan li estas, ne estas malsajulo=That man, whoever he is, is not a fool.

Si fariĝis edzino de iu bankiero, kiun si konis pli bone, ol ĉiun alian=She became wife of a certain (someone, a) banker, whom she knew better than anyone (every one) else.

Ĉiu vorto povas esti kombinata kun ĉiu alia=Any (each) word can be combined with any (each) other word.

Li pli sincere maljojis je li, ol kiu ajn el liaj parencoj=He was more sincerely sorry for him than any of his relations.

La paſilo povos en ĉiu tempo (ĉiam) esti sargita=The gun can be (will be able to be) loaded at any time.

Li ne permesos al kiu ajn tion fari=He will not allow anyone (whatever) to do that.

158. General Remarks.—The foregoing remarks on the correlative words show the importance of a correct knowledge of their true meanings. Twenty or more of them will be found in nearly every page of the “Krestomatio.” Note the following difference in meaning of those ending in :—

(a). *-AL* and *-EL*. It will be noticed that the series *AL* represent phrases in English commencing with “for,” as:—“for some reason,” “for every reason,” etc.; whereas in the series *EL* the phrases commence with “in,” as:—“in some way,” “in every way.” Bear in mind that *-AL* relates to *motive*, and *-EL* to *manner*. Note the difference of meaning in *tial* and *tiel* when followed by *ke*. *Tial, ke*=*for the reason that, forasmuch as, because that*. *Tiel, ke*=*in such a manner that, so that*. Some beginners seem to think that *kial* and *kiel* have no difference in meaning, which is equivalent to using “why” and “how” indiscriminately. *Kial li faras tion?*=*Why (for what reason) is he doing that?* *Kiel li faras tion?*=*How (in what way) is he doing that?*

(b). *-O* and *-U*. The series *O* is rarely used in the plural; it relates to things which are not mentioned by name or referred to by a personal pronoun. Examples.—**Kio estas**

tio? = *What is that?* **Kiu estas tiu?** = *Who is that?* **Tiu estas mia frato, kiu promenadas kun sia edzino** = *That is my brother who is walking with his wife.* **Tio estas, kion mi bezonis** = *That is what I wanted.* **Tio, kio kreskas en mia ĝardeno, estas arbo** = *That which is growing in my garden is a tree.* **Tiu arbo, kiu kreskas en mia ĝardeno, estas kverko** = *That tree, which is growing in my garden, is an oak.*

Tio is sometimes used for "it," relating to both persons and things, as :—**Tio** (or, *ji*) *estis mi, kiu lin vidis* = *It was I who saw him.* **Tio estas ponto** = *It (that) is a bridge.*

(c). **I**, **I****A**, **ĆI****A**, **ĆI****I****A**, etc. In the table of Correlative Words on pages 94, 95, it will be noticed that all the words in the columns commencing with *I* and *Ć* are shown (in brackets) to have the meaning of "any." This is owing to a peculiarity in the English language by which, in some phrases, the word "any" carries the meaning of "some," but in others "every." The primary meaning of the "*I*" series gives the idea of "some," and that of the "*Ć*" series of "every," so we must be careful to note this distinction in translating "any" into Esperanto. Note the difference in the two phrases "Anyone can do that" and "Someone can do that"; in the former we mean "everyone," but in the latter "some one person." So we say **Ćiu povas tion fari** = *Anyone can do that.* **Iu povas tion fari** = *Someone can do that.* If, however, we make the phrase interrogative, negative, or conditional, then "any" does not give the idea of "every," so we use **Iu**, e.g., **Ću iu povas tion fari?** = *Can anyone do that?* **Mi ne konas iun, kiu povas tion fari** = *I do not know anyone who can do that; or,* **Mi konas nenium, kiu povas tion fari** = *I know no one who can do that.* **Se iu povus tion fari, ĝi mirigus min** = *If anyone could do that he (or, she) would astonish me.* Note here that **Iu** does not show the sex, therefore we use the neuter pronoun **ĝi**.

(d). The "*K*" series, followed by **ajn**, may also be used, as shown in the examples in para. 157, to give a stronger force to the word "any," as :—**Donu al mi ian libron, kian ajn vi havas** = *Give me any book (whatever) you have.* **Mi vidas iin, kiam ajn mi iras Londonon** = *I see him whenever I go to London.* **Kion ajn li diris, tio estis negrava** = *Anything (whatever) he said was unimportant, or, Whatever he said did not matter.*

THE VERB (La Verbo).

159. **There are no irregular verbs in Esperanto.** Every verb is conjugated exactly the same.

160. The following are the grammatical terminations of all verbs, from which it will be seen that there are only **three tenses** (see paras. 214—236), **three moods** (see paras. 171—202), and **six participles** (see paras. 203—213).

TENSES.

-AS, Present, as : **Mi faras** = *I do, or, make.*

-IS, Past, „, **Vi faris** = *you did, or, made.*
or, *have (or, had)*
done, or, made.

-OS, Future, „, **Ili faros** = *they will do, or, make.*

CONDITIONAL, or US MOOD.

-US, as : **Se mi farus** = *if I did, or, should (or,
would) do, or, were
to do, or, make.*

IMPERATIVE, or U MOOD.

-U, as : **Diru al li, ke li tion faru** = *tell him to
do that (lit., that he do that).*
Ni faru tion = *let us do that.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

-I, as : **Fari** = *to do, or, to make.*

PARTICIPLES.

-ANTA, Active, Present, as: **Faranta** = *doing*.

Farante (adv.) = *in (when,
or other prep.) doing*.

-INTA, „ Past, as: **Farinta** = *having done*.

Farinte (adv.) = *in having
done*.

-ONTA, „ Future, as: **Faronta** = *(being) about to
do*.

Faronte (adv.) = *on being
about to do*.

-ATA, Passive, Present, as: **Farata** = *being done, or,
done*.

Farate (adv.) = *on being
done*.

-ITA, „ Past, as: **Farita** = *been done, or,
having been done*.

Farite (adv.) = *on having
been done*.

-OTA, „ Future, as: **Farota** = *(being) about to
be done*.

Farote (adv.) = *on being
about to be done*.

N.B.—For examples of the noun-participles see
para. 209.

CLASSES OF VERBS.

There are two classes of verbs—**transitive** and
intransitive.

Transitive Verbs (*transitivaj verboj*).

161. A **transitive verb** has two forms or voices,
the **active** and the **passive**.

(a). A verb is in the **active voice** when the subject is acting upon the object. The object then, being governed by the verb, must be in the accusative case; as :—**Johano batis la hundon** = *John beat the dog*. Here **Johano** is the subject acting upon **hundon**, the object; therefore **hundon** is in the accusative.

(b). A **transitive** verb is in the **passive voice** when the subject is acted upon; as :—**La hundo estis batata de Johano** = *The dog was (being) beaten by John*. The preposition “by” or “with,” preceding the complement of a verb in the passive voice, is **de** or **per**. **De** is used for the agent, and **per** for the means or manner, as :—**La domo konstruita de mia patro estas kovrita per ardezoj** = *The house built by my father is (having been) covered with slates*.

Intransitive Verbs (*netransitivaj verboj*).

162. An **intransitive verb** expresses an action confined to the actor, as :—**Johano dormas** = *John sleeps, or, is sleeping*. Intransitive verbs have therefore no object and no passive voice.

Auxiliary Verb (*helpa verbo*).

163. **There is but one auxiliary verb** in Esperanto, **esti** = *to be*. This verb is used to form the passive voice, and also all the compound tenses of the active voice. The verb **havi** = *to have* is in no sense an auxiliary, but an ordinary active verb denoting ownership, and governing the accusative case, as :—**Mi havas libron** = *I have a book*.

In English we frequently use the verb “to be” when some other verb would more exactly describe the state or position of an object. In Esperanto the following verbs are often used when we employ “to be,” viz., **kuſi** = *to lie*; **sidi** = *to be situate*; **sin trovi** = *to find oneself*; **troviĝi** = *to be found*; **stari** = *to stand*; **farti**, or, **stati** = *to be (well or ill)*.

EXAMPLES.—*La krajono kuſas (estas) sur la tablo*=The pencil is (lies) on the table. *Sur la kameno staris (estis) ſera kaltkrono, en kiu ſin trovis (estis) bolanta akvo; tra la fenestro, kiu ſin trovis (estis) apud la pordo, la vaporo iris sur la korto*=On the hearth was (stood) an iron kettle, in which was (found itself) boiling water; through the window, which was near the door, steam went out into (on to) the yard. *Kiel furtas (or, statas) via tuo?*=How is your cough?

Impersonal Use of Verbs.

164. Verbs used impersonally (*sen persone*) express a fact or action without indicating any person as the subject or actor. They are used only in English in the third person singular, preceded by "it," expressed or implied, but in Esperanto they are entirely impersonal. The following are cases of their impersonal use:—

(a). Verbs which relate to the weather.

EXAMPLES.—*Pluras*=It rains. *Pluvas*=It will rain. *Fulnis*=It lightened. *Negus*=It would snow. *Hajlis*=It hailed.

(b). Verbs which are generally used with the subject expressed, but occasionally without.

EXAMPLES.—*Okazas*=It happens. *Sajnos*=It will seem. *Properis al mi trori*=It was my fortune to find... (lit., it succeeded to me to find).

(c). The verb **estis**=to be, when used with an adjective-adverb, or passive participle-adverb.

EXAMPLES.—*Estas pli bone forkuri*=It is better to run away. *Estas dirite, ke...*=It is said that...

(d). In the compound tenses the participle takes the adverbial form, since there is no noun or pronoun with which it can agree (see para. 245).

EXAMPLES.—*Se estus plurinte hierau, ni ne estus porintaj eliri*=If it had (should have) rained yesterday, we should not have been able to go out. *Mi tranĉigos la herbon, kiam estos plurinte*=I shall get the grass cut, when it has (will have) rained. (*Tranĉigi*=to get cut, see para. 237 (k) (2)).

Reflexive Verbs (*refleksivaj verboj*).

165. **Reflexive verbs** show the action of the subject on itself. They are used only when the subject really acts on itself, and not, as in many other languages, on other occasions. To be certain that one can repeat the personal pronoun, ask yourself whether you can do the act on another person. For instance, you yourself can talk, or dream, or speak, but you cannot talk, dream, or speak another person. You can, however, wash, shave, or dress either yourself or another; therefore verbs used reflexively with a personal pronoun must be in the active voice (see para. 128 on the use of the reflexive pronoun *si*, and para. 170, conjugation of a reflexive verb).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi larjis min*=I wash myself. *Li larjis sin*=He washed himself. *Vi razos vin*=You will shave yourself. *Ili vestis sin*=They dressed themselves.

166. When there are more subjects than one, and the act goes from one to another of the subjects, the word **reciproke**, or the expression *unu la alian*, may be used. With the latter the personal pronoun is generally not repeated.

EXAMPLES.—*Ili batis sin reciproke*, or, *Ili batis unu la alian*=They beat one another. *Ili jetis terbulojn al la kapo unu de la alia*=They threw clods (lumps of earth) at one another's heads.

167. CONJUGATION OF ESTI.

The following are the simple tenses and moods of **esti**, by the aid of which all the *compound* tenses in the active voice and *all* the tenses in the passive voice of every verb in Esperanto are formed. The compound tenses of **esti**, such as *mi estas estanta*=I am being, etc., are very rarely used.

INFINITIVE MOOD.**Esti** = *to be.***PARTICIPLES.**Present, **Estanta** = *being.*Past, **Estinta** = *been, or, having been.*Future, **Estonta** = *about to be, or, going to be.*

Note that participles take the plural *J* and accusative *N* if required (see para. 207); also the adverbial *E* (see para. 209 (c)).

(INDICATIVE) MOOD.**Present.**

Mi	= <i>I am.</i>
Vi, cl	= <i>You (thou) are (art).</i>
Li, si, gi, oni	= <i>He, she, it, one is.</i>
Ni	= <i>We are.</i>
Vi	= <i>You are.</i>
III	= <i>They are.</i>

N.B.—The pronoun **cl** = *thou* is rarely used.

Past.

Mi	= <i>I was.</i>
Vi	= <i>You were.</i>
Li, etc.	= <i>He was.</i>
Ni	= <i>We were.</i>
Vi	= <i>You were.</i>
III	= <i>They were.</i>

Future.

Singular,	Mi	= <i>I shall be.</i>
	Vi	= <i>You will be.</i>
	Li, etc.	= <i>He will be.</i>
	Ni	= <i>We shall be.</i>
Plural.	Vi	= <i>You will be.</i>
	III	= <i>They will be.</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

The conditional or US mood has no tenses (see para. 192). We can show its meaning best by using the conjunction **se**, which frequently introduces it.

Plural. Sing.	(Se)	Mi	= (<i>If I should be, were, had been.</i>)
	"	Vi	= " you would " " "
	" Li, etc.	Estu	= " he would " " "
	"	Ni	= " we should " " "
	"	Vi	= " you would " " "
	"	Ili	= " they would " " "

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative or U mood has no tenses.

The following is its form and meaning in a **chief** proposition (see para. 199).

Singular.	Mi estu	= <i>Let me be.</i>
	Estu	= <i>Be, or, be you, or, be thou.</i>
	Li, Ši, Či, estu	= <i>Let him, her, it be.</i>
	Ni estu	= <i>Let us be.</i>
Plural.	Estu	= <i>Be, or, be you, or, be ye.</i>
	Ili estu	= <i>Let them be.</i>

The following is its meaning in a **dependent** proposition, which is usually introduced by the conjunction **ke=that** (para. 200).

Plural. Sing.	(Ke)	Mi	= (<i>That I</i>)
	"	Vi	= " you "
	" Li, etc.	Estu	= " he "
	"	Ni	= " we "
	"	Vi	= " you "
	"	Ili	= " they "

168. CONJUGATION OF AN ACTIVE VERB.

The conjugation of the **compound forms** is given in para. 169, but those in the *active* voice should never be used when the simple forms sufficiently convey the meaning.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple *Present*, **Teni** = *To hold*.

Compound „ **Esti tenanta** = *To be holding*.

„ *Past*, **Esti teninta** = *To have held*.

„ *Future*, **Esti tenonta** = *To be about (or, going), to hold*.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, **Tenanta** = *Holding*.

Past, **Teninta** = *Having held*.

Future, **Tenonta** = *About (or, going) to hold*.

(INDICATIVE) MOOD.

Present (Simple).

Sing:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Vi (or, ci)</td><td>Mi</td><td>= <i>I hold, am holding, do hold</i>.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Li, ſi, ġi</td><td></td><td>= <i>You hold, are holding, do hold</i>.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td>= <i>He, she, it holds, is holding, does hold</i>.</td></tr> </table>	Vi (or, ci)	Mi	= <i>I hold, am holding, do hold</i> .	Li, ſi, ġi		= <i>You hold, are holding, do hold</i> .			= <i>He, she, it holds, is holding, does hold</i> .
Vi (or, ci)	Mi	= <i>I hold, am holding, do hold</i> .								
Li, ſi, ġi		= <i>You hold, are holding, do hold</i> .								
		= <i>He, she, it holds, is holding, does hold</i> .								
Plural:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Ni</td><td>Tenas</td><td>= <i>We hold, are holding, do hold</i>.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Vi</td><td></td><td>= <i>You (or, ye) hold, are holding, do hold</i>.</td></tr> <tr> <td>III</td><td></td><td>= <i>They hold, are holding, do hold</i>.</td></tr> </table>	Ni	Tenas	= <i>We hold, are holding, do hold</i> .	Vi		= <i>You (or, ye) hold, are holding, do hold</i> .	III		= <i>They hold, are holding, do hold</i> .
Ni	Tenas	= <i>We hold, are holding, do hold</i> .								
Vi		= <i>You (or, ye) hold, are holding, do hold</i> .								
III		= <i>They hold, are holding, do hold</i> .								

N.B.—**Ci** = *thou* is rarely used. **Vi** = *you* is used, as in English, for both singular and plural; but when **vi** is plural, the participle in compound tenses takes the plural *J*.

If the action is continuous, add the suffix *-AD-*, as
mi tenadas = *I keep on holding*, or, *do hold (habitually)*.

Past (Simple).

Mi, vi, etc., tenis = *I, you, etc., held, have (or, had) held, was holding, did hold.*

Future (Simple).

Mi, vi, etc., tenos = *I, you, etc., shall hold, or, shall be holding.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD (OR "US" MOOD).

The translation of this mood into English depends upon the context, viz., whether we use the auxiliaries "should," "would," "were," "had," or simply the English past tense. It is frequently introduced by the conjunction **se** = *if* (see paras. 190—194).

(Se) mi tenus = *(If) I held, or, should hold, or, should be holding, or, were holding, or, were to hold, or, had held.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD (OR "U" MOOD).

Singular.	{ Mi tenu	= Let me hold.
	Tenu	= Hold.
	Li, ſi, ғi, tenu	= Let him, her, it hold.
Plural.	{ Ni tenu	= Let us hold.
	Tenu	= Hold.
	III tenu	= Let them hold.

Sing.	{ (Ke) mi tenu	= <i>(That) I may, might, should hold</i>
	,, vi (or, ci) tenu	= „, you (or, thou) do. do.
	,, li tenu	= „, he do. do.
	,, ni tenu	= „, we do. do.
	,, vi tenu	= „, you (or, ye) do. do.
	,, ili tenu	= „, they do. do.

(See remarks on the Imperative mood, paras. 195—202).

CONJUGATION OF THE COMPOUND FORMS OF ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES.

169. The following shows the compound tenses in the active and passive voices, and the compound forms of the conditional and imperative moods:— For the three persons of the plural add *J* to the participle (see paras. 173, 174, 235, 236).

The Present in the	Present { Mi estas tenanta " " tenata	= I am holding. = I am (being) held.
		= I was holding. = I was (being) held.
		= I shall be holding. = I shall be (being) held.
The Past in the	Present { Mi estas teninta " " tenita	= I have held. = I have been, or, was held.
		= I had held. = I had been held, or, was held, if the action is completed.
		= I shall have held. = I shall have been held.
The Future in the	Present { Mi estas tenonta " " tenota	= I am about (or, going) to hold. = I am about (or, going) to be held.
		= I was about (or, going) to hold. = I was about (or, going) to be held.
		= I shall be about to hold. = I shall be about to be held.

CONDITIONAL, OR “US” MOOD.**Active Voice (Compound Form) and the
Passive Voice.**

Se mi estus tenanta	=	<i>If I should be, or, were, holding.</i>
“ tenata	=	“ “ <i>be, or, were (being) held, or, if I be held.</i>
“ teninta	=	“ “ <i>have held, or, if I had held.</i>
“ tenita	=	“ “ <i>have been held, or, if I had been, or, were, held.</i>
“ tenonta	=	“ “ <i>be, or, were, about to hold, or, if I were to hold.</i>
“ tenota	=	“ “ <i>be about to be held, or, if I were to be held.</i>

N.B.—In the active voice use the simple form instead of the present and past participle, unless the compound form is necessary to emphasize the meaning. For instance, in the sentence “He would not have struck me if you had held him,” we use the past participle to show the anteriority, but we need not use it for the first clause; so we say:—*Li ne frapus min, se ri estus teninta lin.* If we use the simple form, *Li ne frapus min, se ri tenus lin*, it would be read:—“He would not strike me if you held him,” unless the context clearly showed the action was completed. We could, however, use the adverb *antaūe* instead of the compound form, and say:—*Li ne frapus min, se ri antaūe tenus lin*=He would not have struck me if you had held him (lit., if you beforehand held him) (see para. 226 (a) and remarks on the Conditional mood, paras. 190—194).

IMPERATIVE, OR "U" MOOD.**Active Voice (Compound Form) and the
Passive Voice.**

- (Por ke) **mi estu tenanta** = (*In order that*) *I may be holding.*
 " **tenata** = (*In order that*) *I may be held.*
 " **teninta** = (*In order that*) *I may have held, or, might hold.*
 " **tenita** = (*In order that*) *I may have been held, or, might be held.*
 " **tenonta** = (*In order that*) *I may be about to hold.*
 " **tenota** = (*In order that*) *I may be about to be held.*

(See remarks on the Imperative mood, paras. 195—202).

170. CONJUGATION OF A REFLEXIVE VERB.**(INDICATIVE MOOD).****Present (Simple).**

- | | | |
|-----------|--|---|
| Singular. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Mi lavas min} \\ \text{Vi lavas vin} \\ \text{Li, si, ḡi, lavas sin} \end{array} \right.$ | = <i>I wash myself.</i>
= <i>You wash yourself.</i>
= <i>He, she, it washes himself, herself, itself.</i> |
| Plural. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ni lavas nin} \\ \text{Vi lavas vin} \\ \text{Illi lavas sin} \end{array} \right.$ | = <i>We wash ourselves.</i>
= <i>You, ye wash yourselves.</i>
= <i>They wash themselves.</i> |

Present (Compound) with the Three Participles.

III ne estas lavantaj sin = *They are not washing themselves.*

Çu ni estas lavintaj nin ? = *Hare we washed ourselves?*
 (lit., *are we having washed ourselves ?*)

Mi estas lavonta min = *I am about (or, going) to wash myself.*

Past (Simple).

Si ne lavis sin = *She did not wash herself.*

Çu ni lavis nin ? = *Did we wash ourselves ?*

Çu ili ne lavis sin ? = *Did they not wash themselves ?*

Past (Compound), with the Three Participles.

Kiam vi estis lavantaj vin ? = *When were you washing yourselves ?*

Ni estis lavintaj nin = *We had washed ourselves.*

Kiam li estis lavonta sin ? = *When was he about (or, going) to wash himself ?*

Future (Simple).

Çu ni lavos nin ? = *Shall we wash ourselves ?*

Li ne lavos sin = *He will not wash himself.*

Future (Compound), with the Three Participles.

Si estos lavanta sin = *She will be washing herself.*

Kiam li estos lavinta sin ? = *When will he have washed himself ?*

Mi estos lavonta min = *I shall be about (or, going) to wash myself.*

CONDITIONAL, OR “US” MOOD (Simple Form).**Se li lavus sin** = *If he should wash himself.***Ĉu ŝi lavus sin, se...?** = *Would she wash herself, if...?***Conditional (Compound), with the Three Participles.****Se ni estus lavantaj nin kiām...** = *If we should be washing ourselves when...***Ĉu ili estus lavintaj sin, se...?** = *Would they have washed themselves if...?***Se li estus lavonta sin kiām ..** = *If he should be about to wash himself when...***IMPERATIVE, OR “U” MOOD.****Chief Form (Simple).**

Singular.	<table border="0"> <tr><td>Mi lavu min</td><td>= Let me wash myself.</td></tr> <tr><td>Lavu vin</td><td>= Wash yourself.</td></tr> <tr><td>Ne lavu vin</td><td>= Do not wash yourself.</td></tr> <tr><td>Li lavu sin</td><td>= Let him wash himself.</td></tr> <tr><td>Li ne lavu sin</td><td>= Let him not wash himself.</td></tr> </table>	Mi lavu min	= Let me wash myself.	Lavu vin	= Wash yourself.	Ne lavu vin	= Do not wash yourself.	Li lavu sin	= Let him wash himself.	Li ne lavu sin	= Let him not wash himself.
Mi lavu min	= Let me wash myself.										
Lavu vin	= Wash yourself.										
Ne lavu vin	= Do not wash yourself.										
Li lavu sin	= Let him wash himself.										
Li ne lavu sin	= Let him not wash himself.										

Plural.	<table border="0"> <tr><td>Ni lavu nin</td><td>= Let us wash ourselves.</td></tr> <tr><td>Ni ne lavu nin</td><td>= Let us not wash ourselves.</td></tr> <tr><td>Lavu vin</td><td>= Wash yourselves.</td></tr> <tr><td>Ne lavu vin</td><td>= Do not wash yourselves.</td></tr> <tr><td>Ili lavu sin</td><td>= Let them wash themselves.</td></tr> <tr><td>Ili ne lavu sin</td><td>= Let them not wash themselves.</td></tr> </table>	Ni lavu nin	= Let us wash ourselves.	Ni ne lavu nin	= Let us not wash ourselves.	Lavu vin	= Wash yourselves.	Ne lavu vin	= Do not wash yourselves.	Ili lavu sin	= Let them wash themselves.	Ili ne lavu sin	= Let them not wash themselves.
Ni lavu nin	= Let us wash ourselves.												
Ni ne lavu nin	= Let us not wash ourselves.												
Lavu vin	= Wash yourselves.												
Ne lavu vin	= Do not wash yourselves.												
Ili lavu sin	= Let them wash themselves.												
Ili ne lavu sin	= Let them not wash themselves.												

MOODS (Modoj).

171. (a). **The moods** in Esperanto differ from those in English. They are three in number, the **Conditional**, **Imperative**, and **Infinitive**. Dr. Zamenhof

makes no mention of any other mood. In Rule 6 (see para. 94) he mentions only the three tenses :—**Present**, ending in *-IS*, **Past**, in *-IS*, **Future**, in *-OS*; the **Conditional (kondiĉa)** mood in *-US*, the **Imperative (ordona)** mood in *-U*, and the **Infinitive (sendifina)** mood in *-I*; the three **Active Participles** :—**Present**, *-ANT*, **Past**, *-INT*, **Future**, *-ONT*, and the three **Passive Participles** :—**Present**, *-AT*, **Past**, *-IT*, **Future**, *-OT*. These twelve forms serve amply to represent all the various tenses and moods in English. However, to make the forms of the verb clearer to the student accustomed to the use of our indicative mood, we have called the tenses *-IS*, *-IS*, *-OS*, by that name.

(b). **There is no Subjunctive mood**, and it is not required. This mood has been defined as one governed by conjunctions, but since conjunctions have no bearing on any mood in Esperanto, it is clear that a mood, under the name of "subjunctive," is not required (see remarks on *ke*, para. 198).

The English Subjunctive in the Present and Perfect, is represented by the Esperanto Imperative, and in the Pluperfect, Future, and Future Perfect, by the Esperanto Conditional mood. The auxiliaries "may" and "might" of the English Subjunctive are often rendered by the aid of such verbs as *permesi*, *pori*, or some word expressing possibility, as *eble* (see para. 237 (*m*)).

172. **The mood** to be used in Esperanto is determined solely by the meaning the speaker wishes to convey, and as Esperanto is a purely logical language, we must be careful not to pedantically copy our own, but use the logical mood and tense required by the ideas we wish to convey. If therefore we translate English literally into Esperanto, we may, in some points, be misunderstood by a foreigner, although our translation might be perfectly clear to an

Englishman. For instance, our verbs in the present and past tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive moods have the same inflection in the first person singular and in the three persons of the plural. In Esperanto there is no such ambiguity. In such a phrase as "If they were rich, they would be happy" we must be careful to use the proper mood. Both the first and second propositions are conditional or suppositive, therefore in Esperanto the Conditional mood is logically employed, as :—**Se ili estus riĉaj, ili estus felicaj** = *If they were rich, they would be happy.* There is nothing of the past in the first proposition, the idea to be conveyed is of something that has not occurred, but which might occur.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD (Sendifina Modo).

173. **The Infinitive mood** in the active voice is formed by adding *-I* to the root of the verb for the simple tense, and by the auxiliary verb **estis** = *to be* with one of the active participles *-ANTA*, *-INTA*, *-ONTA* of the verb for the compound tenses, as :—

Present (simple), **Skribi** = *To write.*

„ (compound), **Esti skribanta** = *To be writing* (lit., *to be being-writing*).

Past (compound), **Esti skribinta** = *To have written* (lit., *to be having-written*).

Future (compound), **Esti skribonta** = *To be about to write* (lit., *to be being-about-to-write*).

174. The passive voice is formed by the verb **estis** and one of the passive participles, *-ATA*, *-ITA*, *-OTA*.

Present, **Esti skribata** = *To be written* (lit., *to be being-written*).

Past, **Esti skribita** = *To have been written* (lit., *to be having-been-written*).

Future, **Esti skribota** = *To be about to be written.*

175. The Infinitive mood expresses the state of action denoted by the verb.

176. In Esperanto the infinitive is almost always used without a preposition, whereas in English the preposition "to" nearly always precedes the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi volas lerni danci*=I wish to learn to dance. *Li derivis min kuri*=He compelled me to run. *Mi hontas esti laŭdata de li*=I am ashamed to be praised by him. *Mi devas peni atingi tiun rezultaton*=I must try to attain that result.

177. The only prepositions that can be used before the infinitive are:—(a). **Por**=To, or, in order to. (b). **Anstataŭ**=Instead of. (c). **Antaŭ ol**=Before.

178. **Por** is used before the infinitive, when in English for the word "to" we could substitute the words "in order to" or "for to"; or, in some cases, when we could use "for" or "of" with a participle instead of the infinitive (para. 259 (24)).

EXAMPLES.—*La plej bonaj metodoj por ricevi gin...*=The best methods to (in order to) obtain it (or, for, or, of obtaining it)... *Mi havas ion por diri al vi*=I have something to (for to) say to you. *Kion vi havas ankoraŭ por skribi?*=What have you still to (for to) write? *La tempo por legi*=The time to read (for reading). *Tio estas malfacila por komprendi*=That is difficult to (for to) understand.

179. **Anstataŭ** and **Antaŭ ol** are used before the infinitive, when in English we use the participle.

EXAMPLES.—*Anstataŭ trinki*=Instead of drinking. *Anstataŭ agi honeste, li fariĝis ŝtelisto*=Instead of acting honestly, he became a thief. *Antaŭ ol manĝi*=Before eating. *Antaŭ ol foriri, ili surmetis la ĉapelojn*=Before going away, they put on their (the) hats.

180. As in English, the infinitive is used:—

(a). **As the subject** when the act demonstrated is general.

EXAMPLES.—*Erari estas home*=To err is human. *Bone pensi kaj bone agi suficias por viri bone kaj feliĉe*=To think well and to act well suffice for living well and happily.

(b). As the complement to explain an idea.

EXAMPLES.—*Viri estas agi*; *kiu ne agas, tiu ne viras*=To live is to act; he who acts not, lives not. *Li ĉesis kuri*=He ceased to run (running, or, from running).

181. The infinitive, used thus as the subject, resembles a noun, but, of course, never takes the article before it. The qualifying word, used as its predicate, takes the adverbial -E. The infinitive, when used as the subject, can always be changed into the noun by substituting -O or -ADO for -I; the noun then takes the article, since it is used in a general sense (see 99 (a)).

EXAMPLES.—*Sci estas utile*=To know (or, to have knowledge) is useful; or, *La scio estas utila*=Knowledge is useful. *Legi estas agrabla okupo*, or, *La legado estas agrabla okupo*=Reading is an agreeable occupation.

182. The infinitive, or its noun, is used for the gerund, or a gerundial phrase in English.

EXAMPLES.—*Promenadi estas sanige*, or, *La promenado estas saniga*=Walking is healthy. *Instrui infanojn diligentajn* (or, *La instruado al infanoj diligentaj*) *estas agrabla okupo*=Teaching diligent children is an agreeable occupation.

183. Occasionally another mood, a participle, or the suffix -EBLA is used for our infinitive (para. 275 (c)).

EXAMPLES.—*Vi bone faris, ke vi venis* (or, *renante*)=You did well to come (that you came). *Diru do al li, ke li al mi respondu*=Tell him, then, to answer me. *Estos pli sage, se ni ne piediroj domen*=It will be wiser not to walk (go on foot) home (lit., if we shall not walk). *Estus malfacile renkonti la sindonemo pli plena, ol lia*=It would be difficult to meet with more complete devotion than his. *Si ŝajnis (estis) forgesinta, ke ŝi estas maljunulino*=She seemed to have forgotten that she was an old woman.

184. Sometimes the infinitive is used when we use another mood or the participle.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi prenos miajn glitilojn kaj iros gliti*=I shall take my skates and go skating. *Mi ĉesos kanti, se vi farados tiom da bruco*=I shall cease singing if you go on making so much noise. *Mi kredis vidis ŝipon*=I thought I saw a ship.

185. In the following examples it will be seen that the infinitive (present or past) is used in Esperanto after a noun, adjective, or participle, when in English a participial form is usually employed, as:—

La deziro morti=The desire of dying (to die). *La ĝojo esti renkinta*=The joy of having conquered. *Tro laca marši*=Too tired for walking. *Lerta paroli*=Clever in speaking. *Bona por manĝi*=Good for eating.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

186. As stated in para. 171 (*a*), the indicative is not an Esperanto mood, but we use the name in order to more clearly explain to the English student the present, past, and future tenses of Esperanto verbs.

The **Indicative mood**, in the **Active Voice**, has three terminations, viz., *-AS*, for the Present, *-IS* for the Past, and *-OS* for the Future simple tenses. For the **Compound tenses** the auxiliary verb *esti*=*to be*, with one of the three Active participles, *-ANTA*, *-INTA*, *-ONTA* of the verb, is used.

187. **The Passive Voice** is formed by the auxiliary *esti* with one of the Passive participles *-ATA*, *-ITA*, *-OTA*.

188. **By the Indicative mood** we express something as actually true, either affirmatively, or negatively, or interrogatively. It is therefore the mood of certainty.

EXAMPLES.—*La patro venas*=Father comes, or, is coming. *Patrino venis*=Mother came, has come, or, did come. *Kiam mia frato venos, ni foriros*=When my brother comes (shall come), we will go away. *Se li estas malsana, mi senkulpigas lin*=If he is ill, I excuse him. *Li estas juste rekompencita*=He had been justly rewarded. *Oni deras pardoni al li*=One must pardon him. *Li estas amata de ĉiuj*=He was (being) loved by all. *Mi estas vestita de du horoj*=I have been dressed for two hours (lit., I am having-been-dressed from two hours).

189. **The Indicative** is therefore obligatory in Esperanto after verbs, adjectives, participles, and nouns expressing in a positive manner what one thinks or feels about an act presented as certain.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi esperas, ke li renos hodiaŭ*=I hope that he will come to-day. *Si ne estas certa, ĉu Petro sukcesis*=She is not sure whether Peter succeeded (or, has succeeded). *Mi ne dubas, ke li venos*=I do not doubt that he will come. *Mi timas, ke la resundo alrenos, dum mi estos promenanta*=I fear that the answer will arrive whilst I am (shall be) taking a walk. *Mi timas, ke li renos, kaj ĝi difektos la ĝardenon.* I fear that he will come, and possibly (perhaps) damage (or, and may damage) the garden. *Mi ne dubas, ke ŝi estos restita kiam mi alvenos*=I do not doubt that she will be (will have been) dressed when I arrive. *Ĉu ri opinias, ke li estas juste rekompencita?*=Do you think that he has been justly rewarded?

THE CONDITIONAL MOOD (Kondiĉa Modo).

190. In the Active Voice the Conditional mood is formed by adding *-US* to the root of the verb for the simple form, and by *ESTUS* and one of the participles *-ANTA*, *-INTA*, *-ONTA* for the compound forms. These compound forms are not often used.

191. In the Passive Voice it is formed by *ESTUS* and one of the participles *-ATA*, *-ITA*, *-OTA*.

192. It shows that the matter spoken of is conditional, namely, that it depends on supposition; that an act had not taken place (past), and was not taking place (present), but that it might happen if something else actually occurred. In English the pluperfect, future, and future perfect tenses of the subjunctive mood represent the Conditional mood in Esperanto.

193. After the conjunction "if," expressing a supposition, both the chief and dependent propositions are in the Conditional mood in Esperanto, when the act is conditional.

EXAMPLES. —*Se li estus riĉa, li harus multajn amikojn*=If he were rich, he would have many friends. *Se ri volus, vi estus felicea*=If you wished, you would be happy. *Se ni estus avertitaj, ni estus defendintaj vin*=If we had been (should have been) warned, we should have defended you. *Se li forirus, li riskus, ke la patrino ne trorus lin*=If he went (should go) away he would risk that his (the) mother would not find him.

193. (a). Note the various ways in which **estus** may be translated with the present and past passive participles in the following two sentences:—

(1). *Se li estus sendata Berlinon, li estus derivata lasi sian edzinon hejme.*

(2). *Se li estus sendita Berlinon, li estus derivita lasi sian edzinon hejme.*

(1). If he | were | should be | sent to Berlin | he | would be | compelled to leave his wife at home.

(2). If he | had | should have | been sent to Berlin | he | would have | been compelled to leave his wife at home.

194. As in other languages, the conditional is used in Esperanto to attenuate or soften an expression that would be harsh or imperative, if the verb were in the indicative; in fact, such attenuation implies some unexpressed condition.

EXAMPLE. —*Mi volus, ke tiu laboro estu finita hodiaŭ respere*=I should like that work (to be) finished this evening. Here the condition might be, “if you possibly can do it,” (see para. 202 as to *estu*, Imperative mood, for the Infinitive).

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD (Ordona Modo).

195. In the Active Voice the Imperative (or “U”) mood is formed by adding *-U* to the root of the verb, and by **estu** and one of the participles **-ANTA**, **-INTA**, or **-ONTA** for the compound forms; but the latter are very rarely used.

196. **In the Passive Voice** it is formed by **estu** and one of the participles **-ATA**, **-ITA**, or **-OTA**.

197. **The Imperative mood implies** order (**ordono**), purpose (**celo**), entreaty (**peto**), wish (**volo**), obligation (**devo**), fitness (**konveno**), necessity (**neceso**), merit (**merito**), intention (**intenco**), etc.

198. **The Imperative is used** not only in a chief but also in a dependent proposition, and in the latter case it is usually introduced by the conjunction **ke=that**; but it must be borne in mind that conjunctions have no more influence in the Imperative than they have in other moods (paras. 171, 263), although when **ke** is followed by the imperative we translate the phrase into English either by some tense of the subjunctive mood, or, perhaps, more frequently, by the infinitive.

199. **In a chief proposition** it is used to command or entreat, and when the verb of a chief proposition is in the Imperative, the verb of the dependent proposition is also in that mood.

EXAMPLES. — *Venu tien ēi*=Come here. *Donu al mi tiun libron*=Give me that book. *Li venu tien ēi tuj*=Let him come here at once. *Ni iru Parizon morgaū*=Let us go to Paris to-morrow. *Do ne maltrankviligu rin* (or, *Vi do ne maltrankviligu*) *pri la afero*=Do not then trouble yourself about the matter. *Ordonu, ke li venu*=Order him to come (that he come). *Diru al ūi, ke ūi foriru*=Tell her to go away (that she go away). *Atentu, ke ūi ne falu*=Take care not to fall (or, lest you fall). *Ni ne tolérū, ke li tiamaniere kontraūstaru al ni*=Let us not suffer him in that way to oppose us (or, Let us not tolerate that he oppose us in that manner). *Ni zorgu, ke li nenion poru difekti*=Let us take care that he can damage nothing. *Diru al li, ke mi deziras, ke li estu silenta*=Tell him that I desire him to be silent (that he be silent). For other examples see para. 237 (m).

200. **In a dependent proposition** the Imperative is also used when the verb in the chief proposition,

¶ 200—201. VERBS (MOODS).

although not in the Imperative, implies order, entreaty, wish, etc., as mentioned in para. 197. And also after such verbs as, to advise, invite, write, etc., etc., when the idea to be conveyed is in the nature of an order, wish, etc. (paras. 58 (a), 237 (m) (3)).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ordonis al li, ke li donu al mi la libron*=I ordered him to give me the book. *Mi petas, ke vi sendu al mi la hundon*=I beg you to send me the dog. *Li ne postulis, ke mi fermu la fenestron*=He did not require me to shut the window. *Mi volas, ke vi skribu al via frato*=I wish you to write to your brother. *Estas necese, ke ni tien iru*=It is necessary that we go thither. *Vi meritas, ke oni pendigurin*=You deserve to be hanged (that they hang you). *Mi bezonas, ke li venu*=I want him to come (I have need that he come). *Mi ne volis, ke li venu*=I did not wish him to come (that he should come). *Si konsilis, ke mi ne sendu la leteron*=She advised me not to send the letter (she advised “do not send the letter”). *Mi lin tien ci inritis, ke li klarigu la aferon*=I invited him here to explain (that he might explain) the matter. *Ili skribis, ke mi ne venu hodiaū*=They wrote to me not to come to-day (They wrote that I should not come to-day, or, They wrote “do not come to-day”).

201. The expression **por ke**=*in order that, to the end that, so that, etc.*, always is followed by the imperative, because this expression implies “order.”

EXAMPLES.—*Por ke vi poru pagi tiun ci šuldon, estas necese, ke vi kunportu sufice grandan sumon da mono*=In order to be able to pay (in order that you may be able to pay) this debt it is necessary for you to bring (that you bring) a sufficiently large sum of money. *Por ke vi estu elektita, vi bezonas batali kun ekstrema energio*=In order to be elected (that you may have been elected), you need to fight with extreme energy. *Por ke oni rekompencu vin, konvenas, ke vi tion meritu*=In order that they may reward you, it is fitting that you merit it. *Mi volas ĉion fari, por ke vi estu kontenta je mi*=I wish to do everything to satisfy you (so that you may be satisfied with me). *Respondu al mi antau morgaū, por ke mi sciū, kion mi deros diri al li*=Answer me before to-morrow, so that I may know what I must (shall have to) say to him. *Mi volas, ke li estu ordonata atendi mian alvenon*=I wish that he may be ordered to await my arrival, or, I wish him to be ordered to await my arrival.

201. (a). **The compound forms** of the imperative in the active voice are very rarely used, but it is possible they may be occasionally required to give exactitude to an expression.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi deziras, ke li estu min atendanta en la stacidomo je la duia horo morgaŭ posttagmeze*=I desire that he be awaiting me in the station at 2 o'clock to-morrow afternoon. *Estas necese, ke li estu fininta sian laboron, je la tria horo*=It is necessary that he have finished his work at 3 o'clock. *Mi ne volas, ke li estu fininta sian laboron, kiam mi alvenos, sed ke li estu finonta ĝin*=I do not wish that he shall have finished his work when I (shall) come, but that he be about to finish it.

202. From the examples given of the use of the Imperative mood, we see that in Esperanto the verb in a dependent proposition is almost always preceded by the conjunction **ke**=that, and that the English rendering generally puts the verb in the infinitive, the conjunction being omitted, or if it be retained, that the verb is in the subjunctive mood. It is not generally advisable to translate this infinitive rendering literally into Esperanto, except when the *actor* of the first verb is also the *actor* of the second.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi volas lin ridi morgaŭ*=I wish to see him to-morrow. *La lernejestro deziris rekompenci la knabon*=The schoolmaster desired to reward the boy. *Ni bezonas forte labori, se ni deziras fini la falĉadon hodiaŭ respere*=We shall need to work hard if we wish to finish the mowing this evening.

THE PARTICIPLES (Participoj).

There are three forms of the participle, viz.:—The changeable or *adjectival* in *-A*, the unchangeable or *adverbial* in *-E*, and the substantival in *-O*.

203. In the active voice the *adjectival* is formed by adding *-ANTA*, *-INTA*, *-ONTA* to the root of the verb, as:—

Present, **Skribanta**=*Writing* (lit., *being writing*).

Past, **Skribinta**=*Haring written*.

Future, **Skribonta**=*About to write*. *

¶ 204—209. VERBS (PARTICIPLES).

204. In the **passive voice** by adding *-ATA*, *-ITA*, *-OTA*, as :—

Present, **Skribata** = *Written*, or, *being written*.

Past, **Skribita** = *Been written*, or, *having been written*.

Future, **Skribota** = *About (or, going) to be written*.

205. The **active participles**, preceded by the auxiliary verb **esti** = *to be*, in its various moods and tenses, form the **compound** tenses of the active voice.

206. The **passive participles**, with the verb **esti**, form all the moods and tenses in the passive voice.

207. **Participles**, like adjectives, agree in number and case with the nouns or pronouns to which they refer.

EXAMPLES.—*Ni estas vidintaj la viron* = We have seen the man.
Si vidis la virojn batantajn sian edzon = She saw the men beating her husband.
Ni vidas krimojn elfaratajn ĉiutage sur la stratoj = We see crimes being perpetrated daily in the streets.

208. All the **participles** can be used as adjectives, and also as nouns and adverbs, by substituting *-O* for *-A* for a noun, and *-E* for *-A* for an adverb. The words still retain the signification of the tense of the participle. Participles and participial adverbs in the active voice govern the accusative.

209. Examples in the active voice.

(a). **Participial nouns**, as :—**La leganto** = *The reader (person now reading)*. **La leginto** = *The reader (person who has been reading)*. **La legonto** = *The reader (person about to read)*.

EXAMPLES.—*La leganto haras bonan vocon, sed la leginto haris pli bonan; mi kredas, tamen, ke la legonto haros la plej bonan vocon el ĉiuj* = The (present) reader has a good voice, but the (previous) reader had a better; I believe, however, that the (coming) reader will have the best voice of all.
Tiu ĉi ideo okupis la grandan pensanton ĝis la fino de lia vivo = This idea occupied the great thinker up to the end of his life.

(b). **Participial adjectives** agree with their nouns in number and case, but in number only when **predicative** (see remarks on adjectives, paras. 36, 108, 110, also para. 87 (d)).

EXAMPLES.—*La mortanta homo vidis mortintan virinon sur la apuda lito*=The dying man saw a dead woman in the next bed. *Si paligis kaj ŝajnis kiel virino mortonta*=She grew pale and appeared like a woman about to die. In the above sentences participial nouns might be used, when the translation in English would be word for word the same, as:—*La mortantulo vidis mortintinon sur la apuda lito*. *Si paligis, kaj ŝajnis kiel mortontino*. This shows the wonderful flexibility of Esperanto!

(c). **Participial adverbs** are invariable.

EXAMPLES.—*Legante ni lernas*=In reading we learn. *Fininte sian laboron, li iris domen*=Having finished his work, he went home. *Aĉetonte librojn, li petas, ke mi pruutu al li tri ŝilingojn*=Being about to buy a book, he begs me to lend him (that I lend him) three shillings.

210. Examples in the passive voice.

(a). **Participial nouns**, as:—**La dirato**=*The person being spoken of, or, the person in question.* **La dirito**=*The aforesaid (person).* **La diroto**=*The person about to be spoken of.*

EXAMPLES.—*La pendigotino nun aperis sur la eſafodo*=The woman about to be hanged now appeared on the scaffold. *La batito tute meritis la punon, kiun la batinto donis al li*=The beaten one quite deserved the punishment that the beater gave him.

(b). **Participial adjectives and adverbs.** **La konstruata domo**=*The house under construction.* **La konstruita domo**=*The (actually) constructed house.* **La konstruota domo**=*The house (about) to be constructed.* **Konstruota** does not show obligation to construct, but simply that it is intended to build the house, and that it will be eventually built.

¶ 210—212. VERBS (PARTICIPLES).

EXAMPLES.—*Li renis al mi tute ne atendite*=He came to me quite unexpectedly. *Ne estas atendate ke li venos*=It is not expected (being expected) that he will come. *La domo estas rendota morgaŭ*=The house is to be sold to-morrow.

N.B.—Note that when the subject is not expressed, the participle takes the adverbial form (see para. 245).

211. Relation of the participle to the subject.

—(a). When a participle, relating to the subject of a sentence, but not qualifying it, expresses the circumstances, manner, time, occasion, etc., of an act, it takes the adverbial form.

EXAMPLES.—*Promenante sur la strato, mi salis*=(While) walking in the street, I fell. *Trorinte pomon, mi ĝiu manjis*=Having found an apple, I ate it (see para. 245 (a)).

(b). If, however, the participle does *not* relate to the *subject* of the sentence, we must either change the construction so as to make the participial portion of the sentence relate to the subject, or use another mood with a conjunction, adverb, etc.

For instance, we can say in English, “The enemy having run away, we crossed the bridge,” but we cannot translate this literally into Esperanto, because “having run away” does not relate to those who crossed the bridge; therefore it would be wrong to say *La malamikoj forkurinte, ni transiris la ponton*. So we must change the construction as “Having put to flight (made to run away) the enemy, we crossed the bridge”= *Forkuriginte la malamikojn, ni transiris la ponton*. Or, the best construction would be:—“After the enemy ran away, we crossed the bridge”= *Post kiam la malamikoj forkuris, ni transiris la ponton*. In the sentence “Swimming in the lake, the man saw a large swan” it is not clear whether the man or the swan was swimming, but in Esperanto there is no ambiguity. *Najante sur la lago, la homo vidis grandan cignon*. Here the participle, *najante*, relates to the man, the subject of *vidis*. If we wish it to relate to the swan, we make it agree with *cignon*, and say, *Najantan sur la lago, etc.* But it would be better to alter the order, *La homo vidis grandan cignon najantan sur la lago*.

212. Participial expressions with prepositions.

(a). **Without** can be rendered by the negative **ne** and an adverbial participle.

EXAMPLES.—*Li avenis, ne avertinte min* = He arrived without (not) having warned me. *Mi ne povas tion ĉi fari, ne estante subtenata* = I shall not be able to do this without (not) being supported. *Ni iru al la dangero, ne timante la morton* = Let us go to (the) danger without (not) fearing death.

(b). **For** can be rendered by **ke** = *that* (or, **pro** **tio**, **ke**) and the indicative.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi estas al vi danka, ke vi avertis min* = I am thankful to you for having (that you) warned me. *Pardonu al mi, ke mi tiel faras* = Pardon me for so doing. *Pardonu al mi pro tio, ke mi tiel faris* = Pardon me for having done so (that I so did).

(c). **Of**, by **por** and the infinitive.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi pripensis priimedo por deturni lin de lia projekto* = I reflected on a means of turning him from his project.

(d). **After**, by an adverbial past participle.

EXAMPLE.—“*Kion ni faros?*” *Li diris, sileante momenton silente* = “What shall we do?” he said, after sitting (having sat) for a moment in silence.

(e). **Before**, by **antaŭ** **al** and the infinitive.

EXAMPLE.—*Li ludis antaŭ al labori* = He played before working.

213. The participle for the adjective.

(a). Be careful not to use the participle terminations **-ANTA**, **-INTA** for simple adjectives that have a form of their own. Some English words, ending in “ing” and “ed,” are both participles and simple adjectives, the same word being used for both, but of course with different meanings, for the participle denotes action of some kind, whilst the adjective denotes quality, state, etc.

(b). Most of such words have, in Esperanto, an adjectival as well as a participial form, and we must be careful to use the right one in accordance with the sense.

EXAMPLES.—*Laboranta* and *laboro* = Working. *Carmenta* and *charma* = Charming. *Interestanta* and *interesa* = Interesting. *Sufokanta* and *sufiko* = Suffocating. *Kontentigita* and *kontenta* = Satisfied; pleased, content.

(c). Observe the difference in meaning of the following :—

Rigardu tiun homon, laborantan sur la kampo! = Look at that man, working in the field! *Rigardu tiun homon laboran* (better, *tiun laboriston*) *sur la kampo!* = Look at that working man in the field! In the first sentence *laborantan*, the participle, denotes the action of the man; in the second, *laborau*, the adjective, denotes his state, condition, etc. *Si estas ĉarmanta nin per sia kantado* = She is charming us with her singing. *Si estas ĉarma, kiama si kantas* = She is charming when she sings. It would be better, instead of using the participle *ĉarmanta*, to say, *Si ĉarmas nin per sia kantado*. *Mi ne estas kontentigita per linj respondoj* = I have not been satisfied with his replies. *Mi ne estas kontenta je li* = I am not pleased with him. *Mi vidis lin interesantan sian infanon per interesa rakonto* = I saw him interesting his child with an interesting story.

THE TENSES (La Tempoj).

The Tenses, Active Voice.

214. **The Tenses** indicate the time of action, and its state of completeness or incompleteness. They are either simple or compound. The simple tenses are formed by adding *-AS*, *-IS* or *-OS* to the root of the verb, and the terminations remain the same for all persons and numbers. The compound tenses are formed by the auxiliary verb **est*i*** = *to be*, and one of the participles of the verb which must agree in number with its subject. **Est*i*** is conjugated in exactly the same way as all other verbs.

215. **The three Tenses** used in Esperanto are the Present, Past, and Future. The Past tense represents also the tenses we call "imperfect," "perfect," and "pluperfect."

216. **Duration of action of the verb.**—(a). In English, to express the continuance of an action, the present participle of a transitive verb is used after the verb "to be" in all the moods and tenses—as "I am loving," or "I was (have been, shall be, should be) loving"; imperative, "Be thou loving." These

forms can be represented in Esperanto word for word as they are in English, if great exactness of time be necessary, viz., by the compound forms, **mi estas (estis, estos, estus) amanta**, or, **estu amanta**.

(a). To show that an action is continuous or habitual, the suffix **-AD-** may be added to the verb (see remarks on suffix **-AD-**, para. 270 (1)).

EXAMPLES.—*Si kantadas la tutan tagon*=She keeps on singing the whole day. *La birdoj flugadis de arbo al arbo*=The birds were (kept on) flying from tree to tree.

(b). The commencement of an action, or a sudden action, is shown by adding the prefix **EK-**.

EXAMPLES.—*Si ekkantis*=She began to sing. *La lumo brilis*=The light shone. *La lumo ekbriilis*=The light flashed (see remarks on prefix **EK-**, para. 288).

217. Emphatic form of verb.—In English this form consists of the verb, preceded by “do” or “did,” and is confined to the present and past tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, and the imperative mood of the active voice, as:—“I do love,” “He does love,” “I did love,” “Do love.” This form in Esperanto can be represented by the adverb **Ja** = *indeed*.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ja lin amas*=I do love him. *Mi ja tiel amis ĝin*=I did so love her.

The Present.

218. The Present tense (simple) ends in **-AS**. It is used not only to express what is happening at the moment, but what happens in all time, or what is understood to be present.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi kuras*=I run, or am running. *La vero ĉiam venkas*=Truth always conquers. *La aŭtoro diras en sia verko, ke...*=The author says in his book that... *Kiun vi vidas?*=Whom do you see? *Mi vidas nenion*=I see nobody. *Mi foriras, ĉar mia patro min atendas*=I am going away, for my father awaits (or expects) me. *Mi ĉiam lerigadas tre frue*=I always get up (rise) very early. *Nenion oni faras sen peno*=One does nothing without trouble.

219. The Present in place of the Past or Future.—In Esperanto, as in other languages, the Present is often used for the Past or Future, to give vividness to an expression.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi haltis, perdante la spiron, kiam subite, mi aŭlas post mi roçon*=I stopped, losing breath, when suddenly I heard (hear) behind me a voice. *Hodiaŭ plenaj je viro, ni estas morgaŭ la akiro de la tombo*=To-day full of life, to-morrow we shall be (are) the prey (acquirement) of the tomb.

220. Esperanto logically always employs the Present, even in a phrase relating to what has past, if the action is present relatively to the time in question.

EXAMPLE.—*Ĉiuj, kinj ĝin vidis poris pensi, ke ili vidas la patrinon*=All who saw her could think that they saw (see) her (the) mother. In this sentence, what did they think? Their thought was, "We see her mother," not "We saw her mother." The sight was present to them, hence *ili vidas*.

221. Present in place of the Past.—If it is a question of the truth of all time, or of a fact existing at the moment of speaking, we generally use the Past tense, but in Esperanto the Present is always employed.

EXAMPLES.—*Ni eksciis, ke vi estas en Londono ok tagojn*=We learnt that you were (are) in London for eight days. *Ni kredis, ke vi estas kuracisto*=We believed that you were (are) a doctor. *Li instruis nin, ke ĉiam oni deras esti indulga*=He taught us that one must always be forbearing (merciful).

222. The Present tense (compound) is formed by the auxiliary **esti**=*to be* and one of the three participles, **-ANTA**, **-INTA**, **-ONTA**. The compound tenses are seldom used in Esperanto, and their use is to be avoided if the simple tenses sufficiently make clear the meaning we wish to convey. Their use, therefore, is confined to giving exactitude to the time of an action or to an idea (see para. 169).

EXAMPLES.—*Li estas vojuĝanta*=He is travelling. The simple form, *Li vojaĝas*, might mean that he is travelling generally, but possibly not at this moment on his way to any place. If, therefore, we wish to convey that he is actually on his way to some place, we use the compound form. *Kiam la abeloj estas forfugontaj, ili zumadas forte*=When bees are about to fly away, they (are accustomed to) hum loudly (strongly) (see para. 216 (a)). *Esti skribanta*=To be writing.

The Past.

223. The Past tense (simple) ends in *-IS*. It expresses something that has passed. It is used for the three tenses in English; the past, imperfect, and perfect; and sometimes for the pluperfect, if its use does not cause ambiguity.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi skribis*=I wrote, I was writing, or, I have written. *Li venis antaŭ du horoj*=He came two hours ago. *Pluris hieraŭ*=It rained yesterday. *Se li estis malsana, li ne povis reni*=If he was ill, he could not come. *Cu vi lin vidis?* Did you see (or, have you seen) him? *Li foriris, antaŭ ol mi alvenis*=He had left before I arrived. *Mi promenis hieraŭ, kaj renkontis vian amikon*=I took a walk (or, I was walking, better *promenadis*) yesterday, and met your friend.

224. The Past tense (compound) is formed by the auxiliary verb *esti*=to be and one of the three participles, *-ANTA*, *-INTA*, *-ONTA*. This form should not be used when the simple form suffices to convey the required meaning. It is therefore employed only when we wish to give more exactitude to an expression than the simple form conveys, as regards the state of the subject at the time of the principal action (see paras. 169, 226 (a)).

EXAMPLES.—*Kiam li estis fininta sian laboron, li iris hejmen*=When he had finished his work, he went home. *Mi estis skribanta leteron, kiam okazis tertremo*=I was writing a letter when an earthquake took place. *Ili interkonsentis kaj estis enirontaj la landon, sed io okazis, kio ilin malhelpis*=They mutually agreed, and were about to enter the country, but something happened which prevented them.

225. To show that something has just happened, or is very soon going to happen, the word **jus** = *just*, or **tuj** = *immediately*, is often used.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi jus vidis tre belan pentrajon* = I have just seen a very beautiful picture. *Ni estis tuj elironoj, kiam ekploris* = We were on the point of (or, just) going out when it began to rain.

226. The past tense of **esti** (**estis**) and the past participle (-INTA) of the verb correspond with the pluperfect in English. It denotes an action that was completed at a time now past. As before stated, it need not be employed when the simple past tense in -IS sufficiently expresses the meaning wished to be conveyed.

EXAMPLES.—*Kiam si estis rakontinta ĉion, kio okazis, si ekploris* = When she had related everything that happened, she began to weep. Here, in English, we should probably say “everything that *had* happened,” but “*ĉion, kio estis okazinta*” is unnecessary in Esperanto, as the meaning is quite clear with “*okazis*.
Li ne estis parolinta du sekundojn, kiam mi diris al li “Silentu!” = He had not spoken for two seconds when I said to him, “Be silent!”

226 (a). The adverb **antaŭe** — *beforehand* (or, **jam antaŭe**) is sometimes used with the past and future simple tenses, or with the simple forms of the Conditional or Imperative mood, instead of the compound tenses or forms (see Part III., Exercise 8).

EXAMPLES.—*Kiam vi eniris en la ĉambro, la gasto jam antaŭe foriris* (or, *estis foririntaj*) = When you entered the room, the guests had departed (lit., already beforehand departed). *Kiam vi venos al mi, mi jam antaŭe finos* (or, *estos fininta*) *la laboron* = When you have (will) come to me, I shall have finished the work. *Li ne aĉetus la libron, se vi antaŭe ne donus* (or, *estus doninta*) *al li la monon* = He would not have bought the book unless you had given him the money (lit., if you beforehand should not give him the money).

The Future.

227. **The Future (simple)** ends in -OS. The future (compound) is formed by the auxiliary **esti** and one of the three participles, -ANTA, -INTA,

-ONTA, but the compound form should be used only when we wish to express anteriority, that is to say, action taking place previous to that of the principal action.

228. The future denotes an action yet to take place.

EXAMPLES.—*Li patro venos post du tagoj*=Father will come in two days. *Cu ri pruntos al mi la libron?*=Will you lend me the book? *Kiam li alvenos?*=When will he arrive? *Li venos la lundon proksiman*=He will come next Monday.

229. If we wish to mark a near future, we can use with the verb the adverbs **tuj**=immediately, **baldaŭ**=soon, **tre baldaŭ**=very soon.

EXAMPLES.—*Li tuj alvenos*=He will arrive immediately. *Li tre baldaŭ estos tie ĉi*=He will very soon be here.

230. **The future compound** with the **present** participle is used when we wish to mark that an action will be *going on* at some particular time in the future.

EXAMPLE.—*Je la deka horo morgaŭ matene, mi estos returanta Parizon*=At 10 o'clock to-morrow morning I shall be travelling to Paris.

231. **The future compound** with the **past** participle is used when we wish to mark that an action will be *finished* at some particular time in the future (see para. 226 (a)).

EXAMPLE.—*Mi estos fininta mian laboron je la sesa horo morgaŭ respere*=I shall have finished my work at six o'clock to-morrow evening.

232. **The future for the present indicative or subjunctive.**—Be careful not to imitate English in using the indicative or subjunctive for the future.

EXAMPLES.—*Se pluрос, li ne venos*=If it rain, he will not come. *Kion ri faros, kiam mi estos en la tombo?*=What will you do when I am in the grave? *Mi skribos la leteron dum ri riposo*=I shall write the letter whilst you are resting. *Si skribis al ni, ke si estos tie ĉi morgaŭ*=She wrote to us that she would (will) be here to-morrow (she wrote what? not "that she would," but "that she will," so the future is the correct tense).

The Tenses, Passive Voice.

233. The tenses of the passive voice are formed by the simple tenses of the auxiliary verb **esti** and the passive participles **-ATA**, **-ITA**, **-OTA**. All the tenses are therefore compound. As with the active participles, **J** is added to the three persons of the plural in all the tenses.

234. The signification of the tenses is the same as in the active voice, except, of course, that the subject of a passive verb is acted upon. Since **esti** is the only auxiliary verb used in Esperanto, it represents the two English auxiliaries, "to be" and "to have"; we must, therefore, translate it accordingly.

235. Care must be taken in the use of these participles. For instance, the participles of **skribi** = *to write* used alone mean—

Present, **Skribata** = *Written*, or, *being written* (action going on).

Past, **Skribita** = *Written*, or, *been written* (action completed) (lit., *having been written*).

Future, **Skribota** = *About to be*, or, *going to be*, *written* (action about to occur).

236. The various tenses of the verb **esti** show the *time* of the action, and the three participles the *state* of the subject at that time. Note carefully the various shades of meaning in the following examples:—

La pordego estas fermata, ĉar la ludo estas ludata = The gate is being shut, for the game is about to be played.

La pordego estas fermita, ĉar la ludo estas ludata = The gate is (or, has been) shut, for the game is being played.

La pordego estis fermata, dum la ludo estis ludata = The gate was (or, had been) shut whilst the game was being played.

Kiam estos pendigata la homo? = When will the man be (being) hanged?

Li estas pendigata morgaŭ, sed oni diras, ke li ne estos pendigata ĝis mardo = He was to have been (was about to be)

hanged to-morrow, but they say he will not be hanged till Tuesday.

Kaj kiam li estos pendigita, kie li estos enterigota? = And when he is (has been) hanged, where is he to be buried? (lit., and when he shall have been hanged, where will he be about to be buried?). Note that after the interrogative *kiam* the English present tenso is future in Esperanto, as:—*Kiam li renos* = When is he coming? or, When will he come?

Pasero estas kaprita kaj enmetita en kafon, sed kiam la pordeto de la kajo estas malfermata, gi forflugis = A sparrow was (or, had been) caught and put into a cage, but when the door of the cage was being opened it flew away.

N.B.—In the above sentence we see that the sparrow *was* (*estis*) first in the state of *having been caught* (*kaprita*) ; then in the state of *having been put* (*enmetita*) into a cage ; then that the door was in the state of *being opened* (*malfermata*), and that during this action the bird *flew away* (*forflugis*).

(For examples of the passive conditional mood see para. 193).

(For examples of the rare use of the passive imperative mood see para. 201).

THE USE OF CERTAIN VERBS.

Devi.

237. (a). **Devi** = *to be obliged to, to have to*, means to be physically or morally obliged to do something, as:—*Vi devas tion fari* = You must (have to, are to) do that. If, however, the action is not immediate, the future tense is used for "must," as:—*Vi devos tion fari morgaū* = You must (will have to) do that to-morrow. In its Conditional form **devi** may be used, like other verbs, to soften an expression, and then it can be translated by "ought," as:—*Vi ne devus tion fari* = You ought not to (should not) do that. Here **devus** is used instead of the more peremptory form, **devas**; *Vi ne devas tion fari* would mean You must not (are not to) do that (see para. 194, also paras. 237 (o), (p), on "should," "must," "ought").

EXAMPLES.—*Mi devas rin forlasi, ĉar oni atendas min* = I must (have to) leave you, for they are waiting for me. *Cu mi devas fari tion tuj?* = Must I (am I to) do that at once?

Cu mi deros veni morgaŭ? = Must I (shall I have to, am I to) come to-morrow? *Mi deris skribi leteron* = I had (have had) to write a letter. *Li deris min ridi hodiaŭ, sed li ne poras veni* = He was to see me to-day, but he cannot come. *Ili deris ridi min hieraŭ, sed ili ne poris veni* = They were to have seen me yesterday, but they could not come. *Li estis kolera hieraŭ, ĉar li deris iri lernejon* = He was angry yesterday, because he was obliged to (had to) go to school. *Sed por tio ĝi mi deros atendi iom da tempo* = But for this I shall have to (I must) wait some time. *Se mi lin ridus, mi derus paroli kun li* = If I saw him, I should have to speak to him. *Se mi lin ridus, mi estus derinta paroli kun li* = If I had seen (saw) him, I should have been obliged (have had) to speak to him. *La celo de ĉiu estas, aŭ derus esti, bonfaradi* = The aim of everyone is, or ought to (should) be, to do good. *Li derus kolekti kaj aranĝi sinjn faktojn* = He ought to (should) collect and arrange his facts. *Tiaj insektoj ne devas naskigi en la mondon* = Such insects ought not to be born into the world. *Kiam vi estas tie, vi derus vidi la kastelon* = When you are there, you ought to see the castle. *Kiam vi estis tie, vi derus vidi* (or, *vi estus derinta vidi*) *la kastelon* = When you were there, you ought to have seen the castle. *Mi ne devus ŝin tute aŭskulti* = I ought not to listen to her at all.

From these examples we see that the following is the meaning of **devi** in its moods and tenses. The compound forms should not be used unless absolutely necessary to render the meaning clear.

Present.

Vi devas (paroli) = You must, have to, are to (speak).

Past.

Mi deris (paroli) = I had to, have had to (speak); or, I was to (speak, or, have spoken).

Mi estas devinta (paroli) = I have been obliged to (speak).

Mi estis devinta (paroli) = I had been obliged to (speak).

Future.

Mi deros (paroli) = I shall have to, I am to, I must (speak).

Conditional.

Mi devus (paroli), se .. = I should have to, or, be obliged to (speak), if....

Mi devus (estu parolinta), or, Mi estus devinta (paroli), se ... = I should have had to, or, have been obliged to (speak), if....

Conditional (softened sense).

Vi derus (*vidi*)=You ought to, or, you should (see, or, have seen).

Vi derus (*esti vidinta*), or, *Vi estus derinta* (*ridi*)=You ought to have, or, you should have (seen).

N.B.—Do not use *deri* for "were to," when no obligation is implied. Note the difference in meaning in the following sentences:—*Se ili venus, mi vidus ilin*=If they were to come (if they came), I would see them. *Ili deris veni la lastan semajnon, sed io malhelpis ilin*=They were to (have) come last week, but something prevented them.

Also do not use *deri* for "am to," "was to," etc., when these words do not express "obligation," but "purpose" or "intention." For instance, "Are you to speak at the meeting?" may mean either (1) "Do you intend to (Shall you) speak?" or, (2) "Have you to (Must you) speak?" So we translate (1) *Cu ri intencas paroli* (*Cu ri parolos*) *ĉe la kunveno?* or, (2) *Cu vi deros paroli ĉe la kunreno?* In such a phrase as "You are to do that" the obligation is clear, so we say *Vi deras tion fari*.

Kuši.

237. (b). **Kuši**=to lie, to be situated, is sometimes used to denote anything in a state of rest, or in a recumbent position. It has, therefore, also the meaning of "to be."

EXAMPLES.—*La krajono kuſas sur la libro*=The pencil lies (is) on the book. *La libroj kuſas sur la breto*=The books are (lie) on the shelf.

Koni and Scii.

237. (c). **Koni** and **scii** are used in the same sense as the French verbs *connaitre* and *savoir*.

Koni means to know, to be acquainted with, to know a person, or, thing.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi konas vian fraton*=I know your brother. *Li konas la hundon, sed li ne konas gian posedanton*=He knows the dog, but he does not know its owner.

N.B.—It is never followed by the conjunction *KE*; *mi konas, ke*, is wrong. *Mi scias, ke vi ..*=I know that you...

Scii means to know, to be aware of, to know something is or was happening etc.

N.B.—It is never used of persons.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi scens, ke li estas prava*=I know that he is right. *Mi scis, ke li estis tie hirraŭ*=I knew he was there yesterday. *Mi ne scis, ke vi konas lin*=I did not know that you knew him. *Unu afiron ni scias, ke ni konas nencion*=One thing we know, that we know nothing.

Lasi.

237. (*d*). **Lasi**, like the English verb “to leave,” has various meanings.

- (1). To let remain, as :—*Li lasis la libron sur la tablo*=He left the book on the table.
- (2). To leave in a place, not to take with one, as :—*Li lasis sian edzinon en la domo*=He left his wife in the house. *Lasu vian bastonon tie ĉi*=Leave your stick here.
- (3). To lose restraint upon something, as :—*Li lasis fadi la libron*=He let the book fall.
- (4). To leave in a certain state, as :—*Li lasis min en la pli granda embarsa*=He left me in the greatest embarrassment. *Li lasis la domon tre malpure*=He left the house very dirty.
- (5). To leave to the care of someone, as :—*La juĝisto lasis la infanojn al la patro*=The judge left the children to the father.
- (6). To have remaining at death, to leave behind one, as :—*Kiam li mortis, li lasis (or, postlasis) grandan riĉaĵon, kiun li testamantis al diversaj bonfaradaj institucioj*=When he died, he left great wealth, which he left to various charitable institutions (note that to “leave,” “bequeath,” is *testamantis*).
- (7). *Lasi*, followed by the preposition *en*, means to “leave in,” or to “let into,” according as the complement is in the nominative or accusative, e.g.:—*Mi lasis la hundon en la domo*=I left the dog in the house. *Mi lasis la hundon on la domon*=I let the dog into the house.
- (8). In the “Krestomatio,” page 25, it is used in the sense to “leave off,” “cease,” as :—*Aleksandro lasis sian paroladon pri batalo kaj petis de ili panon*=Alexander left off talking of battle, and asked them for bread.
- (9). *Lasi*, followed by an infinitive, means to “let,” or, “allow,” as :—*Lasu al mi giri fari*=Let me do it, or, Leave it to me to do. In the “Krestomatio,” page 23, we find it used in the sense “allow to be,” as :—*Neniu volis lasi rimarki, ke li nenion vidas*=No one wished to let it be noticed that he saw (sees) nothing.
- (10). *Allasi*=to admit (own the truth), as :—*Li allasis, ke li estas malprava*=He admitted he was (is) wrong.

(11). *Delasi*=to allow to leave, as:—*Li delasis lin de la domo*=He let him leave the house.

(12). *Enlasi* (like *lasi en*)=to let go in, as:—*Enlasu min!*=Let me in!

(13). *Forlasi*=to abandon, as:—*Li forlasis sian poston*=He abandoned his post.

(14). *Preterlasi*=to let pass, as:—*Li preterlasis la okazon*=He let the opportunity pass, or, He missed the opportunity. *Li ne povis uzi sian biletton, ĉar ĝia limtempo preterlasiĝis*=He could not use his ticket because its time limit had expired.

(15). *Tralasi*=to allow to pass through, as:—*Li tralasis la homon tra la pordon*=He let the man pass through the door. *Kiam ŝi atingis la pordegon, ili ŝin tralasis*=When she reached the gate, they let her through.

Pesi and Pezi.

237. (e). **Pesi**=to weigh, to examine by balance (transitive).

Pezo=to weigh, to have weight (intransitive).

Peso=the weighing, the act of weighing.

Pezo=the weight, or, heaviness of a thing.

Pesilo=the scales, or, the weighing machine.

Pezilo=a (metal) weight.

From the above words we see that the roots **pes-** and **pez-** both signify "weight," and care must be taken to use the words in their transitive or intransitive sense.

EXAMPLES.—*Tiu ĉi tabloj estas de granda pezo; mi kredas ke ilia pezo estas pli ol cent okdek funtoj*=These tables are a great weight; I believe that their weight is more than a hundred and eighty pounds. *Tiu kesto estas tre peza; mi estas certa ke ĝi pezas almenaŭ naŭdek funtojn; metu ĝin sur la pesilon, alportu la pezilojn, pesu ĝin, kaj diru al mi la ĝustan pezon*=That chest is very weighty (heavy); I am certain that it weighs at least ninety pounds; put it on the scales (weighing machine), bring the weights, weigh it, and tell me the exact weight.

Povi.

237. (f). **Povi**=to be able. Used as an auxiliary verb, **povi** has several significations in its various tenses, which at first sight may appear somewhat contradictory to English ideas. For instance, the

beginner may say "How can 'can' be both present and future, or 'could' both past and conditional?" The examples given below will answer the question.

Present, **Mi povas** = I am able to, I can.

Past, **Mi povis** = I have been (or, was) able to, I could.

Future, **Mi povos** = I shall be able to, I can.

Future, **Ni estos povintaj** = We shall have been able to.

Conditional, **Mi povus** = I should (or, would) be able to, or, I could, or, I might.

Conditional, **Li estus povinta** = He would have been able to, or, He could have.

EXAMPLES.—*Cu vi povas tion fari?* = Yes, mi povas = Are you able to (can you) do that? Yes, I can. *Mi ne povas vidii la arbon, kiam vi montras* = I cannot see the tree which you point out. *Mi povis fari tion, kion vi volis* = I was (have been) able to do what you wished. *Mi ne povis fari tion, kion vi postulis* = I was not (have not been) able to do (I could not do) what you required. *Mi povos tion fari morgaŭ* = I shall be able to (I can) do that to-morrow. *Se vi povus veni mardon, mi povus vin vidii* = If you should be able to (if you could) come on a Tuesday, I could see you. *Mi povusti fari morgaŭ, se...* = I could (should be able to) do that to-morrow if... *Cu li estos povinta plenumi la laborojn, kiam vi lin vidos morgaŭ?* = Will he have been able to complete the work when you (will) see him to-morrow? *Se vi venus hieraŭ, mi estos povinta vin vidii* = If you had come yesterday, I could have seen you. *Li povus veni, se li volus* = He might (would be able to) come if he wished (see paras. 237 (*l*), (*m*)).

Sidi.

237. (*g*). **Sidi** = to sit, to be sitting. **Sidi** has sometimes the signification "to be" in some defined place.

EXAMPLES.—*En la ĉambro sidis nur kelke da homoj* = In the room were (sat) only a few (some) men. *La kuiristo sidas en la kuirejo* = The cook is (sits) in the kitchen. *En la kandelingo sidis brulanta kandelo* = In the candlestick was (sat) a burning candle.

Sin trovi.

237. (*h*). **Sin trovi** = to find oneself. This expression (or, **trovigti**) = to be found, to find oneself, to be,

or, *to be situated*) is often used for the English verb “*to be*.”

EXAMPLES.—*Sur la arbo sin troris multe da birdoj*=On the tree were (found themselves) many birds. *Super la tero troviĝas aero*=Over the earth is air.

Ĉesi, Daŭri, Pasi, Fini, Komenci.

237. (*i*). In English the following verbs are used in both a transitive and intransitive sense:—**Ĉesi**=*to cease*; **daŭri**=*to last, to continue*; **pasi**=*to pass*; **fini**=*to finish*; **komenci**=*to commence*. In Esperanto **ĉesi**, **daŭri**, **pasi** are intransitive; so, to make them transitive, we must add *IGI*. On the other hand, **fini** and **komenci** are transitive; therefore, to make them intransitive, we must add *IĜI* (para. 280).

<i>Transitive.</i>	<i>Intransitive.</i>
<i>Ĉesi</i> <i>guitun bruon</i> =Cease that noise.	<i>La pluoj ĉesis</i> =The rain ceased.
<i>Li daŭrigis sian rakonton</i> =He continued his story.	<i>La ventego daŭris unu horon</i> =The storm lasted an hour.
<i>Li pasigis du horojn en la budo</i> =He passed two hours in the booth.	<i>La tempo pasas rapide</i> =Time passes rapidly.
<i>Li finis sian laboran</i> =He finished his work.	<i>La monato finigos morgaŭ</i> =The month will finish to-morrow.
<i>Si komencos sian vojaĝon morgaŭ</i> =She will commence her journey to-morrow.	<i>La semajno komencigis hierau</i> =The week commenced yesterday.

Do, Did.

237 (*j*). The English verb “*to do*” is represented as follows:—

(1). In the sense of to “*perform*,” “*make*,” “*commit*,” “*execute*,” etc., it is represented by **fari** or **agi**.

EXAMPLES.—*Ne faru tion*=Don't do that. *Batante la knabon, li furis* (or, *agis*) *malprare*=He did wrong in beating the boy. *La cambristino faris tion, kion mi ordonis*=The chambermaid did what I ordered.

(2). In interrogation and negation it is represented by the present and past tenses (paras. 58, 63, 64).

EXAMPLES.—*Cu vi pensas, ke li venos?*=Do you think that he will come? *Cu vi lin vidis hirañ?*=Did you see him yesterday? *Mi ne konas lin*=I do not know him.

(3). As an emphatic auxiliary, it may be represented by the adverb *ja*=*indeed, in fact* (para. 217).

EXAMPLE.—*Mi ja esperas, ke li venos*=I do hope he will come.

(4). As an inquiry after health.

EXAMPLE.—*Kiel vi fartas?* or, *Kia estas via sano?*=How do you do? or, How are you?

(5). To "do" in the sense of "to cheat" by **trompi** or **friponi**. In the sense of "to suffice" by **sufici**.

EXAMPLES.—*Li friponis min*=He did (cheated) me. *Tio suficos*=That will do.

(6). Followed by prepositions, it must be translated in accordance with the sense of the phrase.

EXAMPLES:—

To do away with (abolish)=*neniigi*, (destroy)=*detruji*.

" " business=*komerci*, *fari nejocon kun*.

" " for, or away with (murder, kill)=*mortigi*.

" " into (translate)=*traduki*.

" " well (prosper)=*prospri*.

" " up (arrange)=*aranĝi*, (tie up)=*kunligi*, (repair)=*ripари*.

" " with (make use of)=*fari uzon el*.

" " without (dispense with)=*forlasi*, *ne bezoni*.

Cet.

237. (*k*). The English verb to "get" must be translated in accordance with its numerous meanings. For instance:—

(1). To "get" in the sense of to "become" may be rendered by **igī**=*to become*, or the suffix **-IG-**.

EXAMPLES.—*Edzigi*=To get married (man). *Edzinigi*=To get married (woman). *Lerigi*=To get up. *Alproksinigi*=To get near. *Laciği*=To get tired. *Tedigi*=To get bored. *Cu ri pretijas?*=Are you getting ready? *Mi malsatijas*=I am getting hungry. *Mi kutilijas je tio*=I am getting accustomed (used) to that. *Mallumijas* (or, *Igas mallume*)=It is getting dark. *La tagoj pli mallongijas*=The days are getting shorter. *La infanoj kusigis*=The children got into bed (lit., lay down). *La vespermano malvarmigas*=The dinner is getting cold; but *malvarmumi*=to get (or catch) a cold.

(2). To "get," in the sense of to "make," to "cause," is rendered by **igī**=*to make*, or the suffix **-IG-** added to a verb; or by **last**=*to leave, let*.

EXAMPLES.—*Igu ŝin veni al nia danco*=Get her to come to our dance. *Mi tranēigos la herbon morgaŭ*=I shall get the grass cut to-morrow. *Li lastis fari al si robon*=He got a dress made for her.

(3). To "get," in the sense of to "have got," or to "possess," is not translated.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi havas* (or, *posedas*) *du ĉevalojn*=I have got two horses. *Kion ri havas?*=What have you got?

(4). To "get," in the sense of to "procure," "fetch," is rendered by **havigi**, or, **venigi**.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi havigos al mi tiom, kiom mi poros*=I shall get as much as I can. *Venigu al mi veturilon*=Get me a carriage. *Venigu la kuraciston*=Send for (get) the doctor.

(5). "Get" is translated in various other ways according to its meaning. Note the following examples:—

Alveni en=To get to, to arrive at.

Alkondu mi an ĉevalon=Get my horse.

Alportu al mi la mustardon=Get me the mustard.

Mi ricevis vian leteron=I got your letter.

(6). To "get," followed by prepositions, etc., must be translated in accordance with the sense of the phrase.

EXAMPLES :—

To get across = *transiri*.

- " " along, forward, on = *autaŭeniri*.
- " " at (attain, reach) = *atingi*.
- " " back (something lent) = *reveni*, (to a place) = *reveni*.
- " " down = *dirī*, *malsupreniri*.
- " " off (be acquitted) = *senkulpiji*, (escape) = *forkuri*, (a horse or coach) = *dirī*.
- " " dirty = *malpuriyi*.
- " " on (a horse or coach) = *supreniri*, (in learning) = *progresali*, (in business) = *prospeli*.
- " " on with (continue) = *daŭrigi*.
- " " out (of doors) = *dirī*, (publish) = *eldoni*, or, *dirigi*.
- " " over (across) = *transiri*, (surmount) = *renki*.
- " " ready = *pretiĝi* (trans.), *pretiĝi* (intrans.).
- " " round (coax, allure) = *logi*, *allogi*, (persuade) = *konvinki*.
- " " up (rise) = *leviĝi*, (ascend) = *supreniri*.

Can and Could.

237. (l). "Can" and "could" are translated by **pov*o*** = *to be able*, except when "can" has the permissive sense of "may" (see para. 237 (*m*) (3)).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ne povas lin ridi nuntempe* = I cannot see him at present. *Li ne povis iri hieraŭ* = He could not go yesterday. *Li porus iri hodiaŭ, se li volus* = He could (would be able to) go to-day, if he would.

For other examples of "can" and "could," see **pov*o***, para. 237 (*f*).

May and Might.

237. (*m*). These verbs are used as (1) auxiliaries in the English Subjunctive mood, but they also express (2) wish, (3) permission, (4) possibility, (5) power or ability.

(1). When used as **auxiliary** verbs, they can be expressed by the Esperanto Imperative mood.

EXAMPLES.—*Li rapidas, por ke li alvenu ĝustatempe*=He hastens that he may arrive in time. *Li kuris rapide, por ke li ne maltrajfu la vagonaron*=He ran quickly that he might not miss the train.

(2). When they express “**wish**,” the Esperanto Imperative is also used.

EXAMPLES.—*Vi estu feliĉa!*=May you be happy! *Via deziro estu efektigita!*=May your wish be realized! *Cielo vin benu!*=May Heaven bless you! *Dio volu vin beni!*=May God bless you! *Nenio difiktu vian feliĉcon!*=May nothing mar your happiness! *Ciu beno estu via!*=May every blessing be yours!

In the above examples ellipsis takes place both in Esperanto and English, some such words as *mi deziras, ke . . .*=I wish that . . . being omitted (para. 66 (c)). *Ke vi prosperu, estas mia fervoradeziro!*=That you may succeed, is my fervent desire! *Ke li vivu, estas mia ciutaga prego!*=That he might live, was my daily prayer! *Mi mortu, se mi iom mensogas!*=May I die, if I am lying at all!

(3). When they express “**permission**,” some word denoting this must be used, or the imperative may be used, the verb expressing permission being omitted (para. 58 (a)). The English verb “can” is sometimes employed to express the permissive sense of “may”; in that case it is better to avoid the use of **povi**=*to be able*.

EXAMPLES.—*Cu vi permesas* (or, *eu vi volas*), *ke mi parolu kun vi?* or, *Cu mi parolu kun vi?*=May (can) I speak to you? (lit., Do you permit that I speak to you?) *Cu vi volas* (or, *eu estas permese*), *ke mi vidu la kastelon?* or, *Cu mi vidu la kastelon?*=May (can) I see the castle? *Mi permesas, ke vi tion faru, se vi volas*, or, *Vi faru tion, se vi volas*=You may (I permit that you) do that, if you like. *Se mi estas permesita tion diri* (or, *se estas permesite*, *ke mi tion diru*)=If I might (were permitted to) say so (that).

(4). When they express “**possibility**,” some word showing that the action is more or less a matter of doubt must be used, as **eble**=possibly, **kredeble**=probably, etc.

EXAMPLES.—*Eble li venos*=He *may* come, or, Maybe (possibly) he will come. *Eble li tranĉos la fingron, se vi donos al li tranĉilon*=He may (possibly he will) cut his finger, if you (will) give him a knife. *Eble li venus, se vi lin invitus*=He might (possibly he would) come, if you invited (were to invite) him. *Se vi tien irus, eble (kredible) ri lin vidus*=If you went (were to go) there, you might (possibly, probably would) see him.

Note that the possibility of something happening varies with the adverb used. "May" rendered by *eble* throws greater doubt on the contingency than *kredible*.

(5). When they express "power," or "ability," *povi*=*to be able* can be used.

EXAMPLE.—*La malsano porus konduki al komplikajoj*=The illness may lead to complications. *Li porus tion fari, se li antaŭe rolus* (or, *estus rolinis*) *gin furi*=He might (could) have done that, if he had wished to do it.

Shall and Will.

237. (*n*). These verbs are used in English to denote :—

- (1). Futurity.
- (2). Determination or will.
- (3). Power, or ability to perform an action.

As they are sometimes misplaced, it would be well for the student, not thoroughly conversant with their proper use, to consult some good English Grammar.

(1). **Futurity.** As the auxiliary for the Future tense, "shall," in *direct* speech, is generally used for the first person, and "will" for the second and third persons, as "*I, or we, shall go*," "*He, you, or they will go*," except in interrogation, when "shall" is generally used for the second person, as "*Shall you go?*" But in *indirect* speech "shall" is used for all three persons, as, "*He says he shall come*." "*You say you shall write*." In any of these cases they are translated by the future in *-os*.

(2). **Determination** or **Will**. When the meaning is not futurity, but *self-determination* on the part of the speaker, then, in *direct speech*, "will" is used for the first person, and "shall" for the second and third persons, as, "I *will* do it, you cannot stop me." "You *shall* not kill that bird." "Thou *shall* not steal." But in *indirect speech* "will" is used for all the persons, as, "He says he *will* go" (it is his determination to go). "You say you *will* try it" (you are determined to try it). In none of these cases must the Esperanto future be used, but the imperative, or some word expressing "will" or "determination."

(3). **Power**, or **Ability**, or **Advisability**, as :—"But will he do it?" (Is he able to do it?). "Shall I do it?" (Is it advisable to do it?).

N.B.—In some cases it is difficult to tell in which of the above three senses "shall" or "will" is used, unless the context makes it clear ; so, in writing, we have to underline the words, or, in speaking, to emphasize them strongly when they mean "determination." Note carefully their meaning in the following sentences. The number prefixed to each example denotes the heading under which it comes.

EXAMPLES.—(1). *Mi revenos, kiam ili foriros*=I shall come back when they go away. (2). *Mi intencas gin fari, ĉu vi konsentos, aŭ ne*=I *will* (intend to) do it whether you consent or not. (1). *Vi mortigos tium birdon, se vi rekto pafos*=You will kill that bird if you shoot straight. (2). *Mi ne permenses, ke vi mortigu tium birdon*=You *shall* not (I do not allow you to) kill that bird. (1). *Mi scias, ke vi gin faros*=I know that you will do it. (2). *Mi scias, ke ri poras gin fari, se ri volas*=I know you can do it if you *will*.

Note the difference in meaning of "shall" and "will" in the following sentences :—I shall ^{will} not see you to-morrow unless you come early. If "shall" be used, it means that something will prevent the speaker from seeing the

individual; the speaker may be out, or engaged; therefore, since the reason is unimportant, we can translate the sentence, as in English, by the future, as:— (1). *Mi ne vidos rin morgaū, se vi ne* (or, *escepte se vi venos frue*). But if "will" be used, determination on the part of the speaker is implied; nothing prevents him; he could see you if he wished, but he *will* not (won't). Therefore, in Esperanto, we must express this determination, and say (2). *Mi ne volas* (or, *mi ne intencas*) *rin vidli morgaū, escepte se vi venos frue*=I will not (I do not intend to) see you to-morrow unless you come early. (1). *Mi ne mortos sola*=I shall not die alone. (2). *Mi ne volas* (or, *mi certe ne intencas*) *morti sola*=I will not (I certainly do not intend to) die alone. (1). *Cu vi estos* (or, *estos*) *tie ĉi morgaū?*=Will you be here to-morrow? (1). *Jes, mi estos*=Yes, I will. Note that "will" here repeats the verb in the question, and is used instead of "shall." (1). *Li diras, ke li venos, sed* (1) *eu li venos?* or, (2) *eu li volos reni?* or, (3) *eu li poros reni*=He says he will come, but will he? Here the words "but will he?" must be translated in accordance with the sense to be conveyed, viz.:—(1) will something prevent him? (2) will he have the will? (3) will he have the power?

If a person says to himself "Shall I do that?" it can be translated by the future. *Cu mi tion faros?*=Is it worth while to do that? or, *Cu estos la plej bone tion fari*=Is it best to do that? or, *Cu estos proprite, saĝe, k.e.*=Will it be expedient, wise, etc., or, *Cu decos, ke mi tion faru?*=Will it be proper (right) to do that? If, however, the phrase is used as a question to another person, it would be rendered "*Cu vi volas* (or, *diziras*), *ke mi tion faru*, or, *Cu mi faru tion?*=Shall I (do you wish me to) do that? (1). *Cu vi iras?*=Shall you go? (2). *Cu vi volas iri?*=Will you go? *Cu vi volas, ke mi iru?* or, *Cu mi iru?*=Shall I go? (paras. 58 (*a*), 237 (*m*) (3)). "Will I go" is bad English, and untranslatable!

Should and Would.

237. (*o*). "Should" and "would" follow the rules of "shall" and "will" when employed in parallel circumstances. They express—

(1). **Supposition**, or a future that is doubtful, conditional, or merely supposed (para. 192), as "*I should do it if I knew how*."

(2). **Duty or obligation** (para. 237 (*a*)) as "He *should* not do that."

(3). **Determination**, as "Nothing could influence him, he *would* do it."

(4). **The softening of an expression** (para. 194), as "Would you object to do that?"

(5). **The future in indirect speech** (para. 232), as "*She said she would (will) come.*"

(6). **Would**, when it signifies *custom* or *habit*, is sometimes translated by adding the suffix -*AI-* to the verb.

The following sentences will show how these various meanings may be expressed in Esperanto. The number before each example shows under which class of meanings it comes.

EXAMPLES.—(1). *Mi ĝin farus, se vi min permesus*=I should do it if you would permit me. (1). *Li min frapus, se li ne timus*=He would strike me if he were not afraid. (3). *Li insistis ĝin fari, spite ĝio, kion mi povis diri*=He *would* do it in spite of all I could say. (4). *Cu vi donus al mi tiu libron?*=Would you give me that book? (1). *Se vi ridus Johnon morgaŭ* (2) *vi devus diri al li, ke li ne aĉetu tiun domon*=If you should see John to-morrow, you should tell him not to buy that house. (5). *Si diris al mi, ke ŝi venos*=She told me that she would (will) come. (1). *Mi iononte suspectis, ke ili venos*=I had a slight suspicion that they would come. (6). *Ili ofte rajdulis tra la arbaroj, kie la branĉoj tuŝadis iliajn kultrejn, kaj la birdoj kantadis inter la fresaj folioj*=They would often ride through the woods, where the branches would touch their shoulders, and the birds would sing amid the fresh leaves.

Must, Ought.

237. (*p*). "Must" and "Have to" always signify physical or moral obligation, and are stronger terms than "ought," which implies moral obligation or duty. Compare "You *must* (*have to*, *are to*) *go*" with "You *ought* to *go*." The former can be rendered by

devi, and the latter, "ought," by **decas**, or some word implying moral obligation. **Devi** is also used for "ought" in the Conditional mood; **devus**, in this case, being the softened form of the Conditional mood (see para. 194). Care must be taken not to translate "must" when it signifies "have to" or "am to" by **havi** or **esti** (see para. 237 (a) on **devi**).

EXAMPLES.—*Li devas labori*=He must (has to) work. *Mi devas hari tiun libron*=I must have that book. *Cio, kio troviĝas en tiu ĉi libro, devas esti rigardata kiel deviga por ĉiuj*=Everything which is in this book must be regarded as obligatory for all. *La "Fundamento de Esperanto" devas resti sevare netuŝebla*=The "Fundamento de Esperanto" must remain strictly unalterable (untouchable). *E-tis al ŝi, kiel ŝi devus plori*=It was to her as if she must (would have to) weep. *Vi ne devus tion fari*, or, *Ne decas, ke vi tion faru*=You ought not to (it is not proper, right that you should) do that. *Vi devus viziti (Decas, ke vi vizitu) la patron*=You ought to see (it is proper that you should see) your father. *Li ne devus forgesi* (or, *esti forgesinta*)=He ought not to have forgotten. *Decas, ke mi alportu miajn servojn al la reĝo*=I ought to offer my services to the king. *Kiam vi devos vidi la homon?*=When must you (will you have to) see the man? *Mi devus vidi lin hieraŭ, sed li mal-sentis, tial nun mi devos atendi ĝis morgaŭ*=I ought to have seen him yesterday, but he fell ill, so now I must wait till to-morrow.

N.B.—Note, in the last example, that the adverb *hieraŭ*=yesterday, clearly shows the action is past; it is therefore unnecessary to use the past infinitive *esti vidinta*.

ADVERBS (Adverboj).

238. **Adverbs in Esperanto** are more widely used than in any other language, since the root of every word can be made into an adverb by adding the adverbial termination *E*, and not the root only, for innumerable adverbs are formed by adding *E* to the grammatical terminations and suffixes. This facility enables the Esperantist to express in one word, to an unlimited extent, what often takes two, three, or more words to adequately express in other languages, as:—**Tiamaniere** = *In such a manner.* **latene** = *In the morning.* **Vespere** = *In the evening.*

239. **An adverb answers** to a preposition accompanied by a complement.

EXAMPLE.—*Li parolas sage* = “He speaks wisely,” has the same signification as *Li parolas kun sajeco* = He speaks with wisdom.

240. **Adverbs are used to modify** the meaning of verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

EXAMPLES.—*Li agas bone* = He acts well. *Tiu ĉi estas tre randa domo* = This is a very large house. *Li skribas treege bone* = He writes extremely well.

N.B.—When an adverb seems to qualify a preposition, it really qualifies an adverbial phrase, as:—**ulte antaŭ la horo** = *Much before the time (hour).*

241. **Position.**—Adverbs, as a rule, immediately precede or follow the words which they modify (see para. 88).

242. There are two classes of adverbs in Esperanto, which for the sake of distinction we will call (*a*) “Primary” and (*b*) “Grammatical.”

(a). **Primary** adverbs are all to be found in the list of primary words in Part V. They have no distinctive termination.

(b). **Grammatical** adverbs are those which are formed by adding *E* to the root, grammatical termination, or suffix. Some are formed by adding *E* to a primary word.

A list of adverbs will be found at page 160.

243. **No influence on case.**—Adverbs exercise no influence on the case of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns. If such be in the accusative, it is not by the influence of the adverb. For example:—
Mi amas Johanon tiel varme kiel mian fraton=
I love John as warmly as my brother. Here **kiel** exercises no influence on **mian fraton**, for both **mian fraton** and **Johanon** are governed by the verb **amas**. Therefore the meaning is that the speaker loves my brother and John equally warmly. To show that **kiel** exercises no influence on the case, we can place **mian fraton** in the nominative, as:—
Mi amas Johanon tiel varme kiel mia frato=
I love John as warmly as my brother (does). Ask yourself the question, “as my brother does what?” and the answer is “loves John.” In English we are obliged to add “does” or “loves him,” but in Esperanto the meaning is quite clear from the case of the noun (see also paras. 247 and 105).

244. **Adverb or preposition.**—When a preposition has no complement, noun or pronoun, the preposition then takes the adverbial termination *E*. For instance, in the phrase **mi staras apud li** (*I am standing by him*); **apud** here is a preposition because it is followed by its complement **li**. But if **li** be omitted, we must alter the sentence, as:—**Li staras apude**=*He is standing by (near)*.

245. **Subject not expressed.**—When, in a sentence in Esperanto, there is no noun or pronoun which the adjective can qualify (as in case of verbs in the infinitive, or used impersonally), the adverb is used in Esperanto in place of the adjective.

EXAMPLES.—*Mensogi estas honte* (not *honta*)=To lie is shameful. *Estas necese, ke...*=It is necessary that... *Estas bele, varme, malvarme*=It is fine, warm, cold. *Ne estas atendate, ke...*=It is not expected that... If, however, a noun or pronoun is expressed, then the adjective is used, as:—*La vetero estas bela, varma, malvarma*=The weather is fine, warm, cold.

245. (a). **Participle-Adverbs.**—In Esperanto, when the participle relates to the subject (para. 211), but does not qualify it, then the participle takes the adverbial form. For impersonal use see para. 164 (d).

EXAMPLES.—*Legante, ni lernas*=In reading we learn. *Starante sur la supro de la monteto, li poris vidi la preĝejon*=Standing on the top of the hill, he could see the church. *Estante kolera, si ne volis paroli al sia nero*=Being angry, she would not speak to her nephew. *Malferminte la fenestron, li vidis la amason sur la strato*=Having opened (or, after opening) the window, he saw the crowd in (on) the street. *Ekrigardinte la libron, si ĝin metis sur la tablon*=Having glanced (or, after glancing) at the book, she put it on the table. *Forpelite de la urbo, ili rifugis en la arbarego*=Having been (or, after being) driven from the town, they took refuge in the forest. *Batale de la lernejestro, la knabo terure kriegis*=Being beaten by the schoolmaster, the boy howled terribly.

246. **Adverbs of quantity**, like other words signifying quantity, have always their complement introduced by the preposition **da**.

EXAMPLES.—*Iom da ŝi*=Some (or, a little) of it. *Multe da homoj*=Many men. *Nur malmulte da virinej*=Only a few women. *Kiom da ĉevaloj vi havas?*=How many horses have you? *Multe pli da bovajo, ol (da) ŝafviando*=Much more beef than mutton. *Malpli da pano, ol (da) viño*=Less bread than wine. *Tro da kuristoj malbonigas la buljonon*=Too many cooks spoil the broth. *Ne estas sufice da supo*=There is not sufficient soup.

246. (a). Expressions such as "more and more," "at most," etc., are thus rendered :—

Pli-malpli, pli aŭ malpli, plie aŭ malplie = *More or less.*

Plie = *More and more, moreover.* **Malplie** = *Less and less.*

Pleje = *At (the) most, mostly.* **Malpleje** = *At (the) least, least.*

Troe = *In excess, too many.*

EXAMPLES.—*Unu pomo plie aŭ malplie ne signifas* = One apple more or less does not signify. *Plie, mi devas diri al vi, ke...* = Moreover, I must tell you that... *Ni estos kvin plej kaj ili sep malpleje* = We shall be five at most and they seven at least. *En la kesto mi trovis du librojn troe* = In the box I found two books too many (in excess).

247. Grammatical adverbs and the accusative

case.—Adverbs exercise no influence on the case of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns (see para. 243), but used adverbially, participles of active verbs are followed by the accusative if used without a preposition (see para. 66 (b)). As regards other grammatical adverbs, the following remarks are taken from "Esperanta Sintakso," by Paul Fruictier :—

" Derived adverbs are often used as prepositions (with a substantive complement). Mr. Kofman says, in his preface to 'Kain':—" **Konforme malnovajn titolojn**" = *In accordance with old titles.* '**Rilate vortojn**' = *In regard to words.* '**Escepte lian biografion**' = *With the exception of his biography, etc., etc.* Why, in such expressions, is the accusative used after the adverb? M. de Beaufront says :—

" (a). ' Adverbs used as prepositions, like **koncerne** = *concerning*, **tuſante** = *touching*, **ne ofendante** = *not offending*, *without offence*, **supozinte** = *supposing*, **esceptinte** = *excluding, excluding*, **rilate al** = *with regard to*, **proksime de** = *near to*, **dank' al** = *thanks to*, **meze de** = *in the midst of*, **dekstre de** = *at the right of*, **supre de** = *at the top of*, **funde de** = *at the bottom of*, **flanke de** = *at the side of*, etc., etc., govern the nominative or accusative, according as the word from which they are derived itself governs the nominative or accusative. The last eight govern the nominative, as the preposition, which follows them, shows. The others govern the accusative because they are derived from the transitive

Verbs **koncerni**=*to concern*, **tusī**=*to touch*, **supozi**=*to suppose*, **ofendi**=*to offend*, **escepti**=*to except*. These adverb-prepositions have, therefore, as a direct complement, the noun or pronoun that follows them.'

"(b). It is easy to see that the gerundive forms **esceptinte**, **supozinte**, etc., are true, distinct forms of a verb, and have only the appearance of adverbs (by their termination). But as for the forms **escepte**, **rilate**, **koncerne**, **kompare**, etc., one does not at all understand why the accusative is used after them. Possibly it may be said that the accusative by itself is substituted for the nominative with a preposition, as "**rilate al tio**", "**rilate tion**" = "with regard to that"; "**konforme kun tio**", "**konforme tion**" = "in accordance with that." This explanation appears least objectionable."

(c). With reference to the foregoing remarks from the "Esperanta Sintakso," we may add that it is optional either to use the accusative after such adverbs as **konforme**, **rilate**, **escepte**, etc., or to add a suitable preposition with the complement in the nominative, as **konforme al**, **kun**, or, **je**; **rilate al**; **escepte de** (or, **kun la escepto de** = *with the exception of*) (see para. 258 (a)).

248. **Comparatives and superlatives.**—These are marked in the same way as adjectives (see paras. 112—114).

EXAMPLES.—*Pli rapide, ol bone*=More quickly than well. *Malpli forte, ol kutime*=Weaker (less strong) than customary. *Tiel dolce, kiel eble* (or, *kiel eble plej dolce*)=As sweetly as possible. *Si kantas la plej bone el ĉiuj*=She sings best of all. *Li agis tre sage*=He acted very wisely.

248. (a). **Adverbs and adjectives.**—Be careful not to use the adjective for the adverb.

EXAMPLES.—*Li kuras rapide*=He runs rapidly. *Parolu li laŭte* (not *laŭta*)=Speak louder (more loudly). *Si vidis ĝin piediranta pli malrapide, ol kutime*=She saw him walking that he was (is) walking more slowly than usual.

N.B.—Note that *piediranta* is predicative (see para. 209 (b)).

LIST OF ADVERBS.

248. (b). The following list of adverbs contains all those found amongst the primary words and some formed from them, also a number of useful grammatical adverbs.

Adiaŭ = *Adieu, farewell, good-bye.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li diris al ŝi adiaŭ, kaj foriris* = He said good-bye to her, and departed.

Afranke = *Post-free. Afrankite* = *Post-paid.*

Ajn = *Ever.* **Ajn** is generally used after the correlative words beginning with *K*, as **kia**, **kiam**, etc. (see table of correlative words, para. 147). It then answers to words ending in "ever," but, unlike English, it is never joined to the preceding word (para. 145).

EXAMPLES.—*Kia ajn* = Whatever kind of. *Kiam ajn* = Whenever, whensoever. *Kie ajn* = Wherever, wheresoever. *Kiel ajn* = However. *Kies ajn* = Whosesoever. *Kio ajn* = Whatever, whatsoever. *Kiom ajn* = However much. *Kiu ajn* = Whoever, whosoever, whichever, whichever.

Aliloke = *Elsewhere. Alivorte* = *In other words.*

Almenaŭ = *At least.*

EXAMPLE.—*Donu al mi almenaŭ la duonon de tiu biskvito* = Give me at least the half of that biscuit.

Alvenante = *On arrival.*

Ambaŭ = *Both, one and the other (pronoun).*

EXAMPLES.—*Ili ambaŭ kuris al la stacidomo* = They both ran to the station. *La ambaŭ* = The two, both.

Ankaŭ = *Also, too.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li ankaŭ gin faris* = He, too, did it. *Nek mi ankaŭ* = Nor I either (also).

Ankoraŭ = *Yet, still. (See remarks on Jam).*

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu li estas ankoraŭ tie ĉi?* = Is he still here? *Mi ne vidis lin ankoraŭ* = I have not seen him yet.

Antaŭe = Formerly, previously, beforehand, in front.

Aparte = Aside, apart, separately, specially.

Apenaŭ = Hardly, scarcely.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi apenaŭ pensas tion* = I hardly think that (or, so).

Baldaŭ = Soon.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi esperas, ke li venos baldaŭ* = I hope he will (may) come soon.

Bis = Once more, again, encore.

EXAMPLE.—*Bis!* = Encore !

Bonstate = In good condition.

Ci = The nearest (*tio* = that, *tio ĉi* or *ĉi tio* = this), (*tiu* = that, the former, *tiu ĉi* or *ĉi tiu* = this, the latter), (*tie* = there, *tie ĉi* or *ĉi tie* = here), (*tien* = thither, *tien ĉi* = hither), (*ĉio* = all, *ĉio ĉi* = all this) (para. 143).

EXAMPLES.—*Restu tie ĉi* = Remain here. *Venutien ĉi* = Come hither.

Ĉial = For all reasons, for every reason (para. 150).

EXAMPLE.—*Ĉial tio estas la plej bona* = For every reason that is the best.

Ĉiam = Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE.—*Li venas ĉiam, kiam oni ne bezonas lin* = He always comes when one does not want him.

Ĉame = Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE.—*La infano ploras ĉame* (or, *senĉese*) = The child cries perpetually.

Ĉie = Everywhere (para. 152).

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉie mi lin vidas* = Everywhere I see him. *Li iras ĉien* = He goes everywhere.

Ĉiel = In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE.—*Tiu estas ĉiel la plej bona sidejo* = That is in every way the best seat.

Ĉiom = All of it, the whole, all, every quantity (para. 156).

EXAMPLE.—*Prenu iom da ĝi, ne ĉiom, or, Prenu iom, ne ĉiom da ĝi* = Take some, not the whole of it.

Ĉirkau = Round about.

Ĉiufoje kiam, or, **ĉiun fojon kiam**, or, **kiam ajn**=
whenever.

Ĉuijare = Yearly, annually, every year.

Ĉiumonate = Monthly, every month.

Ĉusemajne = Weekly, every (each) week.

Ĉiutage = Daily. **Laŭtage** = By the day. **Tago**=
By day. **Nokte** = By night.

Ĉu = Whether. An interrogative adverb used at the beginning of a direct question ; it has no English equivalent. In indirect questions it signifies "whether." **Ĉu** simply shows that the sentence is interrogative, and therefore, to translate it, we must look to the tense of the verb and to the subject, so as to preface the interrogation with "do," "does," "did," "have," "has," "is," "will," "shall," "was," "were," "should," "would," "can," etc., etc.

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu vi komprenis?* = Did you understand? *Ĉu Johano skribas?* = Is John writing? *Ĉu vi povas fari tion?* = Can you do that? (see remarks on Interrogation, para. 58).

Ĉu = whether (also a conjunction) is used in indirect questions, when we generally use "if."

EXAMPLE.—*Diru al mi, ĉu li venos?* = Tell me if (whether) he will come.

Ĉu .. Ĉu = Whether...whether.

EXAMPLE.—*Ĉu li venos, ĉu li ne venos, Paŭlo foriros?* = Whether he comes (will come) (or) whether he does not (will not come), Paul will depart.

Dekstre = On the right. **Maldekstren** = To the left.

Denove = Afresh, again, once again.

Due = Secondly.

Dum = While, whilst, as (also a preposition and conjunction).

Dume = Meanwhile.

Eble = Possibly, perhaps.

Eĉ = *Even.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li eĉ pensis, ke...* = He even thought that... *Eĉ la infanoj insultis min* = Even the children abused me.

Efektive = *In fact, really.*

Ekstere = *Outwardly.* **Interne** = *Inwardly, internally, within, inside.*

Entute = *On the whole, as a whole.*

Facile = *Easily.* **Malfacile** = *With difficulty.*

Fine = *In conclusion, lastly.*

For = *Away, forth.*

EXAMPLE.—*For de tie ĉi fripono!* = Get thee hence (away), rascal!

Forme = *In shape, in form.*

Calope = *At a gallop.*

Grandnombre = *In great numbers.*

Hishodiaŭ = *Up to date.* **Ĝisnune** = *Up to now, hitherto.*

Ĝissate = *Till satiety (is reached).*

Gustatempe = *Opportunely, to time.*

Hieraŭ = *Yesterday.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi lin vidis hieraŭ* = I saw him yesterday. *Antaŭhieraŭ* = The day before yesterday.

Hieraŭ matene = *Yesterday morning.*

Hodiaŭ = *To-day.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li alvenos hodiaŭ* = He will arrive to-day.

Hodiaŭ vespero = *This (to-day) evening.*

al = *For some (any) reason, or cause (para. 150).*

EXAMPLE.—*Ial li venis Londonon* = For some reason he came to London.

am = *At some (any) time, once, ever (para. 151).*

EXAMPLES.—*Venu iam morgaŭ* = Come some (any) time to morrow. *Mi renkontis lin iam sur la strato* = I met him once in (on) the street.

e = *Somewhere, anywhere (para. 152).*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ne povas ĝin trovi ie en la ĉambro* = I cannot find it anywhere in the room. *Gi estas ie* = It is somewhere. *Ĉu vi metis ĝin ien?* = Did you put it anywhere?

Iel = *Somehow, some way, some manner, anyhow, in any way* (para. 153).

EXAMPLES.—*Iel li sukcesas en ĉio*=Somehow he succeeds in everything. *Respondu iel*=Answer in some manner.

Iom = *Somewhat, some quantity, a little, some* (para. 156).

EXAMPLES.—*La velero estas iom pli varma*=The weather is somewhat (a little) warmer. *Jen estas cigaroj, ĉu vi deziras iom?*=Here are cigars, do you want some?

Iomete = *A very little, in a very slight degree.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ĝi estis iomete pli granda, ol kuko*=It was slightly larger than a gnat.

Intence = *Intentionally, on purpose.*

Ja = *In fact, indeed.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li ja alvenos morgaŭ*=He in fact will arrive to-morrow. *Ja* may be used to express the emphatic English use of "do," "did," as:—*Mi ja volas, ke li estu tie ĉi*=I do wish he were here (para. 217).

Jam = *Already, as yet, by now, now.*

EXAMPLES.—*Vi jam diris tion*=You said (have said) that already. *Ĉu vi jam trovis vian horloĝon?*=Have you as yet found your watch? *Mi jam ĝin ankoraŭ ne serĉis*=I have not yet looked for it. *La knabo jam ne ridas*=The boy does not laugh now (no longer laughs).

N.B.—Compare *jam* with *ankoraŭ*. *Jam* marks the circumstances are changed; *ankoraŭ*, that there is no change. Ex.: *La infano jam dormas*=The child is now sleeping (it was not sleeping before). *La infano ankoraŭ dormas*=The child is still sleeping.

Jen = *Behold, here. Jene* = *As follows.*

EXAMPLES.—*Jen estas tio, kion vi bezonas*=Here is what (that which) you want. *Jen estas la libroj*=Here are the books.

Jes = *Yes, it is so* (para. 63). **Jese** = *Affirmatively.*

EXAMPLES.—*Jes, vi estas prava*=Yes, you are right. *Mi vin certigas, ke jes*=I assure you that it is so.

Ju pli...des pli = *The more...the more* (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—*Ju pli mi lin konas, des pli mi lin amas*=
The more I know him, the more I love him.

Ju pli...des malpli = *The more...the less*.

EXAMPLE.—*Ju pli mi lin ridas, des malpli li placas al mi*=The more I see him, the less he pleases me.

Ju malpli...des malpli = *The less...the less*.

EXAMPLE.—*Ju malpli mi dormas, des malpli mi sentas la bezonon dormi*=The less I sleep, the less I feel the need (to sleep) of sleeping.

Ju malpli...des pli = *The less...the more*.

EXAMPLE.—*Ju malpli mi trinkas, des pli mi mangas*=
The less I drink, the more I eat.

Jus = *Just, at the moment*.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi jus vidis sin*=I have just seen her.
Mi jus ne poras diri al ri lian nomon=I cannot at the moment tell you his name.

Kaše or kašate = *In secret*.

Kelkfoje or kelkfoje = *Sometimes*. **Iafoje** = *At times*. **Multfoje** = *Many times*.

Kia ajn = *Whatever (kind of)* (para. 145).

EXAMPLE.—*Mi ačetos de ri tinn libron, kia ajn gi estos*=I will buy from you that book whatever it may (shall) be.

Kial = *Why, wherefore* (para. 150).

EXAMPLE.—*Kial ci silentis?* = Why were you silent?

Kiam = *When, at what time* (para. 151).

EXAMPLE.—*Kiam li alvenos?* = When will he arrive?

Kiam ajn = *Whenever, whensoever* (para. 145).

EXAMPLE.—*Sendu lin al mi, kiam ajn li venos*=Send him to me whenever he comes (shall come).

Kie = *Where, in what place* (para. 152).

EXAMPLES.—*Kie kreskas tinj floroj?* = Where do those flowers grow? *Diru al mi, kie li estas*=Tell me where he is. *Kien accusative*)=Whither. *Kien vi iras?*=Whither (or, where) are you going? *De kie li venis?*=Whence did he come?

Kie ajn = *Wherever, wheresoever* (para. 145).

EXAMPLES.—*Kie ajn li estas, li estas satata*= Wherever he is, he is liked. *Kien ajn*= Whithersoever. *Oni lin estimus, kien ajn li irus*= They would esteem him whithersoever he went (should go). *De kie ajn ĝi venis, ĝi estas tre bela katido*= Whencesoever (from wherever) it came, it is a very fine kitten.

Kiel = *How, in what manner, like, (in comparison = ...as)*.

EXAMPLES.—*Kiel vi fartas?*= How do you do? (how are you, or, fare you?) *Mi havas ian ideon kiel ĝin fari*= I have some idea how to do it. *Tiel longe kiel*= As long as. *Se vi estus kiel mi*= If you were (should be) like me. *Kiel eble plej bone*= As well as possible (as possibly, most well). *Kiel bona vi estas!*= How good you are! (para. 153).

Kiel ajn = *However, in whatever manner* (para. 145).

EXAMPLES.—*Kiel ajn vi ĝin faros, faru ĝin bone*= In whatever way you (will) do it, do it well. *Kiel ajn malmulte da sukero vi havas, ĝi estas sufica* (or, *estas sufice, or, suficas*)= However little sugar you have, it is sufficient.

Kiom = *How much, as much as, as far as* (para. 156).

EXAMPLES.—*Kiom kostas tio?*= How much does that cost? *Kiom mi scias*= As far as I know. *Kiom li povos*= As much as he can (will be able).

Kiom ajn = *However (many) much, whatever quantity*.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ĝin acētos, kiom ajn ĝi kostos*= I shall buy it, however much it may (will) cost. *Kiom ajn da teo estas tie, tiom suficas*= Whatever quantity of tea is there, it (that quantity) is sufficient (para. 145).

Kompare = *Comparatively, in comparison*.

Kompato = *Compassionately, mercifully. Senkompato* = *Pitilessly*.

Komprenable = *Of course*.

Kondiĉe = *Conditionally, on condition*.

Konforme = *Conformably, in accordance*.

Konsente = *By consent*.

Kontente = *Contentedly. Malkontente* = *Discontentedly*.

Kontentige = *Satisfactorily, in a satisfactory manner.*

Kontraüe = *On the contrary, opposite to, vice versa.*

Kreduble = *Likely, probably.*

Kune = *Together, jointly.* **Kune kun** = *Together with, along with.* **Malkune** = *Separately.*

Kvazaŭ = *As if, as though, as it were* (also conjunction).

EXAMPLES.—*Li staris, kvazaŭ li vidus fantomon* = He stood as though he saw (should see) a phantom. *Li parolis, kvazaŭ, malfacile* = He spoke, as it were, with difficulty.

Laūlärge = *In breadth, broadways, transversely.*

Laūlonge = *In length, lengthwise.*

Laūvole = *At option, at will.*

Laute = *Loudly, in a loud voice.* **Mallaute** = *Softly, in a soft voice.*

Lerte = *Cleverly.* **Mallerte** = *Awkwardly.*

Longe = *Long, long time.* **Mallonge** = *Briefly, shortly.*

Antaŭ ne longe = *Recently, not long ago, a short time ago.* **De longe** = *Long ago, long since, for a long time.*

Male = *On the contrary, contrarily.*

Malpleje = *Least, at least.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li malpleje donis* = He gave least. *Ni estos tri malpleje* = We shall be three at least (see pleje).

Malpli = *Less (for comparatives)* (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—*Georgo estas malpli forta, ol Johano* = George is weaker (less strong) than John.

Malproksime = *Afar, away, far off, in the distance.*

Matene = *In the morning.* **Vespere** = *In the evening.*

Mem = *Self, selves, very (pronoun)* (para. 127).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi mem iros* = I shall go myself. *Eĉ la virinoj mem, laboris sur la kampoj* = Even the women themselves (or, the very women) were working in the fields. *Če la pordo mem* = At the very door (door itself).

Morgaŭ = *To-morrow.*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi iros tien morgaŭ* = I shall go there to-morrow. *Li alrenos postmorgaŭ* = He will arrive the day after to-morrow.

Multe pli multe da... = *Many more of....* **Mal-**
multe = *Not much, not many.*

Ne = *No, not, nay.*

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu vi deziras kafon?* = Do you wish for coffee? *Ne, mi jam havas* = No, I have (some) already (see remarks on negation, para. 59).

Ne tute = *Not entirely, not altogether, not quite.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li ne estis tute malprava pri tio, kion li diris* = He was not altogether wrong in what he said.

Nedube ; Sendube = *No doubt ; without doubt, doubtless.*

Nek = *Nor* (para. 59).

EXAMPLE.—*Li ne plaĉas al mi. Nek al mi ankaŭ* = I don't like him. Nor I either (also).

Nek...nek = *Neither...nor* (para. 59).

EXAMPLE.—*Nek li nek mi estis tie* = Neither he nor I was there.

Nenial = *For no cause (reason)* (para. 150).

EXAMPLE.—*Nenial li ĉesis skribi al mi* = For no reason he ceased writing to me.

Neniam = *Never* (para. 151).

EXAMPLE.—*Mi neniam ridis lin* = I never saw him.

Nenie = *Nowhere, in no place* (para. 152).

EXAMPLES.—*Nenie oni povis trovi mian hundon* = Nowhere could they find my dog. *Mi iras nenien speciale* = I am going nowhere in particular.

Neniel = *Nohow, by no means, in no way* (para. 153).

EXAMPLE.—*Li neniel poris kompremi ŝin* = He could in no way (not at all) understand her.

Neniom = *None, nothing, nothing at all, no quantity* (para. 156).

EXAMPLE.—*Li havas neniom* = He has nothing at all.

Nepre = *Unfailingly, certainly, surely, infallibly.*

EXAMPLE.—*Tiu libro nepre apartenas al mi* = That book certainly belongs to me.

Norden = *Northwards, to the north.* **Suden** = *Southwards, to the south.* **Orienten** = *Eastwards, to the east.* **Oksidenten** = *Westwards.* **Oksidente** = *In the west.*

Nun = *Now.*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi nun foriras* = I am now going out.
Mi ne povas nun lin vidi = I cannot see him now.

Nune = *At present.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi estas okupata nune* = I am busy at present.

Nuntempe = *Now-a days, at the present time.*

Nur = *Only (but, in the sense of only).* **Nure** = *merely.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li havas nur du ĉevalojn* = He has but (only) two horses. N.B.—Care should be taken to place *nur* in such a position in a sentence so as to convey the required meaning of the phrase. It is best generally to place it before the word to which it specially refers (see para. 88).

Pace = *In peace, peacefully.*

Page = *In payment.* **Senpage** = *Gratuitously.*

Parkere = *By heart.*

Parole = *Verbally, by word of mouth.* **Skribe** = *In writing.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li tion komunikis al mi parole kaj skribe* = He communicated that to me verbally and in writing.

Pasie = *With passion, passionately (not anger).*

Pere = *Indirectly.* **Senpere** = *In a direct way, direct.*

Persono = *Personally, in person.*

Piedire = *On foot.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi trapasis la arbaron piedire* = I traversed the wood on foot.

(la) **Plej** = (*the*) *Most* (for superlatives), *most* (para. 113).

EXAMPLES.—*La plej bela el ĉiuj* = The finest of all.
Vi agis plej sage, farante tion = You acted most wisely in doing that.

Pleje = *Most, mostly, mainly, at most.*

EXAMPLES.—*Si donis pleje*=She gave most. *Pleje* (or, *plejoste*) *mi forgesas, ke...*=Mostly (frequently) I forget that... *Ni estos kriu pleje*=We shall be five at most (see *malpleje*).

Plezure = *With pleasure.*

Pli = *More* (for comparatives), *rather* (para. 112).

EXAMPLES.—*Li ne vivos pli ol unu tagon*=He will not live more than one day. *Pli kaj pli mi ŝiu amas*=More and more I love her. *Mi pli preferis labori, ol ludi*=I preferred rather to work than to play.

Plie = *Further, moreover.*

Pivole = *Preferably, rather* (para. 112).

Plu = *Further, farther, more.* **Ne...plu** = *No longer.*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ne faros unu pašon plu*=I shall not go (make) one step further. *Li ne faros plu tion*=He will not do that any longer (more), or, He will no longer do that.

Plue = *Furthermore.*

Poduone = *By half, by halves.*

Poste = *Afterwards, after, then.*

Precipe = *Especially, particularly.*

Prefere = *Preferably, rather.*

Preskaŭ = *Almost, nearly, well-nigh.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li preskaŭ fatis*=He nearly fell. *Ni preskaŭ pensas, ke...*=We almost think that...

Pripensinte = *On reflection.*

Proksime = *Near.* **Malproksime** = *Far off.*

Proksimume = *Approximately.*

Prunte = *On loan.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi prenis la monon prunte*=I took the money on loan.

Rapide = *Rapidly, quickly, apace.* **Malrapide** = *Slowly, tardily.*

Rapidire = *With speed, by express.* **Malrapidire** = *By slow train.*

ave = *Enchantingly, delightfully.*

ee = *Again, in return.*

ekte = *Straightforwardly, direct.* **Malrekte** = *Aslant.*

enversite = *Topsy-turvy, upset.*

eturne = *Back.* **Returnen** = *Backwards.*

ajne = *Seemingly.*

amtempe = *At the same time, simultaneously.*

ekve = *Consequently, therefore.* **Intersekve** = *Consecutively, successively.*

enintermanke = *Continuously, without intermission.*

kribe = *In writing.*

ovage = *In a wild state.* **Malsovage** = *In a tame state.*

omere = *In summer.* **Vintre** = *In winter.*

peciale = *Specially.*

ube = *Beneath, below, under, underneath.*

ufice = *Enough, sufficiently.*

upre = *Above, up.* **Supren** = *Upwards.* **Malsupre** = *Below.* **De supre** = *From above.*

urgenue = *On one's knees, kneeling.*

urprize = *By (with) surprise.*

ial = *Therefore, accordingly, for that (such) reason.*

EXAMPLE.—*Tial mi al vi konsilas skribi al li* = For that reason (therefore, accordingly) I advise you to write to him (para. 150).

iam = *Then, at that time.* The correlative is **kiam**, and **tiam**, **kiam** = *then, when* (or, *when*) (para. 151).

EXAMPLES.—*Tiam ni poros iri al la kunreno* = We shall at that time be able to go to the meeting. *Mi vizitos vin tiam, kiam mi venos Londonon* = I will visit you (then) when I (shall) come to London.

iamaniere = *In this (such a) manner, thus.*

tie = *There, yonder.* **Tien** = *Thither* (para. 152).

EXAMPLES.—*Cu iu estos tie?* = Will anyone be there? *Vi ne vidos iun tie* = You will not see anyone there. *Cu vi iras tien?* = Are you going thither (there)?

Tie **ĉi**, or, **Ĉi tie** = *Here*. **Tien** **ĉi**, or, **Ĉi tien** = *Hither, here* (para. 143).

EXAMPLES.—*Ĉu viaj fratoj estas tie ĉi?* = Are your brothers here? *Venu tien ĉi* = Come here (hither). *Ĉi tie ni vidis amasonj da viroj kaj virinoj* (or, *geviroj*) = Here we saw crowds of men and women.

Tiel = *Thus, in that way, like that, so much so*. Its correlative in comparison is **kiel**. **Tiel . . . kiel** = *as...as* (para. 153).

EXAMPLE.—*Li estas tiel fortia, kiel vi* = He is as strong as you.

Tiel . . . ke = *So...that*.

EXAMPLE.—*Li tiel kriegis, ke li raŭkigis pro tio* = He shouted so, that he became hoarse through it.

Tiom = *As much, as many, so much, so many*. Its correlative is **kiom**, and **tiom, kiom** = *as many as, as much as* (para. 156).

EXAMPLES.—*Tiom estas malfacile memori* = So much is difficult to remember. *Li tiom laboris, kiom vi* = He worked as much as you. *Donu al mi tiom da pomoj, kiom da piroj* = Give me as many apples as pears.

Tiom pli = *So much the more*.

EXAMPLES.—*Tiom pli bone* = So much the better. *Tiom pli malbone* = So much the worse.

Trae = *Right through*.

Tre = *Very, much*.

EXAMPLES.—*Li estas tre dikta* = He is very corpulent. *Mi tre estimas lin* = I esteem him much.

Treege = *Extremely, exceedingly*.

EXAMPLE.—*Ŝi estas treege kolera* = She is extremely angry.

Trie = *Thirdly*.

Triumfe = *Triumphantly*.

Tro = *Too, too much*.

EXAMPLES.—*Li estas tro grasa* = He is too fat. *Mi lin tro amas* = I love him too much.

troe = *In excess.*

EXAMPLE.—*Dudek funtoj troe* = Twenty pounds in excess.

uj = *At once, immediately.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li tuj iris domen* = He went home immediately (at once).

uj kiam = *As soon as (immediately when).*

EXAMPLE.—*Tuj kiam mi lin vidis, mi kuris al li renkonte* = As soon as I saw him, I ran to meet him.

tute = *Entirely, quite, utterly, stark.*

EXAMPLE.—*Vi estas tute prava* = You are quite right.
Li estas tute freneca = He is stark mad.

tute ne = *Not at all.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi tute ne komprendas vin* = I don't at all understand you.

inue = *First, firstly, at first.*

ete = *Emulously.*

'ole = *With one's will.* **Kontraŭvole** = *Against one's will.* **Memvole** = *Voluntarily.* **Senvole** = *Involuntarily.*

/olonte = *Willingly, readily.*

248. (*c*). From the above list we see that the adverbs often used in Esperanto in place of a preposition and its complement (para. 252).

EXAMPLES.—*Si estas nigre vestita* = She is dressed in black.
Li donis al mi du ŝilingojn page por la libro = He gave me two shillings in payment for the book. *Forme ĝi estas simila al krono* = In shape it was like a crown. *La libro estas angle kribita* = The book is written in English. *Hamleto estas radukita esperantен* (or, *esperante*) = Hamlet has been translated into Esperanto. Note here that *esperantен* is accusative of figurative movement (para. 67), but some writers do not use the accusative in this case.

PREPOSITIONS.

The following is a list of the 35 simple prepositions, showing the paragraphs under which remarks and examples of their use will be found :—

		Para.
Al	<i>To, towards</i>	259 (1).
Anstataū	<i>Instead of</i>	259 (2).
Antaū	<i>Before, in front of</i>	259 (3).
Antaū ol	<i>Before (time)</i>	259 (4).
Apud	<i>Beside, close by</i>	259 (5).
Če	<i>At, with</i>	259 (6).
Cirkauč	<i>About, around</i>	259 (7).
Da	<i>Of</i>	259 (8).
De	<i>Of, from, by</i>	259 (9).
Dum	<i>During</i>	259 (10).
Ekster	<i>Outside</i>	259 (11).
Ei	<i>Out of</i>	259 (12).
En	<i>In</i>	259 (13).
Čis	<i>Till, as far as</i>	259 (14).
Inter	<i>Between</i>	259 (15).
Je	<i>(Indefinite)</i>	259 (16).
Kontraū	<i>Against, opposite</i>	259 (17).
Krom	<i>Besides, except</i>	259 (18).
Kun	<i>With</i>	259 (19).
Lauč	<i>According to</i>	259 (20).
Malgraū	<i>Notwithstanding</i>	259 (21).
Per	<i>By means of</i>	259 (22).
Po	<i>At the rate of</i>	259 (23).
Por	<i>In order to, for</i>	259 (24).
Post	<i>After, behind</i>	259 (25).
Preter	<i>Beyond, past</i>	259 (26).
Pri	<i>Concerning, of, about</i>	259 (27).
Pro	<i>Because of, for</i>	259 (28).
Sen	<i>Without</i>	259 (29).
Spite	<i>In spite of</i>	259 (30).
Sub	<i>Under</i>	259 (31).
Super	<i>Above, over</i>	259 (32).
Sur	<i>On</i>	259 (33).
Tra	<i>Through</i>	259 (34).
Trans	<i>Across</i>	259 (35).

PREPOSITIONS (Prepozicioj).

249. **Prepositions express** the relation between words, showing how some thing, action, or quality stands in relation to some other thing, action, or quality.

EXAMPLES.—*La riveroj fluas al la oceano*=Rivers flow towards the ocean. *Li mangas antaŭ ol trinki*=He eats before drinking. *Nia domo staras ekster la arbetaro*=Our house stands outside the plantation.

250. **Every preposition**, but one, in Esperanto has a fixed and definite signification, and great care must be taken to use the preposition which gives the meaning we wish to convey. A careful examination of the list of prepositions in para. 259 will show the errors we should make by translating the English preposition into its **apparent** corresponding one in Esperanto.

251. **The preposition je** is the only one in Esperanto without a definite meaning. It should be used only when we have to employ a preposition and are uncertain which we ought to select. We can, however, omit the preposition, and put its complement (noun or pronoun) in the accusative case, provided no ambiguity is likely to arise through the presence of other accusatives in the sentence, as:—
Li ĝojas je tio, or, **Li ĝojas tion**=*He rejoices at* (or, *over*) *that*. There is no Esperanto preposition which gives exactly the English meaning of “at” or “over” in this sense. We might, perhaps, say that these words are part of the verb “to rejoice at,” or, “to rejoice over.” The nearest Esperanto preposition would be **pri** or **pro**=*about*, or, *because of*, and we could say **Li ĝojas pro tio**=*He rejoices because of that* (see Rule 14, para. 94).

(a). **Je**, with the nominative, is generally used before the complement of the adjectives, “deep, high, long, thick, wide,” but the accusative without a preposition is equally correct.

EXAMPLES.—*Profunda (alta, longa) je kvin futoj* (or, *kvin futojn*)=Five feet deep (high, long). *La rivero estas larĝa je kvindek metroj* (or, *larĝa kvindek metrojn*)=The river is fifty mètres wide. We could, however, say, *La rivero havas kvindek metrojn da larĝo* (or, *da larĝeco*).

252. **Adverb for preposition.**—An adverb is often used instead of a preposition and its complement (para. 248 (c)).

EXAMPLES.—*Li parolas sage*=He speaks with wisdom, instead of, *Li parolas kun saĝeco*. *Li estis frapata perforte*=He was being struck with great violence, instead of, *Li estis frapata kun perfortego*.

253. **Preposition omitted.**—Not only the preposition **Je** (para. 251), but also other prepositions, are frequently omitted in Esperanto where we use them in English; but in such case (as stated in para. 68) their complements must be in the accusative to show the omission. Care, however, must be taken that the omission does not make the phrase ambiguous.

EXAMPLES.—*Li venos la mardon proksiman* (or, *en la mardo proksima*)=He will come next Tuesday. *Mi iros Madridon* (or, *al Madrido*) *morgaŭ*=I shall go to Madrid tomorrow. *Mi lin vidis la dekan* (or, *en la deka*) *de julio*=I saw him on the 10th of July. *Ni restis en la veturilo du horojn* (or, *dum du horoj*)=We remained two hours in the carriage.

(a). Prepositions are also always omitted between two substantives, when the word **nomata**=named could be understood (para. 106 (d)), as:—

La urbo (nomata) Parizo=The city of (named) Paris. *La monato septembro*=The month of September. *Li uzadas la lingvon internacian (nomatan) Esperanto*=He uses the international language Esperanto.

(b). The preposition **el** = *of, out of*, is sometimes omitted in such expressions as:—

Unu mia amiko = One of my friends (*or, a friend of mine*).
Tri miaj parencoj = Three of my relatives (*or, three relations of mine*).

254. **Prepositions as prefixes.** — Prepositions are frequently used as prefixes, and when the compound word is a verb, the preposition is often repeated before the indirect complement of the verb.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi eliris el la korto* = I went out of the court-yard. *Li eniris en la ĉambro* = He entered (into) the room. *La birdo defluggis de la arbo* = The bird flew from the tree. *Li eliris el la domo* = He went out of the house, or we could say, *Li iris el la domo*, omitting the joined preposition.

255. **Prepositions and case.** — Unlike English, all prepositions in Esperanto govern the **nominative case**. If the complement of a preposition is in the accusative case, it is not owing to the preposition, but to the rule that the accusative is used to show the direction or place towards which movement (physical or moral) is made (para. 67).

256. **Preposition and the accusative of direction.** — As already stated in para. 67, the accusative is used when direction (physical or moral) is implied **towards** something. But if the word towards which such movement is implied is the complement of a preposition, then such word is in the nominative or accusative, in accordance with the following rules:—

(a). If the preposition denotes of **itself** movement, its complement will be in the nominative, in accordance with Rule 8 that prepositions govern that case.

(b). If the preposition does **not of itself** denote movement, then movement is shown by placing its complement in the accusative (para. 67).

257. Prepositions denoting movement.—The following three prepositions denote movement, and consequently their complement is never in the accusative:—**Ai** = *To, towards.* **Cis** = *Up to, as far as.* **Tra** = *Through.*

As regards the others, the following are those in general use, whose complement takes the accusative of direction when motion towards something is implied:—**Antau** = *Before.* **En** = *In.* **Kontrau** = *Against.* **Sub** = *Under.* **Super** = *Over.* **Sur** = *On, upon.* **Trans** = *Across.* Also **Ê** = *At*, according to some writers.

EXAMPLES.—*Li staris momente antau lu spegulo, kaj tiam venis antau la region* = He stood for a moment before the looking-glass, and then came before (into the presence of) the king. *Li lojis êe mi, sed ni iris ciutage êe lian patron por vespermanji* = He lived with me, but we went daily to his father's to dine. *La infano dancis en la korto, kaj tiam kuris en la gardenon* = The child danced in (not into) the courtyard, and then ran into (not in) the garden. *Jetu tion sub la tablon* = Throw that under the table. *Jetu la stonon super la muron* = Throw the stone over the wall. *Mi prenas sur min tiun êi aferon* = I take upon myself this business (moral movement, therefore accusative, since *sur* does not of itself show movement). *La knabo ruolis trans la riveron kaj, trans gi, trovis aliajn knabojn* = The boy waded across the river, and, on the other side of it, found other boys.

258. Prepositional expressions.—Adverbs are not unfrequently followed by prepositions, thus forming prepositional expressions. They take the nominative case, like simple prepositions.

EXAMPLES.—*Meze de la kampo* = In the middle of the field. *Funde de kesto* = At the bottom of a box. *Flanke de la malliberulo* = At the side of the prisoner. *Proksime de la prejejo* = Near the church. *Dekstre de la vojo* = On the right of the road. *Supre de la muro* = At the top of the wall. *Dank' al lia konsilo* = Thanks to his advice. *Li venis kune kun sia frato* = He came together (along) with his brother. *Li estas for de tie êi* = He is away from here. *Oni plantis arbon proksime de la puto* = They planted a tree near the well. *Metu vian manon for de mia kolo!* = Take your hand off (away from) my neck.

(a). A few adverbs, used as prepositional expressions, are sometimes followed by a suitable preposition and sometimes not; in the latter case the complement is in the accusative, to show the omission (para. 253).

EXAMPLES.—*Koncerne tiun aferon* (or, *Koncerne je tiu afero*)=Concerning that matter. *Konforme tion* (or, *Konforme al, kun or, je tio*)=In conformity with that. *Rilate lian karakteron* (or, *Rilate al lia karaktero*)=With regard to (relative to, as regards, referring to) his character (para. 247).

N.B.—These adverbs are alternative words for simple prepositions. We might, in some cases, use *pri* for *koncerne* or *rilate*, and *laŭ* for *konforme*.

(b). When the adverb has the participial active form, the complement is governed by it (para. 66 (b)).

EXAMPLE.—*Ciuj aliaj el la ĉambro esceptinte Johanon*=All left the room save (with the exception of) John.

(c). Two prepositions sometimes are used.

EXAMPLES.—“*Eniru!*” *ekkriegis roĉo de en la pordo*=“Come in!” shouted a voice from within (inside) the door. *Li rampis de sub la soĝo*=He crept from under the sofa. *La ŝtono havis la alton* (or, *altecon*) *de ĉirkaŭ ok centimetroj kaj la larĝon* (or, *larjecon*) *de ĉirkaŭ kvar centimetroj*=The stone had the height of about eight centimetres and the width of about five centimetres. *El sub la tirkesturo la muso kuris sub la liton*=Out from under the chest of drawers the mouse ran under the bed. *Ne rapiĝu foriri de antaŭ li*=Do not hasten to leave his presence (go away from before him).

259. The relation of prepositions to their complement.—English grammarians divide prepositions into various classes, but in Esperanto, with the exception of those mentioned in para. 257, denoting motion and rest, there are but two classes to which we need pay special attention, viz., those which relate to both place and time; and of these, two only, viz., **antaŭ**=before, and **post**=after, require care in making their meaning clear.

In the following remarks on prepositions the examples given of their use are placed under the various classes that their English rendering would

assign to them; but we must bear in mind that, in accordance with Rule 14, every Esperanto preposition, except **je**, has a **defined and constant** meaning (para. 250). This *defined* meaning is given at the head of each preposition. The meanings given in the *classes* are only the *various English renderings* that can be given to the preposition (see English prepositions, paras. 260, 261).

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

259 (1). **Al** = *To, towards.*

Denotes approximation or addition.

Approximation = *To, towards.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li venis al ni* = He came to (or towards) us. *Mi iras al Parizo*, or, *Mi iras Parizon* = I am going to Paris. If *al* be omitted, *Parizon* must be in the accusative of direction. *Ni ne vidas, ĉar la lumo estas kaŝata al ni per la kurteneoj* = We do not see, because the light is hidden from (towards) us by the curtains.

N.B.—*Kaŝata al*, not *de*, which, after a passive participle, means “by”; but independently of this, *al* is logically used after *kaŝi*, in the sense of “to hide from”; as:—*Sed pro kio, kaŝi al li vian amon?* = But why conceal from him your love?

Addition = *To.*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi donis akron al la birdoj* = I gave water to the birds. *La rozo apartenas al Teodoro* = The rose belongs to Theodore. *Donu vestojn al la malriĉuloj* = Give clothing to the poor.

N.B.—With some verbs *al* is often used with the complement in the nominative, when in English we omit the preposition, as:—*Li konsilis al mi fari tion* = He advised me to do that. *Ordonu al li, ke li ne faru tion* = Order him not to do that.

Al is also sometimes used with personal pronouns in a possessive sense, as:—*Li lavis al si la manojn*, or, *Li lavis siajn manojn* = He washed his hands (see para. 134).

As a prefix, *al* signifies “to,” “towards,” as:—*Alveni* = To come to, arrive. *Alpreni* = To take to, adopt. *Alpaši* = To step towards, approach.

259 (2). **Anstataŭ** = *Instead of.*

One of the three prepositions that may be used before the Infinitive (see remarks on Infinitive, paras. 177, 179).

Substitution = *Instead of, for, in place of, as a substitute for, in room of.*

EXAMPLES.—*Anstataŭ li, oni sendis tian fraton* = Instead of him, they sent his brother. *Anstataŭ eliri, li restis en la domo* = Instead of going out, he remained in the house. *Okulo anstataŭ okulo, kaj dento anstataŭ dento* = An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth. *Anstataŭ unu el la oficistoj* = In place of one of the officials.

As a root-word, *Anstataŭi* = To replace (intrans.). *Anstataŭigi* = To replace (trans.), to substitute. *Anstataŭulo* = A proxy (person, instead of).

259 (3). **Antaŭ** = *Before, in front of.*

Denotes place or time. Takes accusative of direction.

Place = *Before, in front of.*

EXAMPLES.—*Oni metis antaŭ mi mangilaron* = They put before me a table service. *Morgaŭ mi petos permeson veni antaŭ viajn reĝajn okulojn* = To-morrow I shall beg permission to come before your royal presence (kingly eyes). *Antaŭ nia militistaro staris pafilegoj* = In front of our army were (stood) cannon.

Time = *Before, ago.*

EXAMPLES.—*Antaŭ ne longe* = Not long ago. *Antaŭ kelkaj semajnoj* = Some (a few) weeks ago.

N.B.—Since *antaŭ* and also *post* are frequently used both in the sense of "time" and "place," care must be taken to word a phrase so that no ambiguity may arise. In sentences like the following *antaŭ ol* or *antaŭ kiam* should be used when time is implied.

EXAMPLES.—*La gefiancoj renkontiĝis antaŭ la gepatroj* = The betrothed met before the parents (=place, viz., in the presence of the parents). *La gefiancoj renkontiĝis antaŭ ol* (or, *antaŭ kiam*) *la geputroj alvenis* = The betrothed met before the parents arrived (=time, viz., before the parents arrived). *Johano venis antaŭ la jugiston, sed Jozefo estis elirinta el la juĝejo antaŭ ol*

¶ 259 (3) (6). PREPOSITIONS.

Johano alvenis=John came before the judge, but Joseph had left the court before John's arrival.

As a prefix, *Autaŭdiri*=To foretell. *Antaŭiri*=to precede.

259 (4). **Antaŭ ol** = *Before*.

One of the three prepositions that may be used before the Infinitive (see remarks on Infinitive, para. 177). It always relates to time, and is properly a conjunction.

Time = *Before, previous to the time when.*

EXAMPLES.—*Antaŭ tri semajnoj ni estis en Parizo, sed antaŭ ol iri Londonon, ni retriris Berlinon*=Three weeks ago we were in Paris, but before going to London, we travelled to Berlin. *Antaŭ ol eliri, li surmetis sian superreston*=Before going out, he put on his overcoat.

259 (5). **Apud** = *Beside, close by.*

Place = *By, near, near to, close by.*

EXAMPLES.—*La batalo apud Farsalo ŝanĝis multajn aferojn en Romo*=The battle near Pharsalia changed many things in Rome. *Li estas apud la pordo*=He is near the door. *Li staris apud Johano*=He stood by John. *Mi vespermanĝos ĉe tiu tablo apud la fenestro*=I shall dine at that table close by the window.

As a root-word or prefix, we have:—*Apudeco*=Contiguity. *Apudesti*=To be present, or near.

259 (6). **Ĉe** = *At, with.*

Marks the situation of a thing or action. Denotes place, time, or connection. Takes accusative of direction, according to some writers.

Place = *At, with, to, on.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li estas ĉe ni*=He is with us (at our house). *Ni estas ĉe via patro*=We were at your father's. *Si estas ĉe la pordo*=She is at the door. *Mi demandis lin, kial li venas ĉe min*=I asked him why he came (comes) to me (to my house). *Ĉe la alia flanko de la strato*=On the other side of the street.

Mi gastas ĉe miaj amikoj, Gesinjoroj Smith=I am staying with (am a guest at) my friends, Mr. and Mrs. Smith.

Time = *At, on.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ĉe nia alveno la hundo ekbojis=At (on) our arrival the dog barked.*

Connection = *In, to, with.*

EXAMPLES.—*Bruko ĉe (or, en) bruko=Arm in arm.*
Koro ĉe koro=Heart to heart. *Mi kredas, ke ĉe ĉiu vorto vi diras...=I believe that with every word you say...* *Ĉe la komparatiro oni uzas la konjunkcion "ol"=With the comparative the conjunction "ol" is used.*
Por elpagi mian konton ĉe vi, mi sendas...=To settle my account with you, I send... *Ĉe tia vetero, vi estos baldaŭ resanigitaj=With such weather, you will soon be restored to health.*

As a prefix, *Ĉeesti* = To be present. *Inter la ĉeestantoj ni rimarkis...=Amongst those present we observed...*

259 (7). **Ĉirkau** = *About, around.*

Denotes place, time, manner, quantity.

Place = *About, around, round.*

EXAMPLES.—*Je ĉirkau tri paſoj=At about three paces.* *La hundoj ludis kaj saltis ĉirkau ŝi=The dogs played and jumped around her.*

Time = *About.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ĉirkau majjo ni foriros=About May we shall go away.*

Manner = *Round.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li prenis sian edzinon ĉirkau la talio=He took his wife round the waist.*

Quantity = *About.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi volas aĉeti ĉirkau kvar funtojn (or, funtoj)=I wish to buy about four pounds.*

As a prefix or root-word, *ĉirkau* has the significance of "encircling," as:—*Ĉirkaufrizo=Periphrase, circumlocution.* *Ĉirkaumetro=Perimeter.* *Ĉirkau-preni=To embrace.* *Ĉirkaui, ĉirkauigi=To surround.*

259 (8). **Da** = *Of*.

Used only after words denoting quantity, measure, weight, number, etc.

Quantity = *Of*.

EXAMPLES. — *Grenda nombro da ideoj* = A great number of ideas. *Prenu iom da ĝi* = Take some of it. *Funto da teo* = A pound of tea. *Post kvarono da (or, de) horo* = In (after) a quarter of an hour. *Sur la arbo sin trovis multo (or, multe) da birdoj* = On the tree were (found themselves) many (of) birds. *Monero da unu franko* = A coin of one franc.

N.B.—Be careful not to use *da* for *de* = of, and vice versa. *Glaso da vino* = A glass of wine. *Glaso de (or, por) vino* = A wineglass. *Alportu al mi tason de teo (or, tetazon), kaj elversu por mi tazon da teo* = Bring me a teacup, and pour me out a cup of tea.

NOTE.—Particular attention should be paid to the prepositions **da**, **de**, and **el**, all of which are often translated by the English preposition “*of*.” Note the following examples :—

Da. — *Cento da pomoj* = A hundred (of) apples. *Dekdu da kuleroj* = A dozen (of) spoons. *Miliono da loĝantoj* = A million (of) inhabitants. *Kvar metroj da tiu ĉi ŝtofo* = Four metres of this stuff. *Ducent kilometroj da longo* = Two hundred kilomètres in (of) length.

De. — *Tri estas duono de ses* = Three is half of six. *Ok estas kvar krinonoj de dek* = Eight is four-fifths of ten. *La domo de mia frato* = The house of my brother, or, My brother's house. *Doktoro de leĝoj* = A doctor of laws.

El. — *Ĉiu el la infanoj* = Each of the children. *Unu el ni* = One of us. *Ni faru uzon el tio* = Let us make use of that. *Domo konstruita el ŝtono* = A house built of stone. *La plej bela floro el la ĝardeno* = The most beautiful flower of the garden.

The article **la** does not follow **da**. If, after words denoting quantity, weight, measure, etc., the article is necessary, it is nearly always the case that the proper preposition to use is **el** or **de**, not **da**. Note the difference between “He ate a piece of bread” and “He ate a piece of the (particular) bread.” The former is **Li mangis pecon da pano**, and the latter **Li mangis pecon de la pano**.

259 (9). **De** = *Of, from, by.*

De, like "of" in English, is used in a variety of ways, but its primary meaning is "of," denoting possession, and serving to form the genitive or possessive case. It also denotes origin, place, time, cause, agency, and disconnection or abstraction. It may be said to be omitted in speaking of places, etc., when we use the preposition "of," and where **nomata** = *named* might be inserted between two substantives.

EXAMPLES.—*La urbo Londono*=The City of London.
La monato julio=The month of July (para. 106 (d)).
 Also in such expressions as :—*Unu mia kunojo*, for *unu el miaj kunojoj*=One of my companions (para. 253 (b)).
 Care must be taken not to confuse *de* with *da*.

Possession = *Of.*

EXAMPLES.—*La libro de Petro*=The book of Peter, or, Peter's book. *La domo de mia kara patro*=My dear father's house.

Origin or Dependence = *Of, on, from.*

EXAMPLES.—*Gi dependas de la nombro da vortoj*=It depends on the number of words. *Tio renis de lia unua eraro*=That came from his first error. *Li estas doktoro de medicino*=He is a doctor of medicine. *Li venis de (or, el) Parizo kaj nun iras al Berlino*=He came from Paris and is now going to Berlin. *Kaj Dio diris: "Kolektu sin la akro de sub la ĉielo nun lokon"*=And God said: "Let the waters (water) (from) under the heaven be gathered together (collect itself) into one place."

Place = *From, of, to.*

EXAMPLES.—*For de tie ĉi, fripono!*=Away from here, rascal! *Li forestas de tie ĉi*=He is away from here. *Li staris meze de la mulamikoj*=He stood in the midst of the enemy. *Proksime de la domo staris arbo*=Near (to) the house stood a tree. *Ne malproksime de la dometo staris preĝejo*=Not far from the cottage was (stood) a church.

Time = *From, since, for.*

EXAMPLES.—*De tiu tempo*=From (since) that time. *De la kreco de la mondo*=Since the creation of the world. *De tri semajnoj mi estas malsana*=For three weeks I have been (am) ill.

Cause = *From, of, with.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li eksaltis de surprizo*=He started (jumped) with surprise. *Li mortis de febro*=He died of (from) fever. *Kaŭze de tio*=Because of (due to) (owing to) that.

Agency = *By* (after a passive verb, to show the agent). To show the means **per** is used.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi estas amata de mia patro*=I am loved by my father. *La domo konstruita de mia patro estas kovrita per ardezoj*=The house built by my father is covered with slates.

Disconnection or Abstraction = *From.*

EXAMPLE.—*Apartigu la pajlon de la fojno*=Separate the straw from the hay.

As a prefix, de signifies “off,” “from,” as :—*Li deprenis la libron de la breto*=He took the book off the shelf. *Li demetas lu ĉapelon*=He took off his (the) hat.

259 (10). **Dum** = *During.*

Dum, whether used as a preposition, conjunction, or adverb, always relates to duration of time (see note below).

Time = *During.*

EXAMPLES.—*Dum la tuta tago* (or, *La tutan tagon*) *li restis sola*=During the whole day he remained alone, or, He remained alone the whole day. *Dum* (or, *En la daŭro de*) *kelkaj monatoj, si ne eliradis el sia ĉambro*=During (for the space of, for) some months she did not leave (go out of) her room. *Li dormis dum la tuta koncerto*, or, *Li dormis la tutan koncertron*=He was sleeping during the whole (all through the) concert. *Dum ili konsiliĝo* (or, *Dum ili konsiligis*) *mi restis en la apuda ĉambro*=During their consultation (or, whilst they were consulting) I remained in the adjoining room.

N.B.—In the above examples the alternative expressions are preferable to the preposition *dum*.

NOTE.—**Dum**, although frequently used as a conjunction or adverb by Dr. Zamenhof, is rarely, if ever, used by him as a preposition. For our preposition “during” he generally uses the accusative of duration, or the prepositional expression **en la daŭro de**, or simply **en**, or turns the phrase by employing an adverbial present participle.

259 (11). **Ekster** = *Outside*.

Place = *Outside*. **Ekster** is the opposite of **en** = *in*.

EXAMPLES.—*Li iris en la domon, sed mi restis ekster*
gi = He went into the house, but I remained outside it.
Li logas ekster la urbo = He lives outside the town.

Connection or **Disconnection**. **Ekster** may be said to be a connective preposition in some cases, when used in an affirmative sense, and disconnection, when used negatively.

EXAMPLES.—*Ekster tiuj ĉi leĝoj, ekzistas aliaj* = Outside (besides, or, in addition to) these laws others exist. *Ekster tiuj ĉi leĝoj ne ekzistas aliaj* = Outside (beside, or, apart from) these laws others do not exist (see *krom*, para. 259 (18)).

As a root-word or prefix, we have:—*Eksterajo* = The exterior, outside. *Eksterlande* = Abroad.

259 (12). **EI** = *Out of*.

EI is the opposite of **en** = *in*, but only when movement in and out is implied. It may be said to be omitted in such expressions as:—**Unu mia kunulo**, for **Unu el miaj kunuloj** = One of my companions (para. 253 (b)).

Care must be taken not to confuse **el** with **da** or **de**, both of which also signify “of,” that English preposition with so many meanings. **EI** means essentially “out of,” denoting that the noun specified is a *portion of* something, or is *made of* some particular material, or *issues from* something (see para. 259 (8)).

Origin or Dependence = *Of, with, from*.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi estas la plej riĉa el ĉiuj* = I am the richest of all. *Unu el ni estos elektata* = One of us will be chosen. *Li faris uzon el ĉio* = He made use of everything. *Mi faros uzon el la okazo* = I shall take (make use of) the opportunity. *Kion ni faros el hundo?* = What shall we do with (make out of) a dog? *El la dirita regulo, sekras, ke...* = From the said rule, it follows that... *Mi ricevis leteron el Parizo* = I received a letter from Paris.

¶ 259 (12)—(13). PREPOSITIONS.

Disconnection = *Out of, from.*

EXAMPLES.—*Tri musoj elsaltis el la tirkesto*=Three mice jumped out of the drawer. *Mi eliris el la domo ĝuste kiam li eniras en la retrurilon*=I went out of the house just as (when) he entered the carriage. *La violono salis el la violonujo*=The violin fell out of the violin case. *El sub la tero*=Out of (out from under) the ground (earth).

As a prefix, *el* signifies “out,” and also denotes something done thoroughly well or completely, as:—
Elpensi=To think out, to invent. *Elfosi*=To dig out.
Elirejo=An exit, way out. *Ellabori*=To work out thoroughly, to achieve, elaborate. *Ellirinki*=To drink up. *Ellerni*=To master, to learn thoroughly (to study).

259 (13). **En** = *In, into.*

Takes after it the accusative of movement, and has then the meaning of “into.” **En** is the opposite of **ekster** = *outside*, and also of **el** = *out of*, when movement in and out of something is implied.

Place = *In, into, within, at.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li estas en la ĝardeno*=He is in the garden. *Li iris en la ĝardenon*=He went into the garden. *Mi loĝas en Parizo*=I live in Paris. *La birdo flugas en la ĉambro* (*gi estas en la ĉambro, kaj flugas en ĝi*)=The bird is flying within the room (it is in the room, and is flying in it). *La birdo flugas en la ĉambro* (*gi estas ekster la ĉambro, kaj nun flugas en ĝin*)=The bird is flying into the room (it was outside the room, and now is flying into it). *Helpu min porti tiujn ĉi rojaĝkestojn en mian fiakron*=Help me to carry these (travelling) trunks to (into) my cab. *Li iris en la domon, sed mi mem restis ekster ĝi*=He went into the house, but I myself remained outside of it. *La ĉefa vorto staras en la fino*=The chief word stands at the end.

Time = *In, on, at, during.*

EXAMPLES.—*En printempo floroj aperas*=In (during) spring flowers appear. *En la tago*=On the day. *En la unua tempo*=At the outset (first time), at first. *Mi finos la tasketon en dek tagoj, se mi laboros en ĉiu tago po ok horoj*=I shall finish the job (little task) in 10 days if I work 8 hours a day (lit., if I shall work in each day at the rate of 8 hours).

Origin or Dependence = *Of, into.*

EXAMPLES.—*Apartamento konsistanta en (or, el) unu manjočambro, unu salono, kaj tri dormočambroj* = A flat (apartments), consisting of one dining-room, one drawing-room, and three bedrooms. *Aleksandro turniĝis en polron* = Alexander was turned into dust.

Connection = *In.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mano en mano* = Hand in hand.

259 (14). **Ĝis** = *Till, as far as.***Place** = *To, down to, up to, as far as.*

EXAMPLES.—*Ni akompanis ilin ĝis ilia domo* = We accompanied them as far as (to) their house. *Iru ĝis la rivero* = Go to (down to, as far as) the river.

Time = *Till, until, to.*

EXAMPLES.—*De sabato ĝis mardo* = From Saturday till (to) Tuesday. *Ni devas atendi ĝis junio* = We must wait till June. *Cu ne estus pli bone atendi ĝis kiam ni haros la hundon?* = Would it not be better to wait till (when) we have the dog? *Ĝi poras kuſi ok ĝis naŭ jarojn* = It can lie eight to nine years.

N.B.—*Jarojn* is the accusative of duration (para. 68 (b)), for *ĝis* has here no influence over it, being simply an item in the phrase; but if a preposition be placed before *ok*, then the preposition will influence its complement “*jaroj*,” which will be in the nominative; as:—*Ĝi poras kuſi dum (or, je) ok ĝis naŭ jaroj* = It can lie during eight (up) to nine years.

259 (15). **Inter** = *Between, among.*

Inter differs from **en**, in that **en** implies that something is actually in, or within, something else. **Inter** implies that something is between, or among, some other things.

Place = *Between, among.*

EXAMPLE.—*Inter Rusnjo kaj Francujo estus Germanujo* = Between Russia and France is Germany.

¶ 259 (15) -(16). PREPOSITIONS.

Time = *Between*.

EXAMPLE.—*Inter la deka kaj dekunu horoj matene, mi renkontis min amikon*= Between 10 and 11 o'clock in the morning I met my friend.

Manner = *Among, amongst*.

EXAMPLE.—*Ili dividis inter si dekdu pomojn*=They divided amongst themselves twelve apples.

As a prefix, *inter* has much the same meaning as in English, as :—*Intermeti*=To interpose. *Intermiksi*=To intermingle. *Interkonsenti*=To agree mutually.

259 (16). **Je.**

The preposition **je** has no fixed meaning. It is used only when we have to employ a preposition and we do not know which one the sense requires. We can, however, use the accusative case in place of it (Rule 14, paras. 251, 253).

The following are a few of the examples in which it has been used :—

Cause = *At, over, of*.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi enuas je la hejmo*, or, *Mi enuas la hejmon*=I am weary (tired) of home.

Manner = *By, on*.

EXAMPLES.—*Li tenis lin je la maniko per unu mano, kaj per la alia li batis lin sur la vizaĝon* (or, *li frapis al li la vizaĝon*)=He held him by (at) the sleeve with one hand, and with the other he struck him on the face (struck to him the face). *Mi gratulas vian princan Mošton je (or, pri) la reveno Danujon*=I congratulate your Royal (Princely) Highness on (regarding) your (the) return to Denmark.

Time = *At, on*.

EXAMPLES.—*Je lu kvara horo*=At 4 o'clock. *Je la lasta fojo* (or, *La lastan fojon*) *mi vidas lin ĉe vi*=On the last occasion (last time) I saw him with you.

Measure = *Of, by*.

EXAMPLES.—*Plena je (or, de) vino*=Full of wine. *Longa je dek futoj*, or, *Longa dek futojn*=Ten feet long.

PREPOSITIONS. ¶ 259 (17)—(19).

259 (17). **Kontraŭ** = *Against, opposite.*

Never used in the sense of “by the side of.” Takes the accusative of direction.

Place = *Towards, overlooking, against, facing, opposite.*

EXAMPLE.—*La fenestro kontraŭ la strato* = The window overlooking (towards) the street.

Opposition = *Towards, to, against, from.*

EXAMPLES.—*Ne miru pri mia saceremonieco kontraŭ vi* = Do not wonder at my unceremoniousness towards you. *Vizaĝo kontraŭ vizaĝo* = Face to face. *Voĉdonu por aŭ kontraŭ la proponon* = Vote for or against the proposition. *Kontraŭ min mem, sin turnis mia ruzo* = Against myself my cunning turned (itself) (Hamlet V., 2). *Kien ili iras?* *Kontraŭ Polujon.* = Whither are they going? Against Poland (Hamlet IV., 4). *Mi sidis sur ŝtono, kie mi estis ŝirmata kontraŭ la orienta vento* = I was sitting on a stone where I was sheltered from (against) the east wind.

As a prefix, *kontraŭ* denotes opposition, as:—
Kontraŭdiri = To contradict. *Kontraŭmeti* = To oppose.

259 (18). **Krom** = *Not including, putting aside, apart from.*

Separation, Exclusion = *Besides, except, save, but.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li estas bona, kaj, krom tio, riĉa* = He is good, and, besides that, rich. *Krom esperanto, mi scias la lingvon germanan* = Besides Esperanto, I know the German language. *Mi estas anglo, kaj mi scias nenian lingvon krom mia propra* = I am an Englishman, and I know no language except (but, besides, save) my own (see remarks on *ekster* (para. 259 (11)).

259 (19). **Kun** = *With.*

Never used as “with” in the sense of the instrument or means by which something is done (see **per**, para. 259 (22)).

Connection = *With, to.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li paroladis kun sia amiko* = He was conversing with his friend. *Li fiancigis kun Fraŭlino Berta* = He became engaged to Miss Bertha. *Resti kun*

¶ 259 (19)—(21). PREPOSITIONS.

leono estas danĝere=To stay with a lion is dangerous.
Li promenadis kun sia amiko, kiam mi lin renkontis=
He was walking with his friend when I met him.

Manner=With, of.

EXAMPLES.—*Li parolas kun granda saĝeco*=He speaks with great wisdom. *Li estas homo kun gusto*=He is a man of (with) taste. *Li estis atendata kun granda senpacienco*=He was expected with great impatience.

As a root-word or prefix, *Kunigi*=To connect. *Kunulo*=A companion. *Kunveni*=To come together, to assemble.

259 (20). **Lau**=According to.

Manner=According to, from, in, in accordance with.

EXAMPLES.—*Li agis laŭ sia opinio*=He acted according to his own opinion. *Tiu vazo estas farita laŭ modelo el (or, en) nia muzeo*=That vase has been made according to (from) a model out of (in) our museum. *Li parolas laŭ saĝa maniero*=He speaks in a wise manner. *Ili ĝin faris laŭvice*=They did it in turn. *La pli junu filino estis la plena portreto de sia patro laŭ sia boneco*=The younger daughter was the complete portrait of her father in (according to) her goodness.

Place and Direction=In, along.

EXAMPLES.—*Ni foriris laŭ malsamaj direktoj (or, en diversaj flankoj)*=We went away in a different direction (or, in different ways). *Aleksandro iris laŭ tiu ĉi rivero ĝis li venis al la palaco*=Alexander went along this river till he came to the palace.

N.B.—*Laŭ* is used in such expressions as:—*Laŭlonge*=Lengthways. *Laŭlarĝe*=Across, athwart.

259 (21). **Malgraŭ**=Notwithstanding.

Opposition=In spite of, notwithstanding, for.

EXAMPLES.—*Li sukcesis malgraŭ la malhelpoj*=He succeeded in spite of the hindrances. *Li faris sian eblon, sed malgraŭ ĉio, li ne sukcesis*=He did his best (his utmost), but for all that (notwithstanding) he did not succeed (see remarks on *spite*, para. 259 (30)).

PREPOSITIONS. ¶ 259 (22)–(23).

259 (22). **Per** = *By, by means of.*

Cause = *By, by means of, with, through.*

EXAMPLES.—*Ni flaras per la nazo, ridas per la okuloj, kaj aŭdas per la oreloj*=We smell with the nose, see with the eyes, and hear with the ears. *Li mortigis lin per glavo*=He killed him with a sword. *Tion mi ekeis per mia frato*=I learnt that through my brother.

Manner = *With, by, in.*

Per, used after a passive verb, denotes the means or instrument; **de** denotes the agent.

EXAMPLES.—*La domo, kiu estas aĉetita de mia patro, estas korrita per pajla tegmento*=The house, which was bought by my father, is covered with thatch (a straw roof). *Li tenis lin je la kolo per ambaŭ manoj*=He was holding him by the neck with both hands. *Li iris el la urbo per (or, laŭ) flanko vojeto*=He went out of the town by a by-path. *Mia onklo ne mortis per natura morto*=My uncle did not die (by) a natural death. *Per unu vorto* (or, *unuvorto*), *la ĉambro estis tute bela*=In a word, the room was quite beautiful.

As a prefix or root-word, **per** is not much used. *Perlabori*=To acquire by one's labour, to earn. *Peri*=To mediate, to interpose.

259 (23). **Po** = *At the rate of.*

Po has a distributive sense, and is used generally before numerals (see para. 123). Do not confuse **po** with **por**.

Distribution = *At the rate of, in the proportion of, at.*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi aĉetis krar pomojn po du pencoj*=I bought four apples at the rate of twopence (each). “*Por du pencoj*” would mean “for twopence” (all four for twopence). *Tiu ĉi libro havas sesdek paĝojn; tiul, se mi legos en ĉiu tago po dek kvin paĝoj, mi finos latutan libron en krar tagoj*=This book has 60 pages; therefore, if I (shall) read (in) each day at the rate of 15 pages, I shall finish the whole book in 4 days. *Silko po 5 silingoj por uľno*=Silk at 5 shillings a (for a) yard (ell).

As a prefix, *Poduone*=By half, or, by halves.
Pogrande=Wholesale.

¶ 259 (24) —(25). PREPOSITIONS.

259 (24). **Por** = *For, for the sake (benefit) of, in order to.*

One of the three prepositions that may be used before the infinitive (see remarks on infinitive, para. 177).

Purpose = *In order to, to, for, at, for the purpose of, of, on.*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi manĝas por vivi*=I eat in order to live. *Por mi ĝi havas bonan guston*=To me it has a pleasant (good) taste. *Li sin kuracis por resaniĝi*=He treated himself (took remedies) in order to recover (be restored to health). *La plej bona metodo por ricevi ĝin*=The best way of getting it (in order to get it). *Mi havas multon por fari*=I have much to do. *Por miaj krur infanoj mi aĉetis dek du pomojn*=For my four children I bought twelve apples. *Litoj por du personoj*=Beds for two people. *Tiu ĉi ringo estas por vi*=This ring is for you. *Por ĉio (or, pro ĉio) ni lin dankas*=We thank him for everything. *Por tiu ĉi prezo*=At this price. *Ni devas konfesi por ŝia laido, ke...*=We must confess to her praise that.... *Mi ne havas la tempon por fari tion*=I have not time to do that. *Kiam la momento por foriri alvenis, or, Kiam la momento de foriro alvenis...*=When the moment for departure arrived.... *Tiu libro estas facile komprenebla por ĉiuj*=That book is easily comprehensible by (for) all. *Li aĉtis por unu penco da teo*=He bought a pennyworth (for a penny) of tea.

259 (25). **Post** = *After, behind.*

Is a preposition of place and time. Like its English equivalent "after," care must be taken not to confuse its meaning. For instance, "He came after me" might mean (a) next in succession or behind me, (b) after my arrival, (c) in pursuit of me. In Esperanto we should say:—(a). **Li venis post mi.** (b). **Li venis post mia alveno.** (c). **Li postsekvis min** (see also remarks on **antaŭ**, which is the opposite of **post** (259 (3)).

Place = *After, behind.*

EXAMPLES.—*Post la reĝo venis lia sek�antaro*=After (behind) the king came his suite. “*Da,*” *post ia vorto, montras, ke tiu ĉi vorto havas signifon de mezuro*=“*Da,*” after any (some) word, shows that this word has the signification of measure.

Time = *After, in, by, hence.*

EXAMPLES.—*Resendu al mi la libron post kiam vi estos traleginta ĝin* = Send back to me the book after you have read it through. *Post tri monatoj estos la edzigo* = The wedding will be three months hence (in three months). *Post unu kvarono da horo* = In a quarter of an hour. *Tago(n) post tago* = Day by day.

Manner = *After, by.*

EXAMPLES.—*Ilj sekris unu post la alia* = They followed one after another. *Iom post iom si pli trankruijis* = Little by little she became more tranquil.

As a prefix, *Postreni* = To come after, to succeed. *Posttagmezo* = Afternoon. *Postvivi* = To survive.

259 (26). **Preter** = *Beyond, past, by.*

Differs from **trans** = *across (beyond)*, in that **preter** shows the movement of something passing by, or alongside, something else. **Trans** signifies that something is on the other side of a boundary, or is crossing, or has crossed that boundary (see also **tra**, para. 259 (34)).

Place = *Beside, by, past.*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi iris preter la fenestroj de la domo* = I went by (past, beside) the windows of the house. *Du sinjorinoj iris preter ni, kaj transiris la straton* = Two ladies passed (went) by us, and crossed the street.

Preter, as a prefix, has a similar meaning.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi preteriris la fenestrojn de la domo* = I passed by the windows of the house. *Du sinjorinoj preteriris nin* = Two ladies went by (passed) us. *Mi preterlasis lin* = I let him pass by (I let him beyond). *Li preterlasis la okazon* = He let the occasion (opportunity) pass, or, he missed the opportunity.

259 (27). **Pri** = *Concerning.*

Pri can be translated in various ways.

Reference = *Concerning, respecting, regarding, as regards, with regard to, as to, as for, about, of, on.*

EXAMPLES.—*Pri mia lerteco, mi povas diri...* = Concerning my skill, I can say... (In this sentence it will be observed that any of the above meanings of *pri*

¶ 259 (27)—(29). PREPOSITIONS.

instead of “concerning” will give the exact sense.
Pri tio, ne diru vorton=As to that, don't say a word.
Ne pensu pri ĝi=Do not think of (about) it. *Li parolis pri la pentrarto*=He spoke about (the art of) painting. *Ili miregis pri* (or, *je*) *lia kolero*=They were astounded at (about) his anger. *Sed pri sia fratino, ni poras diri, ke...*=But of her sister, we can say that... *Tiu estas recko pri la politiko*=That is a work on politics.

As a prefix, *Pripensi*=To think about, to reflect.

See para. 258 (a) as regards the use of the prepositional expressions *rilate, koncerne.*

259 (28). **Pro** = Because of.

Pro always relates to the cause or reason for something happening or being done. Do not confuse it with **por**.

Cause = *Because of, by reason of, on account of, for the sake of (cause), through, owing to, from, for, of.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li demandis ŝin, pro kio ŝi ploras*=He asked her for what reason (because of what) she wept (weeps). *Li min mokis pro mia kredemo*=He ridiculed me owing to (for) my credibility. *Li estas mortanta* (or, *ekmortanta*) *pro* (or, *de*) *malsato*=He is dying of (from) hunger. *Ŝi agas pro jaluzemo*=She acts from jealousy. *Li ne povis piediri pro sia malforteco*=He could not walk owing to (on account of, through) his weakness. *Pro tio, mi ne poras akompani vin*=On that account, I cannot accompany you. *Li gin faris pro sia edzino*=He did it because of his wife.

Pro is not used much as a prefix. *Propeti*=To intercede. *Propckulo*=A scapegoat.

259 (29). **Sen** = Without.

Sen always denotes disconnection.

Disconnection = *Without, less, minus.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li alvenis sen sia amiko*=He arrived without his friend. *Sen vi, ni estus kiel sen kapo*=Without you we should be as without a head. *Dek sen tri estas sep*=Ten less (minus) three is seven.

PREPOSITIONS. ¶ 259 (29)—(32).

Sen is frequently used as a prefix, having the same meaning as our English suffix "less," as:—*Sendube*=Doubtless, without doubt. *Sensenta*=senseless, without feeling. *Susentia*=Senseless, without meaning. *Senhonta*=Shameless, without shame.

259 (30). **Spite** = *In spite of*.

Spite, like **malgraū**, marks opposition, but in a stronger sense. **Spite** means "in defiance of all opposition," whilst **malgraū** has more the sense of "notwithstanding."

Opposition = *In defiance of, in spite of, despite*.

EXAMPLES.—*Spite ĉio, kion mi poris diri, li vangfrapis la infanon* = In defiance of all I could say, he slapped the child's face. *Spite ĉiuj miaj penoj por malhelpi lin, li foriris* = Despite all my endeavours to prevent him, he went away.

259 (31). **Sub** = *Under*.

Sub is followed by the accusative of direction. It is the opposite of **sur** = *on*.

Place = *Under, beneath*.

EXAMPLES.—*La hundo kuris sub la tablon por ekkapti la katon, kiu kuſis sub la tablo* = The dog ran under the table to seize the cat that was lying under the table. *Muso estas sub la kanapq* = A mouse is under the sofa.

Manner = *In, on*.

EXAMPLES.—*Io, sub la formo de kato, transkuris la straton* = Something, in the shape of a cat, ran across the street. *Li iris sub la kondiĉo, ke neniu lin akompanu* = He went on (under) the condition that no one should accompany him.

As a prefix, *Subetago* = A basement (floor below). *Submeti* = To put under, to subdue. *Subtegmento* = A garret (under roof).

259 (32). **Super** = *Over, above*.

Is followed by the accusative of direction. It differs from **sur**, since **sur** generally means that something is upon or touching something else, whilst

¶ 259 (32)—(33). PREPOSITIONS.

super signifies that the object is over or above something, but not in actual contact.

Place = Over, above, beyond.

EXAMPLES.—*La aerostato estis vidata super la urbo*=The balloon was seen over the town. *Super mia kapo preterflugis birdo*=A bird flew by, over my head. *Li jetis ŝtonon super la muron, sed li ne havis sufice da forto, kaj la ŝtono falis sur la muron*=He threw a stone over the wall, but he had not sufficient (of) strength, and the stone fell upon (on to) the wall. *La animo de Dio sin portis super la akvo*=The Spirit of God moved (carried itself) upon the face of (above) the waters (water). *Mi konas nenion super tio*=I know nothing beyond that.

Super is the root of *Superi*=To surpass. As a prefix, *Superflu*=To overflow. *Superhoma*=Super-human. *Supervesto*=An overcoat.

259 (33). **Sur** = On, upon, on to.

Is followed by the accusative of direction. See remarks on **sub** and **super**. Do not confound **sur** with **super**.

Place = On, upon (resting on, touching).

EXAMPLES.—*Sur lia rizago mi vidis gojan rideton*=On his face I saw a joyful smile. *Vi trovos la paperojn sur la skribtable*=You will find the papers on the writing-table. *La birdo surflugis sur la tegmenton*=The bird flew on to the roof. *Li metis la ĉapelon sur sian kapon*=He put his (the) hat on his head. *Li staris supre sur la monto, kaj rigardis malsupren sur la kampon*=He stood above on the mountain, and looked down (below) upon the field (note the accusatives of direction, *malsupren* and *kampon*). *Laŭ la komando "tri," vi ekpaſos sur la arbon*=At the command "three" you will shoot at (on to) the tree.

Dependence = On, to.

EXAMPLES.—*Tio ĉi povas tre influi sur la sukceson de nia afero*=This can have much influence on the success of our business. *Sur la danan tronon mi havas rajtojn*=I have rights on (to) the Danish throne. *Li turnis sur sian amikon nenian atenton*=He paid no attention to his friend (lit., He turned on to his friend no attention).

As a prefix, Surmeti=To put on.

259 (34). **Tra** = *Through*.

Tra, trans, and preter. The following compound verbs will best show the meaning of the three prepositions :—

Preterpasi = *To pass by, go beyond.*

Trapasi = *To pass through, to traverse.*

Transpasi = *To pass over, to cross over.*

EXAMPLE.—*Trapasinte la arbaron, li preterpasis la preĝion, kaj tiam transpasis la riveron per la ponto* = Having passed through (traversed) the wood, he passed by the church, and then crossed the river by the bridge.

Place = *Through, across.*

EXAMPLES.—*Li iris tra la amaso, kaj eniris en la domon* = He went through the crowd and entered the house. *Tra la mondo iras forta voko* = Through the world goes a powerful call. *Li estas tiel dikā, ke li ne poras trairi tra nia mallarĝa pordo* = He is so stout (thick) that he cannot go through our narrow door.

Adverb *trae* = right through.

As a prefix, **Trategori** = To read through. **Trapasi** = To pass through, to traverse. **Traguti** = To percolate.

259 (35). **Trans** = *Across; on the other side of, beyond.*

Is followed by the accusative of direction.

Place = *Across, beyond, on the other side of.*

EXAMPLES.—*La hirundo flugis trans la riveron, ĉar trans la rivero sin trovis aliaj hirundoj* = The swallow flew across the river, because on the other side of (beyond) the river were (found themselves) other swallows.

As a prefix, **Transiri** = To go over, to cross. **Transmigri** = To migrate. **Transvivi** = To outlive, survive (a period of time).

ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

260. **English prepositions vary in meaning** considerably, in fact, to express the sense of some of those in common use correctly, five or six or more Esperanto prepositions have to be used to give the different meanings of one English preposition. For instance, "by" has five different meanings in the following expressions:—"He went by the house." "He was hit by a stone." "By his advice." "Little by little." "He stood by the door."

261. The following common English prepositions are given with their Esperanto equivalents and examples of their use, viz., "At, by, for, from, in, of, on, to, with."

At.

261 (a). Represented by:—

Apud, as:—*La gefianēoj staris apud la altaro*=The betrothed stood at the altar.

Če, as:—*Če ĉiu pašo, kiun si faris*=At every step that she took. *Si estas ĉe la pordo*=She is at the door.

De, as:—*Li estas mirigita de la lukso de la kortego*=He was astonished at the luxury of the court.

En, as:—*En la unua tempo*=At (in) the outset. *En Parizo*=At Paris. *En la fino*=At the end. *En la kunveno*=At the meeting. *En la interspaco de...*=At the distance of....

Je, as:—*Je la kvara horo*=At four o'clock.

Po, as:—*Piroj po du penkoj por fungo*=Pears at (at the rate of) twopence a (for a) pound.

Por, as:—*Por tiu ĉi prezo*=At (for) this price.

Pri, as:—*Si ridetis pri (je) lia kolero*=She smiled at (about) his anger.

Sur, as:—*Ili pafisunu sur la alian*=They fired at one another.

Accusative, as:—*Si mokadas lian kredemon*=She jeers at his credulity.

Adverb, as :—*Tuj* = At once. *Almenaŭ* = At least.
Iafoje = At times. *Nune* = At present, etc.

By.

261 (b). Represented by :—

Apud, as :—*Mi volus stari apud la patrino* = I would like to stand by mother.

Apude, as :—*Mi staris apude dum li paroladis* = I stood by (near to, close by) whilst he was talking.

De, as :—*Li estas amata de ĉiuj siaj amikoj* = He is loved by all his friends.

Je, as :—*Mi tenis lin je la kruro per ŝnurego* = I held him by the leg with a rope.

Laŭ, as :—*Mi restadas tie ĉi laŭ la konsilo de mia kuracisto* = I am remaining (staying) here by (according to) the advice of my doctor.

Per, as :—*La infano revenis hejmen tute per si mem* = The child returned home quite by (by means of) itself. *Li eliris el la urbo per flanko vojeto* = He left the town by a by-path.

Post, as :—*Iom post iom, ŝi pli trankviligis* = Little by (after) little she became more tranquil.

Preter, as :—*En tiu ĉi momento iris preter ni du sinjorinoj* = At this moment two ladies passed by (beside) us.

Adverb, as :—*Legante, ni lernas* = By reading, we learn. *Tage* = by day. *Laŭtag* = By the day.

For.

261 (c). Represented by :—

Al, as :—*Ili ekiris al Berlino* (or, *Berlinon*) = They started for Berlin.

Anstataŭ, as :—*Li skribis trion anstataŭ kvaro* = He wrote a three for (instead of) a four.

De, as :—*Tro baldaŭ alrenis la horo de foriro* = Too soon came the hour for (of) departure. *De tri semajnoj mi estas malsana* = For three weeks I have been (am) ill.

Dum, as :—*Dum la tula tago, li restis sola* = For (during) the whole day he remained alone.

Laŭ, as :—*Si estas granda laŭ sia aĝo* = She is big for (according to) her age.

Malgraŭ, as :—*Malgraŭ ĉio tio, li ne estis feliĉa* = For (in spite of) all that, he was not happy.

Por, as :—*Tiu ĉi monujo estas por vi* = This purse is for you. *Li mortis por sia patrujo* = He died for his fatherland.

Pri, as :—*Li petis lin pri helpo*, or, *Li petis helpon de li* = He asked him for help. *Vi ne devas peti pri tio, kio estas nia ŝuldo* = You have not to beg for that which is our obligation.

Pro, as :—*Oni laŭdis lin pro lia boneco* = They praised him for (because of) his goodness. *Li ĝin faris pro plenumo, pro oportuneco* = He did it for (because of) pleasure, for convenience. *La domo estas vendita pro ŝuldoj* = The house was (had been) sold for debt. *Mi volas esti amata pro mi mem, ne pro mia riĉeco* = I want to be loved for myself, not for my wealth.

Pro tio, ke, as :—*Li riproĉis min pro tio, ke mi foriris* = He reproached me for having gone away (lit., because of that that I went away).

Tra, as :—*Li ne povas ĝin porti tra tia interspaco* = He cannot carry it for (through) such a distance.

Accusative, as :—*Li restis sola la tutan tagon* = He remained alone all day long (for the whole day) (see the example under *dum*).

From.

261 (d). Represented by :—

Al, as :—*Ni ne vidas, ĉar la lumo estas kaŝata al ni per la kurtenoj* = We do not see, because the light is hidden from (towards) us by the curtains.

De, as :—*Apartigu la pajlon de la fojno* = Separate the straw from the hay. *De tiu tempo* = From that time. *De lundo ĝis vendredo* = From Monday to Friday.

EI, as :—*Mi konkludis el lia micro, ke li estas ofciero*= I concluded from (out of) his appearance that he was (is) an officer. *Mi desegnis ĝin el memoro*= I drew it from memory.

Kontraŭ, as :—*Tie mi estis ŝirmata kontraŭ la vento*= There I was sheltered from (against) the wind.

Laŭ, as :—*Tiu ĉi figuro estas skulptita laŭ mia modelo*= This figure is sculptured (carved) from (in accordance with) my model.

Per, as :—*Tion mi eksiis per mia frato*= I learnt that from (by means of) my brother.

Pro, as :—*Li tremis pro (or, de) timo*= He trembled from (because of) fear.

Sen, as :—*Ok sen du estas ses*= Two from eight (lit., eight without two) is six.

In.

261 (e). Represented by :—

Ĉe, as :—*Tio donas helpon ĉe la lernado de la vortoj*= That gives help in the learning of the words.

Da, as :—*Tri metroj da longo*= Three mètres in length.

En, as :—*Li estas en la domo*= He is in the house.

Je, as :—*La suna disko ŝajne duobliĝis je grandeco*= The sun's disc apparently became doubled in size.

Laŭ, as :—*Laŭ mia opinio (or, miaopinie) ili estas tute pravaj*= In (according to) my opinion they are quite right. *Li edukiĝis laŭ la timo al Dio*= He was brought up in (according to) the fear of God.

Per, as :—*La ambaŭ estis similaj per la vizaĝo kaj la karaktero*= The two were alike in (by means of) features (the face) and (the) character.

Por, as :—*Li havis sperton por la edukado de li infanoj*= He had experience in (for) the education of children. *Si havis malfacilecon por esprimi siajn pensojn*= She had difficulty in (for) expressing her thoughts.

Post, as :—*Ni foriros post du aŭ tri tagoj* = We are (shall be) going away in (after) two or three days.

Pri, as :—*Lu instruisto poras pri nenio lin instrui* = The teacher can instruct him in nothing.

Sub, as :—*Io, sub la formo de homo, aperas* = Something, in (under) the shape of a man, appears.

Sur, as :—*Promenante sur la strato, mi falis* = Walking in (on) the street, I fell.

Accusative, as :—*Li estis naskita la vintron de 1902* = He was born in the winter of 1902.

Adverb, as :—*Forme* = In shape. *Troe* = In excess. *Vespere* = In the evening. *Alivorte* = In other words, etc.

Of.

261 (f). Represented by :—

Al, as :—*La amo al Dio* = The love of (towards) God. *Ilu timo al la morto estas granda* = Their fear of (to) death is great. *Pro malamo al mi li foriris* = Through hatred of me he went away.

Da, as :—*Granda nombro da ideoj* = A great number of ideas.

De, as :—*La unua vorto de la linio* = The first word of the line. *La amo de Dio* = The love of (from) God. God's love.

Dum, as :—*Vojaĝo dum dekkrin tagoj*, or, *Dekkvintaga vojaĝo* = A journey of (during) fifteen days.

El, as :—*Unu el ni estos elektata* = One of (out of) us will be chosen. *El ĉiuj miaj amikoj, li estas la plej forta* = Of (out of) all my friends, he is the strongest.

En, as :—*La plej granda ĉambro en la domo* = The largest room of (in) the house.

Inter, as :—*La plej malgranda inter ĉiuj arboj en la ĝardeno* = The smallest of (among) all the trees in the garden.

Kun, as :—*Si estas virino kun gusto* = She is a woman of (with) taste.

Por, as :—*Tio estas la pli bona metodo por fari ĝin* = That is the best way of doing it (in order to do it).

Pri, as :—*Ne pensu pri ĝi* = Do not think of (about) it.
Si parolis pri sia frato = She spoke of (about) her brother.

Pro, as :—*Li mortis pro (or, de) malsalo* = He died of (owing to) hunger.

Adjective, as :—*Li estas sperta homo* = He is a man of experience (an experienced man).

On.

261 (g). Represented by :—

Al, as :—*Peston al la tranvilo!* = Plague on the knife !

Ĉe, as :—*Ĉe (or better, sur) la alia flanko de la strato* = On (at) the other side of the street. *Ĉe tio, mi eliris el la ĉambro* = On that, I left the room.

Ĉirkaŭ, as :—*La ralo turniĝis ĉirkaŭ sia akso* = The wheel turned on its axis.

De, as :—*Ĝi dependas de la nombro da rortoj* = It depends on (from) the number of words.

En, as :—*En la tugo difinita* = On (in) the appointed day.

Je, as :—*Mi gratulas vin je (or, pri) via reveno* = I congratulate you on (concerning) your return.

Kun, as :—*Si ĝin donis al mi kun (or, sub) tiu kondiĉo* = She gave it me on (with) that condition.

Post, as :—*Post plua konsideralvo* = On (after) further consideration.

Pri, as :—*Li gratulis min pri mia edzijo* = He congratulated me on (concerning) my marriage.

Pro, as :—*Pro tio mi lin lasis* = On that account I left him.

Sub, as :—*Li vizitis min sub la preteksto, ke li estas parenco* = He visited me on (under) the pretext that he was (is) a relation.

Sur, as :—*La paperoj kuŝas sur la tablo* = The papers are lying on the table.

Accusative, as :— *Li gin donis al mi lundon* = He gave it me on a Monday.

Adjective, as :— *La veturilo estas luebla* = The carriage is on hire (is able to be hired).

Adverb, as :— *Li sturis dekstre* = He stood on the right.
Li gin faris intence = He did it on purpose.
Prunte = On loan.

To.

261 (h). Represented by :—

Al, as :— *Mi iras al Parizo* = I am going to Paris.
Li diris al mi = He said to me.

Ce, as :— *Mi demandis lin, kial li venas ĉe min* = I asked him why he came (comes) to me.

En, as :— *Li ridetis en si mem* = He smiled to (in) himself. *Li reiris en la urbon* = He went back to (into) the town.

Ĝis, as :— *De sabato ĝis mardo* = From Saturday to (till) Tuesday. *Li amis ĝis frenzejo* = He loved to frenzy.

Ke (with a personal pronoun), as :— *Vi bone faris, ke vi venis* = You did well to come (that you came).

Kontraŭ, as :— *Vizaĝo kontraŭ vizaĝo* = Face to (opposite) face.

Kun, as :— *Li fianĉigis kun mia kuzino* = He became engaged (affianced) to my cousin.

Por, as :— *Mi havas multe (or, multon) por fari* = I have much to do (for to do). *Lingvo fremda por ili* = A language strange to (for) them. *Si murmuratis duone por si mem* = She whispered half to (for) herself. *Si estis muta por ĉiu ĉiuj liaj demandoj* = She was dumb to (for) all his questions. *Tia agado estas danĝera por ni* = Such action is dangerous to (for) us.

Pri, as :— *Pri tio lusu min zorgi* = Let me look to that.

Sub, as :—*Sub la sono de muziko*=To (under) the sound of music.

Sur, as :—*La pretendanto ne havas rajtojn sur la posedajon*=The claimant has no rights to (on) the property. *Iri sur la kamparon*=To go to (into) the country.

Adverb, as :—*Li iris dekstren*=He went to the right. *Morte kondamnita*=Condemned to death.

Accusative, as :—*Mi iris Pari:on*=I went to Paris.

With.

261 (i). Represented as under :—

Ĉe, as :—*Por esti ĉe li, mi fordonis ĉion*=To be with (at) him, I gave up everything.

De, as :—*Li eksaltis de surprizo*=He started with (from) surprise.

El, as :—*Kion ni faros el azeno?*=What shall we do (make) with (out of) a donkey?

En, as :—*Lupo persekitis la diablon en la laŭlinlu intenco lin kapti kaj formangi*=A wolf pursued the devil with the praiseworthy intention of capturing him and eating him up.

Je, as :—*Li okupis sin je* (or, *pri*) *mehuniko*=He occupied himself with (concerning, about) mechanics.

Kun, as :—*Li paroladas kun sia amiko*=He is conversing (talking) with (to) his friend.

Laŭ, as :—*Li kuris laŭ granda rapideco*=He ran with great rapidity.

Per, as :—*Li mortigis sin per glavo*=He killed himself with (by means of) a sword.

Pri, as :—*Pri tio, mi havas nenion pordiri*=With regard to (concerning) that, I have nothing to say.

Sub, as :—*Mi ŝin donis al li sub tiu kondiĉo*=I gave it to him with (under) that condition.

Adverb, as :—*Rilate rian leteron*=With reference to (relating to) your letter.

CONJUNCTIONS (Konjunkcioj).

262. **Conjunctions** serve to connect words, phrases, clauses, or sentences.

EXAMPLES.—*Somero kaj Vintro* = Summer and Winter.
Tage aŭ nokte = By day or by night. *Li diras, ke vi estas mallaborema* = He says that you are lazy. *Li estas fiera, sed vi estas humila* = He is proud, but you are humble.

263. Conjunctions are of two kinds, Co-ordinating and Subordinating. They have no influence over the moods of verbs (para. 171 (b)).

264. **Co-ordinating conjunctions** connect two sentences, or two members of a sentence that are independent of each other. These are of five classes :—

- (1). **Copulative**, as :—*kaj* = and ; *kaj...kaj* = both...and.
- (2). **Alternative**, as :—*aŭ* = or ; *aŭ...aŭ* = either...or ; *nek* = nor, *nek.. nek* = neither...nor.
- (3). **Adversative**, as :—*sed* = but.
- (4). **Causative**, as :—*ĉar* = for.
- (5). **Illative**, as :—*tial* = therefore.

265. **Subordinating conjunctions** introduce a clause that is dependent on another. There are six classes, viz., conjunctions of :—

- (1). **Manner or Degree**, as :—*kiel* = as, *krazaŭ* = as if, as though, *ol* = than, etc.
- (2). **Consequence**, as :—*ke* = that, *tiel ke* = so that.
- (3). **Reason or Cause**, as :—*ĉar* = because, since, *tial ke* = inasmuch as, since, etc.
- (4). **Purpose**, as :—*timante ke* = lest, for fear that, fearing that, etc.
- (5). **Condition**, as :—*se* = if, *esceptinte ke* = unless, except, *se nur* = provided that, if only, etc.
- (6). **Concession**, as :—*kvankam* = though, although, *tamen* = however, notwithstanding, *eĉ se* = even if, etc.

266. Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. When there is a diversity of case, it is due to ellipsis (see para. 105).

EXAMPLE.—*Mi vidis lin kaj lian fraton, sed ne lian fratidon*=I saw him and his brother, but not his sister.

A **copulative** or **alternative conjunction** need not be repeated if the sense is clear without it.

EXAMPLES.—*Li kaj lia frato, fratino kaj kuzo venis viziti min*=He and his brother, sister, and cousin came to visit me. *Nek lia edzino, patro, patrino, frato nek fratino estis tie*=Neither his wife, father, mother, brother, nor sister was there.

267. The co-ordinating conjunction is sometimes omitted.

EXAMPLES.—*Li venis, li vidis, li rankis*=He came, he saw, he conquered! *Vi iros, Johano restos tie ĉi*=You will go, John will remain here.

268. Conjunctions and adverbs.—Some conjunctions are partly adverbs and partly conjunctions, more especially those introducing clauses of time or place. Some are also prepositions as well as conjunctions and adverbs, and care must be taken to use the correct Esperanto words in such cases. For instance, in English “before,” “after,” and “since” are prepositions, adverbs, or conjunctions.

Before (prep.) = *Antaŭ*.

EXAMPLE.—*Li staris antaŭ la reĝo*=He stood before the king.

Before (adv.) = *Antaŭe*.

EXAMPLE.—*La reĝo nenium lin vidis antaŭe*=The king never saw him before.

Before (conj.) = *Antaŭ ol*.

EXAMPLE.—*Pripensu antaŭ ol paroli*=Reflect before speaking.

After (prep.) = *Post*, or, *malantaŭ*.

EXAMPLE.—*Post la hundoj, venis la homoj*=After (behind) the dogs came the men.

After (adv.) = *Poste*, or, *malantaŭe*.

EXAMPLE.—*La rajdantoj iris antaŭe, kaj la hundoj venis poste* (or, *malantaŭe*) = The riders went in advance, and the dogs came after.

After (conj.) = *Post kiam*, or, *kiam*.

EXAMPLE.—*Resendu al mi la libron, post kiam* (or, *kiam*) *vi estos ĝin traleginta* = Send me back the book after you (will) have read it through.

Since (prep.) = *De*.

EXAMPLE.—*De la kreo de la mondo* = Since the creation of the world.

Since (adv.) = *De tiu tempo*; *de tiam*; *de kiam*; *de la tempo*, *kiam*.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi lin vidis ieran, sed mi lin ne vidis de tiu tempo* = I saw him yesterday, but I have not seen him since.

Since (conj.) = *Ĉar*.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi deras ĝin furi, ĉar vi insistas* = I must do it, since you insist.

LIST OF CONJUNCTIONS.

268. (a). The following is a list of the principal conjunctions. It is, however, not correct to call them all strictly conjunctions, as some of them, according to the sense in which they are used, are employed also as adverbs or prepositions, and will be found in the lists of adverbs and prepositions in paras. 248 (b) and 259.

Alie = *Otherwise, or, else.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi lin ne vidis, alie mi estus vin sciiginta* = I did not see him, otherwise (else, or) I should have told (informed) you.

Aliparte = *On the other hand, from another cause, from another quarter.*

EXAMPLE.—*Kelkaj personoj diras, ke Johano estas fripono; aliparte, aliu diras, ke li estas nairulo* = Some persons say John is a knave; on the other hand, some say he is a simpleton.

Almenaŭ = *At least.*

EXAMPLE.—*Almenaŭ li proris ĝin fari* = At least he tried to do it.

Ankaŭ = *Also, too, as well* (also adverb).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi ankaŭ ĝin vidis* = I, too, saw it.
Johano kaj ankaŭ Mario estis tie = John and also Mary were there.

Anstataŭ (also preposition) = *Instead of* (para. 259 (2)).

EXAMPLE.—*Laboru anstataŭ dormi* = Work instead of sleeping.

Antaŭ ol (also preposition) = *Before, ere* (para. 259 (4)).

EXAMPLES.—*Antaŭ ol morti, li diris...* = Before dying he said...
Li vespermanĝis, antaŭ ol li foriris = He dined before he went away.
Antaŭ ol ni atingos lin, li estos malproksime = Ere we (shall) reach him, he will be far away.

Aŭ = *Or.*

EXAMPLE.—*Oni ne scias, ĉu li ploras aŭ ridas* = One does not know whether he is weeping or laughing.

Aŭ...aŭ = *Either...or.*

EXAMPLE.—*Aŭ ri aŭ mi devos ĝin fari* = Either you or I must (will have to) do it.

Cetero = *Besides, for the rest.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li ne venis; cetero, se li estus veninta, mi lin ne estus ridinta* (or, *ridus*) = He did not come; besides, if he had (should have) come, I should not have seen him.

Ĉar = *Because, for, since.*

EXAMPLES.—*Tion mi scias, ĉar tie mi estis* = I know that, because (for) I was there.
Ĉar vi ne estis tie, vi ne povas ĝin sci = Since you were not there, you cannot know it.

Ĉiufoje kiam, ĉiun fojon kiam = *Every time when, each time when.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi lin renkontadis ĉiufoje kiam mi iris Londonon* = I met him every time (when) I went to London.

Ĉu = *Whether, or, if* (see remarks on **ĉu** in the list of adverbs, para. 248 (b)).

Ĉu...aŭ = *Whether...or.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi iros ĉu li venos aŭ ne*=I shall go, whether he come (will come) or not.

Ĉu...ĉu = *Whether...whether.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ĉu li skribos, ĉu li ne skribos, mi ne respondos al li*=Whether he writes, whether he does not write, I shall not reply to him.

De nun = *Hereafter, hence, henceforth, from now (now).*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi esperas, ke de nun ni havos pli bonan veteron*=I hope that now (henceforth) we may have better weather.

De l' tempo kiam, or, de kiam = *Since, from the time when.*

EXAMPLE.—*De l' tempo kiam li mortis...*=Since he died...

Des pli = *So much the.* **Des pli** is generally used with **Ju pli** (*which see*), but sometimes alone in reply to questions (para. 112).

EXAMPLES.—*Mi deras averti vin, ke li eble ne estos hejme*=I must warn you, that perhaps he will not be (or, that he may not be) at home. *Des pli bone! mi tute ne deziras lin ruli*=So much the better, I don't at all wish to see him.

Do = *Then, therefore, consequently (argumentative).*

EXAMPLES.—*Mi do poras dormi trankvile*=Then I can sleep tranquilly. *Estis do vidaĵo mirinda!*=It was then a wonderful sight! *Kion do Johano diros?*=What then will John say?

Dum (also preposition) = *While, whilst* (para. 259 (10)).

EXAMPLES.—*Dum li estis parolanta, ni eliris el la ĉambro*=Whilst he was speaking, we went out of the room. *Li povas labori, dum mi estas kriplulo*=He can work, whilst I am a cripple.

Dume = *Meantime, meanwhile (also adverb).*

EXAMPLE.—*Ili ekhruligis la fajron, dume ni pretigis la mangajon*=They lighted the fire, meanwhile we got the food ready.

Eĉ se = *Even if.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ili ne volus iri, eĉ se ili estus invitataj*=
They would not go, even if they were (should be) invited.

Escepte se = *Unless.*

EXAMPLE.—*Escepte se ili rapiilos, ili maltraflos la ragonaron*=Unless they (will) make haste, they will miss the train.

Foje kiam = *Once when, one day when, once upon a time.*

EXAMPLE.—*Foje kiam mi promenis, mi renkontis rian amikon*=Once (one day), when walking, I met your friend.

Ĝis (also preposition) = *Till, until* (para. 259 (14)).

EXAMPLE.—*Atendu ĝis mi revenos*=Wait till I (shall) return.

Jen = *Behold, here* (also an adverb and interjection).

EXAMPLE.—*Jen la malsameco de la rezultato klarigas*=Here the difference of the result is explained.

Jen...jen = *Now...now, sometimes...at other times.*

EXAMPLE.—*Jen li kuras rapide, jen li haltas!*=Now he runs rapidly, now he stops!

Ju malpli...des malpli = *The less...the less* (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—*Ju malpli li laboras, des malpli li perlaboras*=The less he works, the less he earns.

Ju malpli...des pli = *The less...the more.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ju malpli li trinkas, des pli li manĝas*=The less he drinks, the more he eats.

Ju pli...des malpli = *The more...the less.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ju pli ni trinkas, des malpli ni manĝas*=The more we drink, the less we eat.

Ju pli...des pli = *The more...the more.*

Ju pli bona vi estas, des pli ri estos amata=The better you are, the more you will be loved.

Jus = *Just, this moment* (also adverb).

EXAMPLE.—*Ni jus eliris, kiam li alvenis* = We had just gone out, when he arrived.

Kaj = *And*.

EXAMPLE.—*Vi kaj mi doras ĵin furi* = You and I must do it.

Kaj...kaj = *Both...and*.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi vidis tie kaj Johanon kaj Georgon* = I saw both John and George there.

Kaj ceteraj = *And the rest, et cetera* (commonly written k.c.).

Kaj tiel plu = *And so forth, and so on* (commonly written k.t.p.).

Ke = *That*. Be careful not to use **ke** for the pronouns **kio**, **kiu**, **tio**, or **tiu** = *that*.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi esperas, ke tio, kion vi havas en la mano ne estos* (or, *estas*) *veneno insekteto* = I hope that that you have in your (the) hand is not a poisonous insect. *Mi pensas, ke tiu vorto estas malguste tradukita* = I think that that word is wrongly translated.

Kial = *Wherefore, why* (para. 150) (also adverb).

EXAMPLE.—*Demandu lin, kial li tion faras* = Ask him why he does that.

Kiam = *When, as, after* (**kiam** = *after*, when used with the English pluperfect) (para. 151).

EXAMPLES.—*Pluvis forte, kiam ni atingis (alproksimi-
gis) la lagon* = It rained heavily when (as) we reached the lake. *Kiam mi estis kolektinta la sumon, mi aĉetis
novan libron* = After (when) I had collected the amount, I bought a new book.

Kiam ajn = *Whenever* (para. 145).

EXAMPLE.—*Li balbutadis, kiam ajn li parolis* = He stammered whenever he spoke.

Kie = *Where* (para. 152) (also adverb).

EXAMPLE.—*Sciigu min, kie li estas* = Tell (inform) me where he is.

Kie ajan = *Wherever* (para. 145).

EXAMPLE.—*Mi lin trovos, kie ajan li estas*=I shall find him wherever he is.

Kiel = *As* (in comparison) (para. 153).

EXAMPLE.—*Li estas tiel forta, kiel vi*=He is as strong as you.

Kiel ajan malmulte = *However little*.

EXAMPLE.—*Kiel ajan malmulte vi volos* (or, *volas*)...= However little you may (will) wish...

Kiel ankaŭ = *As also, as well as*.

EXAMPLE.—*Mia patro, kiel ankaŭ mi, pensas ke...* = My father, as well as I, thinks that...

Kiel eble plej baldaŭ = *As soon as possible* (lit., as possible, most soon). **Kiel eble plej** should be used as follows:—

EXAMPLES.—*Kiel eble plej frue*=As early as possible. *Kiel eble plej rapide*=As quickly as possible. *Sendu lin al mi, kiel eble plej baldaŭ*=Send him to me as soon as possible.

Kiel ekzemple = *As for example*.

EXAMPLE.—*Oni ne manĝas kelkajn birdojn, kiel ekzemple, aglojn, akcipitrojn, vulturojn, cikoniojn, kaj aliajn*=People do not eat some birds, as, for example, eagles, hawks, vultures, storks, and others.

Kio ajan okazos = *At all events* (lit., whatever shall happen).

EXAMPLE.—*Mi venos morgaŭ, kio ajan okazos*=I shall come to-morrow at all events.

Kondiĉe, ke = *On condition that*.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi viu forpermesos, kondiĉe, ke vi revenu postmorgaŭ*=I will give you leave of absence, on condition that you return the day after to-morrow.

Konsente, ke = *It being agreed that*.

EXAMPLE.—*Mi iros, konsente, ke vi ankaŭ tie estu*=I will go, it being understood that (agreed that) you also be there.

Kontraŭe = *On the contrary* (also adverb).

EXAMPLE.—*Vi preferas la borajon, mi, kontraŭe, preferas la ŝafajon* = You prefer beef, I, on the contrary, prefer mutton.

Krom tio = *Besides, moreover, apart from that.*

EXAMPLE.—*Si estis, krom tio, tre bela knabino* = She was, besides (moreover), a very beautiful girl.

Krom tio, ke = *Apart from, putting aside the fact that...*

EXAMPLE.—*Krom tio, ke li ne povas skribi, li ne povis eĉ legi* = Apart from his not being able to write, he could not even read.

Kun la kondiĉo, ke = *On (with) the condition that...*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi pruntis al ti la libron kun la kondiĉo, ke li ĝin redonu al mi postmorgaŭ* = I lent him the book on the condition that he should (is to) return it to me the day after to-morrow.

Kvankam = *Although, though.*

EXAMPLES.—*Krankam ti estas riĉa, tamen li ne estas felika* = Although he is rich, yet he is not happy.
Krankam mi konsentas viajn opiniojn, tamen mi ne povas akordiĝi kun ri = Though I agree with your opinion, I cannot nevertheless be in accord with you.

Kvazaŭ = *As if, as though (also adverb).*

EXAMPLE.—*Li staris, kvazaŭ li ridus teruraĵon* = He stood as if he saw a terrible object.

Laŭ tio...se = *According as.*

EXAMPLE.—*Laŭ tio, se vi estos atenta aŭ maldiligenta, ja ternerestra vin buñdos aŭ mallañdos* = According as you are (will be) attentive or idle, the schoolmaster will praise or blame you.

Malgraŭ ĉio = *In spite of all (everything), after all.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li foriris, malgraŭ ĉio, kion mi diris* = He went away in spite of all I said.

Malgraŭ ke = *Notwithstanding that.*

EXAMPLE.—*Malgraŭ ke mi ne havis surveston, mi eliris* = Notwithstanding that I had no overcoat, I went out.

Malpli...ol = *Less...than* (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—*Li estas malpli kuraĝa, ol lia frato* = He is less courageous than his brother.

Ne nur, ne sole = *Not only*.

EXAMPLE.—*Ne nur li stelis, sed li mortigis ankaŭ* = He not only stole, but he committed murder (murdered) also.

Nek = *Nor* (para. 59 (c)).

EXAMPLE.—*Li ne estis tie, nek mi* = He was not there, nor I.

Nek...ankaŭ = *Nor...also, nor...too, nor...either*.

EXAMPLE.—*Vi ne estis tie, nek mi ankaŭ* = You were not there, nor I either.

Nek...nek = *Neither...nor* (para. 59 (c)).

EXAMPLE.—*Nek vi nek mi estis tie* = Neither you nor I was there.

Ol = *Than* (para. 112).

EXAMPLES.—*Pli bone malfrue, ol neniam* = Better late than never. *La libro ne kostos pli ol tri ŝilingojn* = The book will not cost more than three shillings.

Per (or, pro) tio, ke = *In that, since*.

EXAMPLE.—*La akvo diferencas de la glacio per tio, ke tiu estas fluida, kaj tiu ĉi malfluida* = Water differs from ice, in that the former is fluid and the latter solid.

Pli...ol = *More...than* (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—*Li estas pli fortia, ol vi* = He is stronger than you.

Plie = *Moreover, further* (also adverb).

EXAMPLE.—*Plie, mi diras al vi, ke...* = Moreover, I tell you that...

Por ke = *In order that, so that, to the end that*. **Por ke** is always followed by the Imperative mood, because, when used, this expression implies order (see remarks on Imperative, para. 201).

EXAMPLES.—*Por ke mi rekompencu vin, konvenas, ke ri gin meritu*=In order that I may recompense you, it is proper (fitting) that you merit it. *Mi volas ĉion fari, por ke ri estu kontenula je mi*=I wish to do everything, so that you may be satisfied with me, or, I will do everything to please you.

Post kiam = After.

EXAMPLE.—*Post kiam la suno subiris, ni revenis hejmen*=After the sun set we returned home.

Same kiel = As, just as (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—*Same kiel la patrino amas sian infanon, tiel la besto amas sian idon*=Just as the mother loves her child, so does the animal love its offspring.

Se = If.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi gin faros, se mi povos*=I shall do it if I can (shall be able). *Mi kunprenos ombrelon, en la okazo, se pluvos*=I shall take an umbrella in case it should (will) rain.

Se ne = If not, otherwise, lest.

EXAMPLE.—*Lernu vian lecionon, se ne, mi vin vergos!*
= Learn your lesson, otherwise I shall cane you !

Se nur = If only, provided that.

EXAMPLE.—*Vi vidos Johanon, se nur vi alvenos frue*
= You will see John, provided that you (will) arrive early.

Se okaze = If perchance, in case, in the event of.

EXAMPLE.—*Se okaze ni venus malfrue, Johano ne estus tie ĉi*=If perchance you should come late, John would not be here.

Se tamen = If however, if still, if though, if notwithstanding.

EXAMPLE.—*Se tamen, vi ne povos veni morgaŭ matene, venu vespero*=If however, you are not (will not be) able to come to-morrow morning, come in the evening.

Sed = But.

EXAMPLE.—*Li legas, sed ne komprenas tion, kion li legas*=He reads, but does not understand what he reads.

Sed ankaŭ = *But also.*

EXAMPLE.—*Si ne nur donis al mi hundon, sed ankaŭ ĉevalon* = She not only gave me a dog, but also a horse.

Sed eĉ = *But even.*

EXAMPLE.—*Nc sole viroj* (or, *plenaguloj*), *sed eĉ infanoj estis tie* = Not only men, but even children were there.

Sekve = *Consequently.*

EXAMPLE.—*Ekpluvis, sekre ni revenis domen* = It began to rain, consequently we returned home.

Tamen = *However, yet, still, nevertheless, but.*

EXAMPLES.—*Krankam li estas riĉa, tamen li ne estas felīca* = Although he is rich, yet (still) he is not happy.
Mi ne povis veni hodiaŭ, tamen mi venos morgaŭ = I could not come to-day, however, I will come to morrow.
Krankam li perdis monon, tamen li ne mortis malriĉulo = Although he lost money, nevertheless he did not die a poor man.

Tia, ke = *Such that.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mia teruro estis tia, ke mi ne povis elparoli unu vorton* = My terror was such, that I could not articulate (utter) a single word.

Tial = *So, therefore* (para. 150) (also adverb).

EXAMPLE.—*Li rifuzis labori, tial mi eksigis lin* = He refused to work, therefore (so) I dismissed him.

Tial, ke = *Inasmuch as, since, because.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi vin ne malluđas, tial, ke tio ne estis via eraro* = I do not blame you, inasmuch as (since) it (that) was not your mistake.
 N.B.—Do not confuse **tial, ke** with **tiel ke** = *so that.*

Tiam, kiam = *Then when, when* (para. 151).

EXAMPLE.—*Tiam, kiam mi estis riĉa, mi ne estis felīca, or, Kiam mi estis riĉa, tiam mi ne estis felīca* = When I was rich, (then) I was not happy.

Tiamaniere, ke = *In such a manner that, so that.*

EXAMPLE.—*Parolu tiamaniere* (or, *tiele*), *ke mi povu vin kompreni* = Speak in such a manner (so) that I can (may be able to) understand you.

Tiel ke = *So that.*

EXAMPLE.—*E'stis muro inter ili, tiel ke ili ne povis vidii nuu ha atian* = There was a wall between them so that they could not see one another.

Tiel...ke = *So...that.*

EXAMPLE.—*Li estas tiel bona, ke li ĉion pardonas* = He is so good that he pardons everything.

Tiel...kiel = *As...as* (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—*Si estas tiel bona, kiel si estas bela* = She is as good as she is beautiful.

Timante, ke, or, pro la timo, ke = *For fear that, fearing that, lest.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi tigon diris, timante, ke li venos* = I said that, fearing that (lest) he would (will) come. The future is used here, “What is my fear?” I fear he will perhaps come.

Tio estas (t.e.) = *That is, that is to say, to wit.* The initial letters are nearly always used, as we say (*id est* = i.e.).

Tiom...ke = *So many...that, so much...that.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi haris tiom da pomoj, ke mi devis ilin fordoni* = I had so many apples that I was obliged to give them away.

Tiom...kiom = *As much...as, as many...as.*

EXAMPLE.—*Donu al mi tiom, kiom vi povas* = Give me as much (many) as you can.

Tuj kiam = *As soon as, immediately when, directly.*

EXAMPLE.—*Mi fermis la pordon, tuj kiam li eliris* = I shut the door as soon as (directly) he went out.

INTERJECTIONS AND EXCLAMATIONS.

269. **Interjections** (*interjekcioj*) vary so considerably in force and meaning in different languages that it is impossible to translate some of them. If we translated our English interjections literally into Esperanto, many of them would have no meaning to a foreigner. The following short list appears at present to be in use, but, no doubt, as the language becomes more widely spoken, more will be added.

Adiaŭ ! = *Adieu ! farewell, good-bye !*

Ah ! Aha ! = *Ah ! hah !*

Aj ! = *An exclamation of disgust.*

Antaŭen ! = *Forward !*

Atentu ! = *Look out ! Take care !*

Aŭskultu ! = *Hark ! hist !*

Bis ! = *Encore !*

Bone ! = *Good !*

Bonvenu ! = *Welcome !*

Brave ! = *Bravo ! capital ! splendid !*

Certe ! = *Certainly !*

Ĉu estas eble ! = *Is it possible !*

Ĉu ne ! = *Isn't it !*

Ĉu ne vere ! = *Is it not so !*

Dio gardu ! = *God save us !*

Dio mia ! = *God bless me !*

Dio nin savu ! = *God save us !*

Dio volu ! = *Would to God ! may God !*

Efektive ! = *Really !*

Fi ! = *Fie ! for shame !*

For ! = *Away ! be off !*

For de tie ĉi ! = *Begone ! be off ! away !*

Ha ! = *Ah ! ha !*

Haltu ! = *Stop !*

He ! = *Halloo ! hey !*

Helpon ! Helpu ! = *Help !***Ho !** = *O ! oh ! ho !***Ho ve !** = *Alack ! alas ! oh dear ! welladay !***Hontu !** = *For shame !***Hura !** = *Hurrah ! hu:za !***Ja !** = *Indeed !***Jen !** = *Lo ! there ! behold ! see !***Kia !** = *What !***Kial do !** = *Why indeed ! why then !***Kiel abomene !** = *How abominable !***Kion !** = *What ! Kion do !* = *What then !***Kompreneble !** = *Of course !***Kurâge !** = *Courage !***Ne !** = *No !***Nu !** = *Well !***Nu do !** = *Well then !***Oho !** = *O, ho !***Paciense !** = *Be quiet ! Patience !***Peston !** = *Plague on't !***Pluen** = *Proceed ! Go on !***Pro Dio !** = *For God's sake !***Rapidu !** = *Quick !***Silentu !** = *Hist ! hush !***Ve !** = *Woe !***Vere !** = *Really ! True !***Verege !** = *Very true !***Vivu !** = *Long live !*

269. (*a*). When English adjectives are used as interjections, the adverbial form in E is used, because there is neither noun nor pronoun with which they can agree, as :—*Neeble !* = *Impossible !* (para. 245).

269. (*b*). Some writers use the interjection **fi** as a prefix to denote badness of quality or condition, as :—*Fićevalo* = A sorry nag. *Fibušo* = A snout. (See suffix **-ač-**, paras. 54, 270).

REMARKS ON THE SUFFIXES AND PREFIXES.

270. Suffix -AC-. (Ex. 19).

Denotes badness of quality or condition.

EXAMPLES.—*Hundaco*=a cur. *Capelaco*=a shabby hat.

270 (1). Suffix -AD-. (Ex. 19).

(a). This suffix marks that an action is being continued or is habitual. It marks an action of some duration, not momentary. Thus, **pafó**=*a shot from a gun*, the gun is fired, and the action is over; but **pafado**=*a fusillade*, a continuance of shots of more or less duration.

Thus *dancado*=dancing, *deseñando*=designing, drawing, *kantado*=singing, *legado*=reading, *pentrado*=painting, *skulptado*=(the art of) sculpture, *skribado*=writing. These words do not signify momentary acts, but habitual actions; in fact, they are arts or practices, as the art of painting, singing, etc. *Kanto*=A song. *Sia kanto plaças al mi*=Her song pleases me. *Sia kantado éarmas min*=Her singing charms me.

(b). If we wish to speak of the faculties of hearing, smelling, touching, thought, feeling, will, we say **aúdado**, **flarado**, **palpado**, **pensado**, **sentado**, **volido**; but if we speak of isolated acts of such faculties, we say **aúdo**, **flaro**, **palpo**, **penso**, **sento**, **volo**.

(c). Sometimes the word **arto** is used when we wish to specify that some **-ado** is an art.

EXAMPLES.—*Danc-arto* (*dancado*)=the art of dancing, *kant-arto* (*kantado*)=the art of singing, *pentr-arto* (*pentrado*)=the art of painting.

N.B.—The hyphens are not necessary.

(d). The difference in meaning of words with and without the suffix is seen in such words as:—

Movo=a motion, *movado*=movement (general), *progreso*=a step of progress, *progresado*=progress (general), *parolo*=word (spoken), *parolado*=speech, discourse, *fumo*=smoke, *fumado*=smoking (habit of smoking tobacco), *verko*=a work (literary or musical), *verkudo*=composition (lit.).

(e). In the verb itself we use this suffix to show that the action is not merely momentary, but is being *continued*, *repeated*, or is *habitual*; an aspect of the verb which is, in English, often expressed by the words "keep on," "used to," etc.

EXAMPLES.—*Mi saltadis la tutan tagon de loko al loko*=I jumped (about) all day long from place to place (kept on jumping). *Viziti*=To visit. *Vizitxdi*=To frequent, to haunt.

(f). Do not therefore use *-AD-* without thinking of its significance, or your meaning may be misunderstood; so carefully avoid using it merely for the sake of euphony.

271. Suffixes **-AJ-** and **-EC-**. (Ex. 20).

(a). *-AJ-* denotes that the idea contained in the root has a certain quality, or is something made or derived from the idea. It gives a *concrete* quality to the root.

EXAMPLES.—*Cusi*=to hunt, *casujo*=game. *Armi*=to arm, *armajo*=armour. *Bovo*=an ox, *bovajo*=beef. *Ovo*=an egg, *ovajo*=an omelet.

(b). *-EC-* denotes an *abstract* quality, similar to the English suffixes *-nce*, *-ney*, *-ness*, *-tude*, *-ity*.

EXAMPLES.—*Pura*=clean, *pureco*=purity, cleanliness. *Felica*=happy, *feliçeco*=happiness, felicity. *Sen*=without, *seneco*=dearth, want. *Kuraja*=courageous, *kurajeco*=fortitude. *Danki*=to thank, *dankeco*=gratitude, thankfulness. *Rica*=rich, *riçeco*=wealth.

(c). Both suffixes apply to good or bad qualities. They can be used as roots, as **ajo**=a thing, **eco**=a quality, a distinctive mark.

(d). A comparison of the following words will best illustrate their meaning.

Amiko=a friend, *amikajo*=a friendly act, *amikeco*=friendship. *Bona*=good, *bonajo*=a good (action), *boneco*=goodness.

Fortika=solid, robust, *fortikajo*=a stronghold, *fortikeco*=robustness. *Mola*=soft, *molaĵo*=a soft substance, pulp, *moleco*=softness. *Sprita*=witty, *spritajo*=a witticism, *spriteco*=wittiness. *Malsprita*=dull, stupid, *malspritajo*=a stupidity. a *bêtise*, *malspriteco*=stupidity, a state of silliness.

(e). To express an idea itself, namely, one that is neither concrete (-*AJ*-) nor abstract (-*EC*-), we add only the grammatical termination to the root. For instance, **la bono**=*the good*, good (itself), and from this arises **bonaĵo**=*a good action*, or, *something good*, the abstract quality being **boneco**=*goodness*. Again, **acido**=*an acid*, **acidajo**=*an acid thing*, something which has an acid taste, **acideco**=*acidity*. So, **hero**=*a hero*, **heroajo**=*an exploit* (*something heroic*), **heroeco**=*heroism*.

EXAMPLES.—*La bono, kiun vi faras estas rimarkinda, ĉar via boneco ĉiam instigadas vin fari bonaĵon*=The good that you are doing is remarkable, for your goodness is always prompting you to do kind acts. *Vitriolo estas acido, sed tinaĝro estas nur acidajo, krunkam la ambaŭ posedas acidecon*=Vitriol is an acid, but vinegar is only a sour fluid, although both possess acidity. *La heroo de la heroajo montris grandan heroecon*=The hero of the exploit showed great heroism. *La amiko montras sian amikecon per amikajoj*=A friend shows his friendship by friendly acts.

272. Suffixes -AN-, -IST-, -ESTR-, -UL-. (Ex. 21).

These four suffixes relate to individuals. When combined with a root, one or other of them serves to show a person's country, religion, profession, occupation, character, etc. Each has its distinct meaning, and care must be taken not to confuse them. The feminine suffix -*IN*- is added to denote females.

(a). -*AN*- denotes a member of something, such as a club, society, etc.; an inhabitant of a place or country; a partisan; an adherent to a party, faction, religion, etc.

EXAMPLES.—*Klubo*=a club, *klubano*=a member of a club. *Senato*=senate, *senatano*=a senator. *Ameriko*=America, *amerikano*=an American. *Londono*=London, *londonano*=a Londoner. *Parizo*=Paris, *parizano*=a Parisian. *Urbo*=a town or city, *urbano*=a townsman or citizen. *Kamparo*=country(rural), *kamparano*=a countryman. *Vilaĝo*=a village, *vilajano*=a villager. *Insulo*=an island, *insulano*=an islander. *Kristo*=Christ, *kristano*=a Christian. *Partio*=a party, *partiano*=a partisan.

(b). The suffix *-AN-* itself is used as a root for *ano*=a member, **anaro**=a band (a collection of members of something).

(c). *-IST-*, like the English affix *-ist*, denotes a person following a profession or trade, or some occupation by which he gains his livelihood, or who is habitually engaged in science, art, etc., or in some habitual occupation not necessarily for the sake of gain. In short, it denotes *occupation*.

EXAMPLES.—*Juĝi*=to judge, *juĝisto*=a judge. *Kuraci*=to treat the sick, *kuracisto*=a doctor. *Drogo*=a drug, *drogisto*=a druggist. *Maro*=sea, *maristo*=a sailor (by occupation). *Rabi*=to rob, *rabisto*=a robber. *Šteli*=to steal, *štelisto*=a thief. *Pentri*=to paint, *pentristo*=a painter (art). *Kolorigi*=to colour, paint, *kolorigisto*=a painter (house). *Servi*=to serve, *servisto* or *servistino*=servant (male or female). *Astrologio*=astrology, *astrologiisto*, or, *astrologo*=an astrologer.

(d). *-IST-* is used only when there is some root of a verb, noun, or adjective which gives an idea of something that may apply to a trade, occupation, etc., as shown in the above examples. When there is no such root, Esperanto provides the word, as:—**Tajloro**=a tailor, **lakeo**=a lackey, or valet; but when there are such words as **kudri**=to sew, **šuo**=a shoe, **boto**=boot, the affix denoting the occupation is, of course, used, viz., **kudristino**=a seamstress or dressmaker, **šuisto**=a shoemaker, **botisto**=a bootmaker.

(e). When the person is engaged in a temporary occupation, or is not a professional, but an amateur, a participle is often used.

EXAMPLES. — *Juganto*=a judge (of something), *jugisto*, a judge (by occupation or profession). *Rajdanto*=a rider, *rajdisto*=a jockey. *Amanto*=a lover, *amisto*=a lover, a sweetheart, a gallant. *Fotografanto*=a photographer, one who is now photographing, *fotografisto*=a professional photographer. *Laboranto*=a person working, *laboristo*=a laborer, or man working for a livelihood.

(f). -ESTR- denotes a person who is a chief, leader, ruler, principal, or head of a State, party, body, etc. In the same way as the suffix -AN- denotes a member of some profession, body, etc., so -ESTR- would designate the head of it, as:—**Urbo**=a city, **urbano**=citizen, **urbestro**=a mayor, a chief citizen.

EXAMPLES. — *Imperio*=an empire, *imperiistro*=an emperor, *imperiestrino*=an empress. *Regno*=(the) State, *regnestro*=a ruler, head of (the) State. *Sipo*=a ship, *sipestro*=a captain of a merchant vessel, a skipper (it is better to use *kapitano* for the captain of a man-of war). *Lernejo*=a school, *lernestro*=a schoolmaster, head master (an under master or teacher would be *instruisto*). From *polico*=police, we get *policano*=a policeman (a member of the police force), *policisto*=an officer of police (one who has made the police his profession), *policestro*=chief of police.

(g). **Cefo**=chief, head, is used in a few words as a prefix with a similar meaning to -ESTR-.

EXAMPLES. — *Episkopo*=a bishop, *cefepiskopo*=archbishop. *Angelo*=an angel, *cefangelo*=archangel.

(h). -UL- denotes a person characterised by the idea contained in the root. By it we express that an individual is “rich,” “poor,” “just,” “good,” etc.

EXAMPLES. — *Rica*=rich, *riculo*=a rich man. *Malrica*=poor, *malriculo*=a poor man, a pauper. *Justa*=just, *justulo*=a just or righteous man. *Bona*=good, *bonulo*=a good man. *Bela*=beautiful, *belulino*=a beauty, a beautiful woman. *Paco*=peace, *paculo*=a man of peace. *Babili*=to babble, chatter, *babilulo*=a babbler, chatterbox. *Juna*=young, *junulo*=a youth, *junulino*=a young woman. *Avara*=avaricious, *avarulo*=a miser.

(i). Primary words can also be used as roots when applicable.

EXAMPLES.—*Tie*=there, *tieulo*=an aborigine (a man of there). *Tiam*=then, at that time, *tiamulo*=a contemporary (a man of that time). *Kun*=with, *kunulo*=a companion (a person with you).

(j). Since words like **legi**=to read, **viziti**=to visit, etc., etc., do not apply to the character, state, etc., of a person, we do not use **-UL-** but a participial termination to describe a person.

EXAMPLES.—*Leganto*=a reader (who is reading), *leginto*=a reader (who has read), *legonto*=a reader (who is about to read). *Vizitanto*=a visitor.

273. Suffixes -AR- and -ER-. (Ex. 22).

Aro=a collection, and **ero**=an item; therefore **aro da eroj** might be termed “a collection of items.”

(a). -AR- denotes a re-union or a collection of the idea contained in the root.

EXAMPLES.—*Vorto*=a word, *vortaro*=a collection of words, a dictionary. *Homo*=a man, *homaro*=mankind. *Arbo*=a tree, *arbaro*=a wood, *arbarello*=a small wood, clump of trees. *Arbeto*=shrub, small tree, *arbetaro*=shrubbery, grove. *Insulo*=an island, *insularo*=an archipelago. *Vagono*=a (railway) carriage, *vayonaro*=a train. *Sekvanto*=a follower, *sekvantaro*=suite, cortège, retinue. *Nomo*=a name, *nomaro*=list of names, an index. *Stupo*=a step, *stuparo*=a staircase, *stupetaro*=a ladder, succession of small steps. *Aristokrato*=an aristocrat, *aristikrataro*=(the) aristocracy. **Aro**=a collection, a flock, a herd; but if we wish to describe the animals, we can add the suffix to the name, as:—*Bruto*=cattle, *brutaro*=a herd of cattle. *Saflo*=a sheep, *safaro*=a flock of sheep. *Abelo*=a bee, *abelaro*=a swarm of bees.

(b). -ER- denotes one of many objects of the same kind, a small fragment.

EXAMPLES.—*Sablo*=sand, *sablero*=a grain of sand. *Hajlo*=hail, *hajlero*=a hailstone. *Fajro*=fire, *fajrero*=a spark. *Mono*=money, *monero*=a coin. *Polvo*=dust, *polvero*=an atom or speck of dust. *Pulvo*=gunpowder, *pulvero*=a grain of gunpowder. *Sukero*=sugar, *sukerero*=a lump of sugar.

274. **Suffixes -ČJ- and -NJ-.** (Ex. 23).

(a). -ČJ- is an affectionate diminutive to the Christian name of a man. It is substituted for one or more letters of the name.

EXAMPLES.—*Vilhelmo* = William, *Vilhelčjo* = Willie, *Vilhečjo* = Will, *Vilčjo* = Billy, *Vičjo* = Bill, *Petro* = Peter, *Pečjo* = Pete, *Johano* = John, *Johančjo* = Johnnie, *Jocjo* = Jack, *Nikolao* = Nicholas, *Nikoltjo* = Nickie, *Nikoijo*, *Nikijo*, or *Nicjo* = Nick, *Ernesto* = Ernest, *Ernečjo*, *Ernčjo*, or *Erčjo* = Ernie. *Patro* = father, *patreto*, *pačjo* = papa.

(b). -NJ- is a similar diminutive for a female Christian name.

EXAMPLES.—*Mario* = Mary, *Marinjo* = Molly, *Manjo* = Polly, *Klaro* = Clara, *Klanjo* = Clarric, *Sofio* = Sophia, *Sonjo* = Sophy, *Patrimento*, *patrinjo*, *panjo* = mamma, mammy, ma.

275. **Suffixes -EBL-, -EM-, -IND-.** (Ex. 24).

(a). These three suffixes, when used as roots, form the words **ebla** = possible; **emo** = propensity, tendency; **indo** = worth, merit, value. As suffixes they are mostly used to form adjectives or adverbs, and the following three, from **kredi** = to believe, will give an idea of their different shades of meaning. **Kredetbla** = credible, possible of belief, believable; **kredema** = credulous, having a tendency to believe; **kredinda** = worthy of belief.

(b). -EBL- denotes possibility, or what is likely to happen, similar to the English suffix **-able**, **-ible**.

EXAMPLES.—*Pagi* = to pay, *pagebla* = payable. *Fleksi* = to bend, *fleksebla* = flexible. *Rompi* = to break, *rompebla* = breakable. *Fidi* = to rely upon, *fidebla* = reliable. *Kompreni* = to understand, *komprenetbla* = comprehensible, *komprenetbla* = of course, comprehensibly.

(c). Do not confuse -EBL- with -EM- or -IND- in words which in English end in **-able** or **-ible**, but have two distinct meanings. For instance, from **senti** = to feel, to experience, we get **sentebla** = susceptible or sensible, and also **sentema** = susceptible or sensitive. "Readable" may mean either "able

to be read" or "worth reading." In Esperanto there is no such confusion, for **legebla** = readable, **legible**, but **leginda** = readable, worth reading. Hence we see that **-EBL-** must always denote possibility. It is possible to love or to honour all persons, whether they merit such terms or not; but when, in English, we talk of a lovable or honourable individual, we do not imply possibility, but worthiness; therefore, in Esperanto, **aminda** = lovable, and **honorinda** = honourable. **-EBL-** is sometimes used for the infinitive.

EXAMPLES.—*Tiu ĵ ĉi vortoj ne estas troveblaj en la vortaro*=These words are not to be found (findable) in the dictionary. *Tia amo estas malfacile imagebla*=It is difficult to imagine such love.

(d). **-EM-** denotes propensity, tendency, inclination, disposition, similar to the English suffix **-ful**.

EXAMPLES.—*Paco*=peace, *pacema*=peaceful. *Helpi*=to help, *helpema*=helpful, obliging. *Trompi*=to deceive, *trompema*=deceitful, *trompemo*=duplicity. *Servi*=to serve, *servema*=serviceable, obliging, *servemo*=serviceableness. *Labori*=to work, *laborema*=laborious. *Pura*=clean, pure, *purema*=cleanly, *purigbla*=cleanable. *Babili*=to chatter, *babilema*=talkative, chattering. *Koleri*=to be angry, *kolerema*=irascible, *ekkolerema*=quick-tempered. *Dormi*=to sleep, *dormema*=disposed to sleep, sleepy, drowsy.

(e). Do not confuse **-EM-** with **-IND-** (or with **-AM-** (love) in compound words). For instance:—

Envii=to envy, *enviema*=envious, inclined to envy, *envienda*=enviable, worthy or deserving of envy. *Honti*=to be ashamed, *hontema*=bashful, inclined to be ashamed, *hontemo*=bashfulness, *hontinda*=shameful, deserving of shame, impudent. *Dormi*=to sleep, *dormema*=drowsy, *dormama*=fond of sleep.

(f). **-IND-** denotes worthiness, worthy of.

EXAMPLES.—*Inda*=worthy, *malinda*=unworthy. *Laŭdi*=to praise, *laŭdinda*=praiseworthy. *Memori*=to remember, *memorinda*=memorable, worthy of being remembered. *Estimi*=to esteem, *estiminda*=esteemable, or estimable; if we use "estimable" in the sense of "able to be valued," we must form the word from *taksi*=to estimate, to value, *taksebla*=estimable, appraisable.

276. **Suffix -EDZ-.** (Exs. 25, 34).

-EDZ- denotes a married person, and can scarcely be called a suffix, although classed as such, since it is generally used as a root.

EXAMPLES.—*Edzo*=a husband, a married man, *edzino*=a wife, a married woman, *edzeco*=matrimony, a state of marriage, *edzijo*=a wedding, nuptials, *edziga*=nuptial, *gedzoj*=a married couple, husband and wife.

When reference is made to a woman, the feminine suffix *-IN-* is added to verbs as well as nouns and adjectives.

EXAMPLES.—*Doktoredzino*=a doctor's wife; *kudristinedzo*=a seamstress's husband; *laboristedzino*=a laborer's wife; *laristinedzo*=a washerwoman's husband; *tajloredzino*=a tailor's wife; *edzigi* (trans.)=to marry a couple, or to marry (a man to a woman), *edzinigi* (trans.)=to marry (a woman to a man); *edzigi* (intrans.)=to get (to be) married (man), *edziniĝi* (intrans.)=to get (to be) married (woman). Note the following sentences:—*Li edzigiĝis kun sia kuzino, kvankam liaj gepatroj volis lin edzigi kun alia sinjorino*=He was married to (with) his cousin, although his parents wished to marry him to (with) another lady. *Si edziniĝis kun sia kuzo, kvankam ŝiaj gepatroj volis ŝin edzinigi kun alia sinjoro*=She was married to her cousin, although her parents wished to marry her to another gentleman.

277. **Suffixes -EG- and -ET-.** (Ex. 26).

(a). These two suffixes are opposites, *-EG-* denoting augmentation, and *-ET-* diminution of degree. When employed in adjectives, the adverb "very" is often wrongfully used to denote the degree, as:—**Grandega** (*very large*), **malgrandega** (*very little*), but the proper translation of these words is **grandega**=*huge, enormous*; **malgrandega**=*tiny* (see remarks on degrees of intensity of adjectives, para. 114). If we cannot find English adjectives the equivalents of *-EG-* or *-ET-*, we should not use the adverb "very," but a stronger term, as "*excessively*," "*enormously*," etc.

(b). In the case of nouns we must be careful to use the right words to express the English meaning.

EXAMPLES.—*Montego*=a huge mountain, *granda monto*=a big mountain, *monto*=a mountain, *malgrandu monto*=a small mountain, *montelo*=a hill, *altajo*=an eminence, *altajeto*=a hillock. Again:—*Riverego*=a huge river, *larga rivero*=a wide river, *rivero*=a river, *malgranda rivero*=a small river, *rivereto*=a brook, stream, *malgranda rivereto*=a streamlet.

(c). -EG- denotes augmentation, intensity of degree. Used as a root, **ega**=intense, **egeco**=intensity.

(d). -ET- denotes diminution of degree. Equivalent to the English suffixes **-let** in "streamlet," **-ule** in "globule," "pustule." Used as a root, **eta**=little, tiny, **etulo**=a little one.

EXAMPLES.—*Pluwo*=rain, *pluvego*=a downpour, *pluveto*=a shower. *Ridi*=to laugh, *ridegi*=to guffaw, *rideti*=to smile. *Plori*=to shed tears, *ploregi*=to weep bitterly, *ploreti*=to whimper. *Dormi*=to sleep, *dormegi*=to sleep heavily, *dormeti*=to doze, *dormeto*=a nap. *Domo*=a house, *domego*=a mansion, *domeko*=a cottage. *Snuro*=cord, *snurego*=rope, cable, *snureto*=string, twine. *Ami*=to love, *amegi*=to idolize, *ameti*=to have some liking for.

N.B.—From the above we see that -EG- and -ET- should generally be used for distinct words, and not as a substitute for adverbs, which will often more accurately express the meaning than the added suffix.

278. Suffixes -EJ-, -ING-, -UJ-.

These suffixes are akin, since they denote either a place or thing from which the idea of the root is produced, or in which it is contained.

(a). -EJ- denotes a place specially used for, or allotted to, the idea contained in the root. As a root, **ejo**=a place, a locality.

EXAMPLES.—*Saflo*=a sheep, *safejo*=a sheepfold, or a place specially used for sheep. *Pregi*=to pray, *prefejo*=a church, a place allotted to prayer. *Fruktaarbo*=a fruit-tree, *fruktarejo*=an orchard, a place used for fruit trees. *Kafo*=coffee,

kaféjo=a café. *Vinbero*=a grape, *vinberejo*=a vineyard. *Armilo*=a weapon, *armilejo*=an armoury. *Tombo*=a tomb, grave, *tombejo*=a cemetery. *Manji*=to eat, *mangejo*=a refectory, *manfago*=food, *manjajejo*=a larder. *Planti*=to plant, *plantejo*=nursery. *Mallibera*=captive, *malliberejo*=a prison. *Borino*=a cow, *borinejo*=cowshed. *Lerni*=to learn, *lernejo*=a school. *Jugi*=to judge, *jujejo*=a court of justice. *Dormi*=to sleep, *dormejo*=a dormitory. *Herbo*=grass, *herbejo*=a meadow, a field. *Papersari*=to make paper, *paperfarejo*=a paper manufactory.

(b). -*VG-* denotes a thing for holding **one** object only. Used as a root, **ingo**=a socket, a sheath, a holder.

EXAMPLES.—*Kandelo*=a candle, *kandelingo*=a candlestick. *Plumo*=a pen, *plumingo*=a penholder. *Fingro*=a finger, *fingringo*=a thimble. *Cigaredo*=a cigarette, *cigaredingo*=a cigarette mouthpiece. *Glaro*=a sword, *glaringo*=scabbard, sheath (sword). *Bajoneto*=bayonet, *bajonetingo*=a scabbard (bayonet).

(c). -*UJ-* denotes that which contains, produces, encloses, or bears. Used as a root, **ujo**=a receptacle, a container. It has a wide signification, for it can be used for :—

(1). **The names of countries**, as being the places which contain their various races.

EXAMPLES.—*Franco*=a Frenchman, *Francujo*=France. *Turko*=a Turk, *Turkujo*=Turkey. *Anglo*=an Englishman, *Anglujo* or *Anglolando*=England. *Germano*=a German, *Germanujo*=Germany. *Italo*=an Italian, *Italujo*=Italy. *Brito*=a Briton, *Granda Britujo*=Great Britain. *Hispano*=a Spaniard, *Hispanujo*=Spain.

N. B.—*Lando* can be used instead of *-ujo*, if desired.

(2). **The names of trees** producing fruits.

EXAMPLES.—*Pruno*=a plum, *prunujo*=a plum-tree. *Kaštano*=a chestnut, *kaštannjo*=a chestnut-tree. *Piro*=a pear, *pirujo*=a pear-tree. *Migdalo*=an almond, *migdalijo*=an almond-tree. *Moruso*=a mulberry, *morusujo*=a mulberry-tree. *Cerizo*=a cherry, *cerizujo*=a cherry-tree; *cerizarbo* is also a cherry-tree, and *arbo* can be used with any of the above roots instead of *-ujo*.

(3). **The names of receptacles** commonly used for certain articles.

EXAMPLES.—*T'eo*=tea, *tenjo*=a tea-caddy or canister (a teapot is a vessel in which tea is made, not kept, therefore *tekruō*=a teapot, from *kruō*=a vessel for fluids). *Mono*=money, *monujō*=a purse. *Papero*=paper, *paperujo*=a portfolio. *Sukero*=sugar, *sukerujo*=a sugar-basin. *Karto*=a card, *kartujo*=a card-case. *Abelo*=a bee, *abelujo*=a beehive. *Musturdo*=mustard, *mustardujo*=a mustard-pot.

(d). The difference in meaning of these three suffixes is shown in the following examples:—

For instance, *cigaro*=a cigar, *cigarejo*=a cigar dépôt; but if we wish to distinguish the kind of dépôt, viz., store, shop, etc., we add the word required. If it be a store, we add *tenejo*=a storehouse, as:—*Cigartenejo*=a cigar storehouse or dépôt. If a shop, we add *vendejo*=a market, or place where things are sold, as:—*Cigarvendejo*=a cigar shop, or we might say also *cigarbutiko*. *Cigaringo*=a cigar holder or mouth-piece, which holds one cigar. *Cigarujo*=a cigar case or box, which contains several cigars. *Pomo*=an apple, *pomejo*=an apple orchard, *pomujo*=an apple-tree.

279. **Suffix -ID-**. (Ex. 25).

-*ID*- denotes the young of, offspring, descendant. Used as a root, **ido**=offspring, descendant; **idaro**=issue, posterity.

EXAMPLES.—*Kato*=a cat, *katido*=a kitten. *Bovo*=an ox, or a general term for the animal, hence *borido*=a calf; if we wished to say a cow's calf, we make *boro* feminine, viz., *bovino*=a cow, *bovinido*=a cow's calf of either sex. A cow calf we should call *bovidino*, and a bull calf, to determine it exactly, would be *bovidviro*, viz., a male calf. It is important that suffixes should follow in their natural order (see order of suffixes, para. 46). *Safō*=a sheep, *safido*=a lamb. *Cervo*=a stag, *cervido*=a fawn. *Hundo*=a dog, *hundido*=a puppy. *Cevalo*=a horse, *cevalido*=a foal. *Koko*=a cock, *kokido*=a chicken, *kokideto*=a chick, a tiny chicken. *Birdo*=a bird, *birdido*=a fledgeling, a young bird. *Izraelo*=Israel, *izraelido*=an Israelite. *Napoleono*=Napoleon, *napoleonido*=a descendant of Napoleon. *Rego*=a king, *refido*=a prince, king's son.

280. **Suffixes -IG- and -IḠ-.** (Ex. 28).

(a). These two are the most important and most widely used of all the suffixes, as they form an infinity of words, especially verbs. Used as roots, (1) **Igi**=*to make, to cause*, as:—**Igu ūn veni al nia dancado**=*Make her come to our dance.* **Li penis igi sian amikon tuši la aferon**=*He tried to make his friend broach the subject (touch upon the matter).* (2). **Igi**=*to become (to be made, to get)*, as **La vetero iğas pli varma**=*The weather is getting (becoming) warmer.* **Li baldaū iğos maljunulo**=*He will soon become an old man.*

(b). Used as suffixes :—

(1). **-IG-** denotes (like the English suffix **-fy**) to make, to cause (to get), to render, as **ruğā**=*red*, **ruğigi**=*to make red, to redden*, and from this verb is formed **ruğigo**=*the action of reddening*, **ruğiga**=*reddening (adj.)*.

(2). **-IḠ-** denotes to become, to get (in the sense of to become). Note the following difference in meaning of **rugā** with this suffix and with **-IG-** in the preceding paragraph; **rugigi**=*to become or get red, to blush*; **rugigo**=*the action of getting red, a blush*; **rugiga**=*blushing (adj.)*.

(c). The above instances are words derived from an adjective, but the suffixes can be applied to almost any part of speech, as the following examples will show :—

(d). **From adjectives.**

EXAMPLES.—*Bona*=good, *bonigi*=*to make or render good*, *bonigi*=*to become good*. *Plibonigi*=*to make better, to improve*, *plibonigi*=*to become better, to improve*, *plibonigo*=*the act of making better, improvement (made)*, *plibonijo*=*the state of becoming better, improvement (experienced)*. *Laca*=tired, fatigued, *lacigi*=*to tire (active)*, *lacigi*=*to get tired, lucigo*=*the act of tiring others*, *lacigo*=*the state of*

growing tired. *Preta*=ready, *pretagi*=to make ready, *pretagi*=to get (become) ready. From all these verbs nouns, adjectives, and adverbs can be formed.

(e). From nouns.

EXAMPLES.—*Fianeo*=a fiancé (man), *fiancigi*=to betroth, to affiance, *fiancigi*=to become betrothed, to be engaged, *fiancigo*=betrothal, engagement, *fianciga*=betrothing, *fiancige*=by betrothal. These words speak of the betrothal of a man, but in case of a woman we add the feminine suffix, as:—*fiancino*, *fianciniği*, *fianciniço*, etc., etc.

(f). From verbs.

EXAMPLES.—*Morti*=to die, *mortigi*=to cause to die, to kill, *mortigi*=to die out, to expire (become dead), *mortigo*=killing (murder), *mortiya*=deadly, *mortiganto*=a murderer, *mortige*=mortally. *Memmortigo*=suicide, *memmortigi*=to commit suicide. *Sidi*=to be sitting, to sit, *sidiği*=to cause to sit, *sidiği*=to sit down, to seat oneself, *sidiço*=the act of causing to sit, seating, *sidiço*=the act of sitting down, or of seating oneself, as:—*Li kondukis la rigardontojn al iliaj sidejoj, sed la sidiço de tiom da gesinjoroj estis tasko malfacila, ĉar la sidiço de ēc unu sinjorino bezonas iom da tempo, krankam ne tiom, kiom la sidiço de hundo, kiu ofte turnadas sin multefoje antau ol sidiği*=He conducted the (about to be) spectators to their seats, but the seating of so many ladies and gentlemen was a difficult task, since the sitting down of even one lady needs some little time, although not so much as the sitting down of a dog, which often continues turning itself round many times before seating itself. *Sciigi*=to cause (someone) to know, or, to make (something) known. *Mi sciigis la homon pri la novajo*, or, *Mi sciigis la novajon al la homo*=I caused the man to know (or, I informed the man) of the news, or, I made the news known to the man. *Sciigi*=to become informed, to learn. *Mi sciigis la novajon* (or, *pri la novajo*)=I learnt the news (*novajon* here shows preposition omitted, see para. 253).

(g). Verbs formed by *-IGI* are transitive (para. 161), but those by *-IĜI* are intransitive, and therefore have no passive voice (para. 162); we cannot therefore use the passive participles, *-ATA*, etc., with verbs in *-IGI*, but only the active forms *-ANTA*, etc., as:—*Li estis fariginta* (or, *li farigis*) *maljunulo, antau ol mi lin konis*=He had become an old man before I knew him.

(h). **Intransitive verbs.**—Some verbs, such as **desi**=*to cease*, **daŭri**=*to continue*, **pasi**=*to pass*, are neuter or intransitive.

EXAMPLES.—*La pluro cēsas*=The rain ceases. *La pafado daŭris kelkan tempon*=The shooting continued some time. *La tempo pasas*=Time passes.

In English these verbs are both transitive and intransitive, therefore if we wish to give them an active signification in Esperanto we must add the active suffix *-IGI*.

EXAMPLES.—*Cēsigu tion! ri surdugas min per via bru!*=Cease that, you deafen me with your noise! *Daŭrigu rian rakonton*=Continue your narrative. *Pasigu al mi la karajon*=Pass me the decanter (see para. 237 (i)).

(i). **Transitive verbs.**—On the contrary, **fini**=*to finish*, and **komenci**=*to commence*, being transitive, do not require the active suffix.

EXAMPLES.—*Finu vian laboron*=Finish your work. *Ni komencis nian vojaĝon je la dua horo*=We commenced our journey at 2 o'clock.

But we must use the intransitive suffix *-IGI*, if we wish to give an intransitive sense to these verbs.

EXAMPLES.—*Lia labore finiĝas*=His work finishes. *La jaro finiĝos post kelkaj tagoj*=The year will end in a few days. *La vojaĝo komenciĝis je la tria horo*=The journey commenced at 3 o'clock (see para. 237 (i)).

(j). **Numerals, prepositions, prefixes, and suffixes.**—Joined to these, *-IG-* and *-IG-* serve to form numerous words.

EXAMPLES.—*Unuigi*=to unify, *unuigo*=union, *unuiĝi*=to unite together, to be combined, *unuigo*=union (undergone). *Duoobligi*=to double, *duobligi*=to become double. *Aligi al*=to attribute to, *aligi*=to join (oneself to), to adhere, *aligo*=adhesion. *Eksigi*=to dismiss, *eksigli*=to become ex-, to resign (a position). *Disigi*=to separate, *disigli*=to separate mutually, *disigo*=act of separating, disjunction, *disigo*=disunion, schism. *Kuniĝi*=to connect, *kuniĝi*=to join together, to coalesce, *kunigo*=connection, *kunigo*=junction. *Forigi*=to do away with, *forigi*=to withdraw.

281. **Suffix -IL-.** (Ex. 29).

-IL- denotes the tool, instrument, or means by which something is done. As a root, **ilo**=*a tool, an instrument, an implement, or, a means of.*

EXAMPLES.—*Kombi*=to comb, *kombilo*=a comb. *Razi*=to shave, *razilo*=a razor. *Tranĉi*=to cut, *tranĉilo*=a knife. *Haki*=to hack, to chop, *hakilo*=an axe, a hatchet, a chopper. *Kudri*=to sew, *kudrilo*=a needle. *Tondi*=to shear, to clip, *tondilo*=shears, scissors. *Presi*=to print, *presilo*=a printing press. *Fermenti*=to ferment, *fermentilo*=yeast, leaven (a means of fermenting). *Batali*=to fight, *batalilo*=a weapon. *Armi*=to arm, *armiloj*=arms, *armilejo*=an arsenal (a place for arms, see *-EJ-*, 278).

282. **Suffix -IN-.** (Ex. 25).

-IN- denotes the feminine gender. As a root, **ino**=*a female, ina=female.*

EXAMPLES.—*Frato*=a brother, *fratino*=a sister. *Patro*=a father, *patrino*=a mother. *Kuzo*=a male cousin, *kuzino*=a female cousin. *Avo*=grandfather, *avino*=grandmother. *Nepo*=a grandson, *nepino*=a granddaughter. *Onklo*=an uncle, *onklino*=an aunt. *Nevo*=a nephew, *nevino*=a niece. *Patra*=paternal, *patrina*=maternal, *patrineco*=maternity. *Fratra*=brotherly, *fraternal*, *fratina*=sisterly, *sororal*. *Ćevalo*=a horse, *ćevalino*=a mare, *ćevalido*=a colt, *ćevalidino*=a filly. *Šaflo*=a sheep, *šafino*=a ewe. *Hundo*=a dog, *hundino*=a bitch. *Bovo*=an ox, *bovino*=a cow.

283. **MOŠTO.** (Ex. 23).

(a). This is not a suffix, since it does not form part of a word. It is a word used by itself or added after a title to denote respect. **Via mošto** is a higher expression of respect than **sinjoro**=*sir*.

(b). No special rule has been laid down for the use of **mošto**, but a simple one would be to make the title an adjective and add **mošto**; this would be generally understood by foreigners, which is really all that is required in Esperanto.

(c). In speaking to persons bearing titles by birth or profession, it would be well to address them by their full title first, as shown below, and afterwards use the expression **via mōsto** to represent "Your Majesty," "Your Royal Highness," "Your Grace," "Your Lordship," "Your Ladyship," "Your Honour," "Your Worship," "Your Excellency," "Your Eminence," "Your Highness," etc. The suffix *-IN* is never added.

EXAMPLES :—

Emperor = **Via imperia mōsto** = Your Imperial Majesty.

King = **Via rega mōsto** = Your Majesty.

Queen = **Via regina mōsto** = Your Majesty.

Royal Family = **Via regida mōsto** = Your Royal Highness.

Prince = **Via princa mōsto** = Your Highness, or, Serene Highness.

Duke = **Via duka mōsto** = Your Grace.

Duchess = **Via dukina mōsto** = Your Grace.

Archbishop = **Via ĉefepiskopa mōsto** = Your Grace.

Marquis = **Via markiza mōsto** = Your Lordship, My Lord.

Earl, Count = **Via grafa mōsto** = Your Lordship, My Lord.

Viscount = **Via vicgrafa mōsto** = Your Lordship, My Lord.

Lord, Baron (Judge) = **Via barona mōsto** = Your Lordship, My Lord.

Viceroy = **Via vicreĝa mōsto** = Your Excellency.

Governor = **Via rega mōsto** = Your Excellency.

Judge (not a Baron) = **Via jugista mōsto** = Your Honour.

Mayor = **Via urbestra mōsto** = Your Worship.

Magistrate = **Via magistrata mōsto** = Your Worship.

General (Officer) = **Via generala mōsto** = General.

N.B.—No title beyond his rank is given to a General in England, like "Monsieur le General" in France. We usually say "General," or "Sir," but **mōsto** might be used in Esperanto.

(d). As regards addresses of letters, we can say :—

Al Lia Duka Mōsto de... or, Al Lia Duka Mōsto, la Duko de... = To His Grace the Duke of...

Al Ŝia Grafinia Mōsto de... = To the Countess of...

Al Lia Rega Mōsto de... = To His Excellency the Governor of...; or if we mention him by name :—

Al Lia Mōsto, Sir Henry Smith, La Reganto de... = To His Excellency, Sir Henry Smith, The Governor of...

284. **Suffixes -OBL-, -ON-, -OP-.** (Ex. 18).

These three suffixes are used only for numerals, making them multiples, fractions, or collectives (see paras. 119, 120, 121).

(a). *-OBL-* added to a cardinal number denotes the number is a multiple. It is equivalent to the English suffixes "fold" or "uple."

EXAMPLES.—*Multoblo* = a multiple, *multobla* = manifold. *Unu* = one, *unuobla* = single, *unuoble* = singly. *Du* = two, *duobla* = double, *la duoblo* = the double. *Kvar* = four, *kvarobla* = fourfold, quadruple, *la kvaroblo* = the quadruple. *Cent* = hundred, *centoblo* = a centuple. It is used in the multiplication table:—

<i>kvaroble tri estas</i> (or, <i>juras</i>)	<i>dek du</i>	... 4 times	<i>3= 12</i>
<i>kvinoble kvar estas</i> <i>dudek</i> 5	" 4 =	<i>20</i>
<i>sesoble kvin estas</i> <i>tridek</i> 6	" 5 =	<i>30</i>
<i>sepolble ses estas</i> <i>kvardekk du</i>	... 7	" 6 =	<i>42</i>
<i>okoble sep estas</i> <i>kvindek ses</i>	... 8	" 7 =	<i>56</i>
<i>naūoble ok estas</i> <i>sepdekk du</i>	... 9	" 8 =	<i>72</i>
<i>dekoble naū estas</i> <i>naūdekk</i> 10	" 9 =	<i>90</i>
<i>dekunuoble dek estas</i> <i>cent dekk</i> 11	" 10 =	<i>110</i>
<i>dekduoble dek unu estas</i> <i>cent tridek du</i> ...	12	" 11 =	<i>132</i>

(b). *-ON-* added to a cardinal number denotes a fraction.

EXAMPLES.—*Du* = two, *duona* = half, *duone* = by halves, *duono* = a half ($\frac{1}{2}$). *Tri* = three, *triona* = third, *triono* = a third ($\frac{1}{3}$). *Kvar* = four, *kvarona* = fourth, *kvarono* = a fourth ($\frac{1}{4}$). *Dek* = ten, *dekona* = tenth, *dekono* = a tenth ($\frac{1}{10}$), *tri dekonoj* = $\frac{3}{10}$ ths. *Dek du* = twelve, *dekduona* = twelfth, *dekduono* = a twelfth ($\frac{1}{12}$), *kvin dekduonoj* = $\frac{5}{12}$ ths. *Sesdek kvin centonoj* = sixty-five hundredths ($\frac{65}{100}$). *La kvinona parto de cent estas la triona parto de sesdek, tio estas* *dudek* = The 5th part of 100 is the 3rd part of 60, that is 20.

(c). *-OP-* added to a cardinal number denotes that the number must be taken in a collective sense. As a root, *opa* = collective.

EXAMPLES.—*Du* = two, *duope* = two together, in twos. *Tri* = three, *triope* = in threes, in triplets. *Dek* = ten, *dekope* = in tens. *Dudek* = twenty, *dudekope* = in twenties, by scores. *Cent* = hundred, *centope* = in hundreds. *Mil* = thousand, *milope* = in thousands. *Kvinope ili sin jetis sur min* = Five together (five at a time) they threw themselves upon me. *La soldatoj marsis kvarope* = The soldiers were marching in fours.

285. **Suffix -UM-.** (Ex. 30).

-UM- has no special meaning. Its different meanings are easily suggested by the context and the signification of the root to which it is joined. There are but few words in which it is used, and these must be learnt like simple words.

The following embrace nearly all :—

- **Aer-umi*=to air. *Aero*=air.
- Brul-umo*=a swelling, inflammation. *Bruli*=to burn.
- **Buš-umo*=a muzzle (for a dog), a nose-band. *Buš-umi*=to muzzle, to gag. *Bušo*=mouth.
- **Buton-umi*=to button. *Buton-umilo*=a buttonhook. *Butono*=a button.
- **Gust-umi*=to taste. *Gust-umado*=tasting, the sense of tasting. *Gusto*=taste.
- Kalkan-umo*=a heel of a boot, etc. *Kalkano*=heel (of the foot).
- **Kol-umo*=a shirt collar. *Kolo*=neck.
- Kolomb-o*=a dove. *Kolomb-umi*=to coo.
- **Komun-umo*=a commune, a community. *Komuna*=common.
- **Kruc-umi*=to crucify. *Kruco*=a cross.
- **Laz-umo*=milt, melt, soft roe. *Lakto*=milk.
- Lek-umi*=to lap. *Leki*=lick.
- **Lot-umi*=to allot. *Loti*=to draw lots.
- **Malvarm-umo*=a cold. *Malvarm-umi*=to catch cold. *Malvarma*=cold.
- **Man-umo*=a cuff, a wristband. *Mano*=hand.
- **Mastr-umi*=to manage the household. *Mastr-umado*=household management. *Mastro*=master (of a house).
- **Naz-umo*=a pince-nez. *Nazo*=nose.
- **Palpebr-umi*=to wink. *Palpebro*=an eyelid.
- Part-umo*=a fraction (mathematics). *Parto*=a part, a share.
- **Plen-umi*=to fulfil, accomplish. *Plen-umigi*=to be accomplished, fulfilled. *Plena*=full, complete.
- Proksim-uma*, *proksim-ume*=approximate-ly. *Proksima*=near.
- Sap-umi*=to soap. *Sapo*=soap.
- **Vent-umi*=to ventilate, to use a fan. *Vent-umilo*=a fan. *Vento*=wind.

N.B.—The 16 words marked * are given in Dr. Zamenhof's "Fundamento de Esperanto." The hyphens (not necessary) are given to show more distinctly the roots.

286. **Prefixes BO-, DUON-, CE-, PRA-.** (Ex. 25).

These four prefixes all denote relationship in a greater or less degree.

(a). **BO-** denotes relationship by marriage, and is equivalent to the English suffix *-in-law*, as **patro** = father, **bopatro** = father-in-law.

(b). **DUON-** denotes also relationship by marriage, and is also a prefix in such words as **duonpago** = half-pay, **duonjara** = half-yearly, etc. As a root, **duono** = a half, so properly it should signify only half-blood relationship; but there are few relationships of this nature, so it is used principally for step relationship, as:—**Duonfrato** = stepbrother or half-brother.

(c). **GE-** denotes both sexes taken together. The words are always in the plural, and the feminine suffix is, of course, never added.

EXAMPLES.—*Edzo*=a husband, *geedzoj*=husband and wife, a married couple. *Sinjoro*=Sir, Mr., *gesinjoroj*=Mr. and Mrs., or, ladies and gentlemen. *Patro*=father, *gepatroj*=father and mother, parents. *Mastro*=a master (of a household), *gemastroj*=master and mistress. *Frato*=brother, *gefratoj*=brother(s) and sister(s).

(d). **PRA-** has a primordial signification, denoting past times. As regards relationship, it is the equivalent of the English prefixes “fore-,” “great,” or “grand.” As a root, **praæ** = primæval.

EXAMPLES.—*Pratempo*=primitive time. *Praarbarego*=primeval forest. *Prapatroj*=forefathers, ancestors. *Praonklo*=grand, or great, uncle. *Praavino*=great-grandmother.

(e). The following are examples of these four prefixes:—

Patro=father, *bopatro*=father-in-law, *duonpatro*=step-father, *gepatroj*=father and mother, parents.

Patrino = mother, *bopatrino* = mother-in-law, *duonpatrino* = stepmother.

Aro = grandfather, *boaro* = grandfather-in-law, *duonaro* = stepgrandfather, *gearoj* = grandparents, *prageavoj* = great-grandparents.

Filo = son, *bofilo* = son-in-law, *duonfilo* = stepson.

Filino = daughter, *bofilino* = daughter-in-law, *duonfilino* = stepdaughter.

Nepo = grandson, *pranepo* = great-grandson, *genepoj* = grandson(s) and granddaughter(s), grandchildren.

Nepino = granddaughter, *pranepino* = great-granddaughter.

Fratio = brother, *bofratio* = brother-in-law, *duonfratio* = step, or half, brother, *gefratioj* = brother(s) and sister(s), *bogefratioj* = brother(s) and sister(s)-in-law.

Fratino = sister, *bofratino* = sister-in-law, *duonfratino* = step, or half, sister.

Onklo = uncle, *praonklo* = grand, or great, uncle, *geonkloj* = uncle(s) and aunt(s).

Onkino = aunt, *praonkino* = grand, or great, aunt.

Nervo = nephew, *pranevo* = grandnephew, *generoj* = nephew(s) and niece(s).

Nervino = niece, *pranervino* = grandniece.

Infano = child, *duoninfano* = stepchild.

287. Prefixes DE-, DIS-, FOR-. (Ex. 31).

These three prefixes give the idea of separation or change of position.

(a). *DE-* as a preposition = *from*, *of*. As a prefix it marks the point of departure, or movement from one place or position to another.

(b). *DIS-* denotes a separation, in the sense of a rupture, or breaking up into parts, or in several different directions.

(c). *FOR-* as an adverb = *away*. As a prefix it denotes distance from something.

(d). Thus, birds on a tree can fly down from the tree to the ground = **deflugi**; or fly in different directions, viz., *disperse* = **disflugis**; or fly away altogether from the tree = **forflugis**.

(e). The following examples will give the best idea of the meanings of these prefixes :—

Siri=to tear, *désiri*=to tear from, to pluck.

dissiri=to tear to pieces, to lacerate.

forsiri=to tear away from.

Iri=to go, *deiri*=to go from (a place).

dixiri=to go in different directions, to separate.

foriri=to go away, to depart.

Jeti=to throw, *dejeti*=to throw down, to overthrow.

dixjeti=to throw about, to demolish, scatter.

forjeti=to throw away, to discard.

Meti=to put, *demeti*=to put down, take off, doff.

dismeti=to disperse, to distribute.

formeti=to put away, to omit.

Porti=to carry, *deporti*=to carry from, to deport.

disporti=to carry here and there.

forporti=to carry away.

288. Prefix EK-. (Exs. 19, 32).

EK- denotes an action just begun, of short duration, sudden, momentary.

EXAMPLES.—*Kanti*=to sing, *ekkanti*=to begin to sing, or to start singing. *Ridi*=to laugh, *ekridi*=to burst out laughing. *Krii*=to cry, *ekkrii*=to exclaim, to cry out. *Lerni*=to learn, *eklerni*=to begin to learn. *Iri*=to go, *ekiri*=to start, to set out. *Plori*=to shed tears, *ekplori*=to burst out crying. *Kapti*=to catch, *ekkapti*=to seize. *Dormi*=to sleep, *ekdormi*=to fall asleep. *Vidi*=to see, *ekvidi*=to perceive. *Tremi*=to tremble, *ektremi*=to start (with fear, etc.).

EK- is useful in such redundant expressions as “begin to,” “come to,” frequently used in English before a verb, as :—**Kiam mi ekripensas**=When I begin to (or, come to) reflect. **Kiam mi ekpensas pri gi**=When I come to think of it.

289. Prefixes MAL-, NE-, SEN-. (Ex. 33).

(a). These three prefixes give an opposite or negative meaning to the words before which they are placed, the nature of which varies with the prefix used.

(b). *MAL-* is used as a root for the adjective **mala** = *contrary*, and for the adverb **male** = *on the contrary, conversely*. As a prefix it signifies that the word has a meaning exactly the contrary to that which it had before *MAL-* was prefixed. It is never used to give the meaning of badness, unless it be a prefix to some word signifying goodness. For instance, **timulo** = *a coward* has a bad signification, but its opposite **mal-timulo** = *a bold man* has no such meaning. **Bona** = *good*, **malbona** = *bad*, simply because "bad" is the opposite of "good."

(c). *NE* is a primary adverb, meaning "no," "not," but it is often used as a prefix. In some phrases the meaning is the same whether it be used as a prefix or not, as :—**Ne estas certe** = *it is not certain* has the same signification as **estas necerte** = *it is uncertain*. As a prefix, therefore, it gives simply a negative signification to a word, as:—**Plena** = *complete, full*, **neplena** = *incomplete, not full*. Used as a root, it forms **nei** = *to deny*, **nea** = *negative*.

(d). *SEN* is a preposition meaning "without," and as a prefix it has the same signification; as **cesi** = *to cease*, **sencesa** = *without ceasing, incessant, continuous*, **senco** = *meaning, sense*, **sensenca** = *without meaning, senseless*, **senkapigi** = *to decapitate*. Used as a root, it forms **senigi je** = *to deprive of*.

(e). The student may at first find these three prefixes somewhat puzzling, especially as sometimes there is no single English word which will express their meaning. The first thing is to bear in mind that *MAL-* denotes the exact opposite of the root, and therefore it may be much stronger in signification than the mere negative **ne** = *not*, or **sen** = *without*. For instance, **plena** = *complete, full*, but **neplena** = *incomplete, not full*. Now the opposite to "complete" or "full" is not "incomplete" or "not full," but something stronger, viz., "void" or "empty," therefore

malplena = *empty, void, vacuous*. Again, from **riča** = *rich*, we form the opposite, **malriča** = *poor*, which is clearly a worse state than **neriča** = *not rich*, or **senriča**, which, in its literal sense, means “without wealth or riches.” A man not rich might be well off, a man without riches might have enough to live upon. **Fermita** = *shut, closed*; the opposite is **malfermita** = *opened, open*. Applied to a window it would mean the window was open as far as it would go, but if it were partly open, it would be more correct to say **nefermita** = *not closed*.

(f). In using *MAL-* we must consider the *strength* of the word to which we are giving an opposite meaning, and not oppose a word like “*destitute*” to “*rich*,” for “*destitute*” is the opposite to “*rolling in wealth*,” the adjective for which would be “**ričega**,” therefore **malričega** = *destitute*. So **bela** = *beautiful*, **belega** = *splendid, magnificent*; therefore their opposites are **malbela** = *ugly*, **malbelega** = *hideous*.

(g). No fixed rules can be given for the use of these three prefixes, but, generally speaking, it will be right (1) to use *MAL-* if we wish to give a stronger idea than *NE* or *SEN* would infer; (2), to use *NE* in cases where a simple negative will give the meaning; (3), to use *SEN* if “*without*” is more applicable than “*not*,” as :—**Senmova** = *without motion, stationary*, but **nemovebla** = *not movable, immovable*. It will generally be right to employ *SEN* to represent the English suffix *-less*, as :—**Sendanka** = *thankless*, **senmona** = *penniless*, **senhara** = *hairless, bald*, **senutila** = *useless*. The opposite to “*useful*” is something stronger than “*useless*,” therefore **malutila** = *detrimental, prejudicial*.

(h). The following examples will give an idea of the use of these three prefixes :—

Venko = *victory*, *malvenko* = *defeat*. *Videbla* = *visible*, *nevidebla* = *invisible*. *Sangebla* = *changeable*, *nesangebla* = *unchangeable, invariable*. *Ofta* = *frequent*, *neofta* = *infrequent*,

malofta = scarce, rare. *Simpla* = simple, *malsimpla* = intricate, complex. *Permsi* = to permit, *malpermesi* = to forbid. *Helpi* = to help, *malhelpi* = to hinder, *nehelpi* = to give no assistance. *Sobreco* = sobriety, *malsobreco* = intemperance, drunkenness. *Sageco* = wisdom, *malsageco* = foolishness. *Modesta* = modest, *nemodesta* = officious, *malmodesta* = conceited. *Justa* = just, *maljusta* = unjust. *Pura* = clean, *nepura* = soiled, *malpura* = dirty. *Pia* = pious, *malpia* = impious. *Agrabla* = agreeable, *neagrabla* = unpleasant, *malagrabla* = disagreeable, nasty. *Glata* = smooth, *malglata* = rongh. *Atento* = attention, *malatento* = negligence. *Respekto* = respect, *nerespekto* = disrespect, *malrespekto* = violation.

290. Prefix RE-. (Ex. 32).

(a). *RE-*, like the English prefix *re-*, means "back" or "again." It denotes (1) the repetition of an action, or (2) the return of some person or thing to the person, place, or state with whom, or in which, such person or thing originally was. As a root, *ree* = *again, in return*.

(b). (1). Repetition.

EXAMPLES.—*Refari* = to make afresh, to remake; *rediri* = to say again, to repeat (*ripeti* is, however, more frequently used for "repeat"); *rekanti* = to sing again; *rejungi* = to grow young again; *renasko* = rebirth, regeneration; *repagi* = to repay, to reimburse; *reenmeti* = to put in again, to reinstate; *rekunigi* = to reunite; *rebruligi* = to rekindle; *reformi* = to reform, to remodel; *reprodukti* = to reproduce.

(2). Return, etc.

EXAMPLES.—*Redoni* = to give back, to restore; *repreni* = to take back; *refeti* = to throw back; *resalti* = to rebound; *rebrili* = to shine back, to reflect; *reveni* = to come back, to return; *reporti* = to carry back, to carry to the original place.

N.B.—In addition to the 12 prefixes given in paras. 286—290, nearly all the prepositions are in common use as prefixes, examples of which will be found in para. 259. When prefixed to a verb, the preposition is frequently repeated before the indirect compliment (see para. 254).

PART III.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 1.

Article, Nouns, Adjectives (singular), (see paras. 96, 103, 107).

- (1) Patro kaj frato. (2) Leono estas besto. (3) Rozo estas floro. (4) Kolombo estas birdo. (5) La rozo apartenas al Teodoro. (6) La suno brilas. (7) La patro estas tajlro. (8) Infano ne estas matura homo. (9) La infano jam ne ploras. (10) La ĉielo estas blua. (11) Kie estas la libro kaj la krajono? (12) La libro estas sur la tablo, kaj la krajono kuſas sur la fenestro. (13) Sur la fenestro kuſas krajono kaj plumo. (14) Jen estas pomo. (15) Sur la tero kuſas ŝtono. (16) Iru al la frato.

TRANSLATION 1.

(1) A father and brother. (2) A lion is an animal. (3) A rose is a flower. (4) A pigeon is a bird. (5) The rose belongs to Theodore. (6) The sun shines. (7) (The, my, our) father is a tailor. (8) A child is not a mature man. (9) The child no longer cries (already does not cry). (10) The sky (heaven) is blue. (11) Where are the book and the pencil? (12) The book is on the table and the pencil lies on the window. (13) On the window lie a pencil and a pen. (14) Here is an apple. (15) On the ground lies a stone. (16) Go to (the, your) brother.

N.B.—See para. 100 (*a*) as to the use of the article in speaking of one's own relatives.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 2.

*Article, Nouns, Adjectives (accusative and plural),
(see paras. 66, 96, 103, 107).*

- (1) Jen estas pomo, kiun mi trovis. (2) La leono estas forta besto. (3) La dentoj de leono estas akraj. (4) Mi vidas leonon. (5) Kiu kuragas rajdi sur leono? (6) La virino estas bona. (7) Jen kušas la ĉapelo de la patro. (8) Mi amas la filon. (9) La manoj de Johano estas puraj. (10) Mi konas Johanon. (11) La homoj, virinoj kaj infanoj estas en la ĉambro. (12) La kanto de la birdoj estas agrabla. (13) La kantoj de la birdoj estas agrablaj. (14) La patro donas la librojn al la infanoj. (15) Kie estas la libroj, kiujn vi aĉetis? (16) Kien vi iras? (17) Mi vidas kelkajn homojn. (18) La knabo forpelis la birdojn. (19) De la patro mi ricevis libron, kaj de la fratoj mi ricevis plomon. (20) Mi legas libron. (21) La patro ne legas libron, sed li skribas leteron.

TRANSLATION 2.

- (1) Here is an apple which I found. (2) The lion is a strong animal. (3) The teeth of a lion (a lion's teeth) are sharp. (4) I see a lion. (5) Who dares (has courage) to ride on a lion? (6) The woman is good. (7) Here is (lies) (the, my, our) father's hat. (8) I love the (my) son. (9) John's hands (the hands of John) are clean. (10) I am acquainted with (know) John. (11) The men, women, and children are in the room. (12) The song of birds (birds generally, therefore the article *la*) is agreeable. (13) The songs of birds are agreeable. (14) The father gives the books to the children. (15) Where are the books which (accus. plu.) you bought? (16) Where (accus.) are you going? (17) I see some men. (18) The boy drove away the birds. (19) From (the, my) father I received a book, and from (the, my) brothers I received a pen. (20) I am reading a book. (21) (The, my, our) father is not reading a book, but he is writing a letter.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 3.

Adverbs with Grammatical Terminations (see paras. 238—248).

(1) Resti kun leono estas dangere.¹ (2) La birdoj gaje flugas, kaj kelkaj ĝoje kantas sur la grandaj arboj. (3) La knaboj kaj (la²) knabinoj kuras rapide sur la sablo de la marbordo. (4) La patro agas sage kaj bone, sed la filo lernas malrapide, skribas tre malbone, kaj legas malfacile. (5) Mi vidis Johanon matene, Georgon tagmeze, Arturon posttagmeze, kaj Vilhelmon vespere. (6) Si skribas treege bone. (7) Pripensinte mi faros tion. (8) Certe mi ne estimas lin. (9) Li lernis ĝin parkere. (10) Kelkafoje mi promenas en la ĝardeno. (11) Dekstre vi vidos la domon, kaj maldekstre la preĝejon.

¹ Adverb, because there is no noun or pronoun in the sentence which *dangera* could qualify (see para. 245).

² Before each separate noun it is optional (as in English) to repeat the article or not (see para. 101 (a)).

TRANSLATION 3.

(1) To remain with a lion is dangerous. (2) The birds are flying merrily, and some are singing joyfully on the large trees. (3) The boys and girls run quickly on the sand of the seashore. (4) The father acts wisely and well, but the son learns slowly, writes very badly, and reads with difficulty. (5) I saw John in the morning, George at mid-day, Arthur in the afternoon, and William in the evening. (6) She writes extremely well. (7) On reflection I shall do that (so). (8) Certainly I do not esteem him. (9) He learnt it by heart. (10) Sometimes I walk in the garden. (11) On the right you will see the house, and on the left the church.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 4.

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs—Superlatives (see paras. 112, 113, 248).

(1) Mi estas tiel forta, kiel vi. (2) La homoj estas tiel fortaj, kiel la ĉevaloj. (3) La knabinoj ne estas tiel fortaj, kiel la knaboj. (4) Johano estas pli forta, ol Georgo. (5) Si kuras pli rapide, ol vi. (6) Vilhelmo estas malpli forta, ol Karlo. (7) Ju pli mi lin konas, des pli mi lin estimas. (8) Ju malpli mi mangas, des pli mi trinkas. (9) Ju pli mi lin vidas, des malpli li plaĉas al mi. (10) Mia frato amas mian filion pli, ol mian filon.¹ (12) Mi amas mian filion pli, ol mia filo.¹ (13) Johano estas la plej forta el la knaboj. (14) Ili estas la malplej fortaj el ĉiuj. (15) Georgo estas la malplej kuraĝa knabo en² la lernejo.

¹ Note the difference in case (see para. 112).

² See para. 113 (b).

TRANSLATION 4.

(1) I am as strong as you. (2) The men are as strong as the horses. (3) Girls (in a general sense, para. 99 (a)) are not as strong as boys. (4) John is stronger than George. (5) She runs more quickly than you. (6) William is weaker (less strong) than Charles. (7) The more I know him, the more I esteem him. (8) The less I eat, the more I drink. (9) The more I see him, the less he pleases (is pleasing to) me. (10) My stick is the same as yours. (11) My brother loves my daughter more than my son. (12) I love my daughter more than my son (does) (loves her). (13) John is the strongest of (out of) the boys. (14) They are the weakest (least strong) of all. (15) George is the least courageous boy in the school.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 5.

Personal and Possessive Pronouns (see paras. 126—134).

(1) Li amas min, sed mi lin ne amas. (2) Mi volis lin bati, sed li forkuris de mi. (3) Diru al mi vian nomon. (4) Ne skribu al mi tiajn longajn leterojn. (5) Venu al mi bodiaŭ vespere. (6) Mi rakontos al vi historion. (7) Si diris al mi la veron. (8) La domo apartenas al ni. (9) Ili vidis mian patron, sed ne vian fraton. (10) Li estas mia onklo, ĉar mia patro estas lia frato. (11) Mi ne vidis iliajn librojn. (12) Sinjoro Petro kaj via kuzo amas miajn infanojn. (13) Mi havas mian ĉapelon, nun serĉu (la) vian. (14) Mi lavas min en mia ĉambro, sed vi lavas vin en la ĉambro de via patro. (15) Mi vidis la beston, sed ĝi ne vidis min. (16) Ĉu vi vidis ĝin? (17) Oni diras, "Per mono oni povas aĉeti ĉion." (18) Mi vidis vian libron, lian bastonon, ŝian ombrelon kaj ilian keston.

TRANSLATION 5.

(1) He loves me, but I do not love him. (2) I wished to beat him, but he ran away from me. (3) Tell me your name. (4) Do not write to me such long letters. (5) Come to me this (to-day) evening (lit., to-day in the evening). (6) I will relate (to) you a story. (7) She told (to) me the truth. (8) The house belongs to us. (9) They saw my father, but not your brother. (10) He is my uncle, for my father is his brother. (11) I did not see their books. (12) Mr. Peter and your cousin love my children. (13) I have my hat, now look for yours. (14) I wash myself in my room, but you wash yourself in your father's room (in the room of your father). (15) I saw the animal, but it did not see me. (16) Did you see it? (17) People (one, they) say, "With money one can buy anything (everything)." (18) I saw your book, his stick, her umbrella, and their chest.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 6.

Possessive Reflexive Pronouns (see paras. 130—138).

- (1) Mia patro estas en sia ĝardeno. (2) Mia patrino estas ankaŭ en sia ĝardeno. (3) Via frato rajdas sian ĉevalon. (4) La hundo amas sian mastron. (5) La patrinoj amas siajn infanojn. (6) Mi vidis mian amikon kaj lian edzinon. (7) Johano renkontis mian patron kaj lian¹ amikon. (8) Johano renkontis mian patron kaj sian² amikon. (9) Vilhelmo kaj Jozefo vidis siajn kuzojn kun iliaj hundoj. (10) Vilhelmo kaj Jozefo vidis siajn kuzojn kun siaj hundoj. (11) Niaj hundoj estas en siaj hundejoj. (12) Ni vidis niajn ĉevalojn sur la kampo. (13) Mi vidis vian hundon, sian ĉevalon, lian azenan, iliajn bovinojn, niajn ŝafojn, kaj miajn birdojn. (14) Si vidis la birdon sur ĝia nesto, sed ĝi baldaŭ forflugis de sia nesto. (15) Mia frato lavis sin en sia ĉambro kaj mia fratino lavis sin en sia cambro. (16) Mi lavas min en lia ĉambro.

¹ *Lian*=his, viz., the father's friend. } See para. 135 as to use
² *Sian*=his, viz., John's friend. } of *Lia* and *Sia*.

TRANSLATION 6.

- (1) My father is in his garden. (2) My mother is also in her garden. (3) Your brother rides his horse. (4) The dog loves its master. (5) Mothers love their children. (6) I saw my friend and his wife. (7) John met my father and his (my father's) friend. (8) John met my father and his (John's) friend. (9) William and Joseph saw their cousins with their (cousins') dogs. (10) William and Joseph saw their cousins with their (William's and Joseph's) dogs. (11) Our dogs are in their kennels. (12) We saw our horses in the field. (13) I saw your dog, her horse, his ass, their cows, our sheep, and my birds. (14) She saw the bird on its nest, but it soon flew away from its nest. (15) My brother washed (himself) in his room, and my sister washed (herself) in her room. (16) I am washing (myself) in his room.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 7.

Verbs, Simple Tenses, Negatives, and Questions (see paras. 58—64, 91, 92, 168, 214).

- (1) Mi legas. (2) Li ne legas. (3) Ni legas.
(4) Ili legas. (5) Vi legas. (6) Mi legis la libron.
(7) Mi ne legis la libron. (8) Ĉu vi legis la libron ?
Ne ! mi ne legis (ĝin).¹ (9) Ĉu vi vidas mian ĉevalon ?
Jes ! mi vidas. (10) Mi promenos en la ĝardeno. (11)
Mi ne promenos en la ĝardeno. (12) Ĉu vi ne
promenos en la ĝardeno ? Ne ! mi ne promenos.
Jes ! mi promenos. (13) Se mi estus sana, mi estus
feliĉa. (14) Se mi ne estus sana, mi ne estus feliĉa.
(15) Ĉu vi rekonus min, se vi min vidus sen mia
peruko ? Jes ! mi rekonus. Ne ! mi ne rekonus. (16)
Ĉu vi deziras kafon ? Ne ! mi jam havas. (17) Ne
tuŝu la spegulon. (18) Li venu, kaj mi pardonos al
li. (19) Ordonu al li, ke li ne babilu. (20) Petu ŝin,
ke ŝi donu al mi kandelon. (21) Ni estu gajaj, ni
uzu bone la vivon, ĉar la vivo ne estas longa. (22)
Kial vi ne respondas al mi ? Ĉar mi ne komprenas vin.

¹In replying to questions the complement is usually omitted (para. 64).

TRANSLATION 7.

- (1) I read. (2) He does not read. (3) We are reading.
(4) They read. (5) You are reading. (6) I read (perfect)
the book. (7) I did not read the book. (8) Did you read
the book ? No ! I did not (read) (it). (9) Do you see my
horse ? Yes ! I do (see). (10) I shall walk in (not into) the
garden. (11) I shall not walk in the garden. (12) Shall you
not walk in the garden ? No ! I shall not (walk). Yes !
I shall (walk). (13) If I were (should be) well, I should be
happy. (14) If I were not (should not be) well, I should
not be happy. (15) Should you recognize me if you saw
(should see) me without my wig ? Yes ! I should (recognize).

EXERCISES.

No! I should not (recognize). (16) Do you want coffee? No! I already have (some). (17) Do not touch the looking-glass. (18) Let him come, and I will pardon him. (19) Order (to) him not to chatter (that he do not chatter). (20) Beg her to give (that she give) me a candle. (21) Let us be merry, let us use life well, for life is not long. (22) Why do you not answer (to) me? Because I do not understand you.

EXERCISE 8.

Verbs, Compound Tenses, Active Voice (see para. 214).

(1) Nun li diras al mi la veron. (2) Hieraŭ li diris al mi la veron. (3) Li ĉiam diradis al mi la veron. (4) Kiam vi vidis nin en la salono, li jam antaŭe diris¹ al mi la veron (aŭ, li estis dirinta al mi la veron). (5) Li diros al mi la veron. (6) Kiam vi venos al mi, li jam antaŭe diros¹ al mi la veron (aŭ, li estos dirinta al mi la veron). (7) Se mi petus lin, li dirus al mi la veron. (8) Mi ne farus la eraron, se li antaŭe dirus¹ al mi la veron (aŭ, se li estus dirinta al mi la veron). (9) Kiam mi venos, diru al mi la veron. (10) Kiam mia patro venos, diru al mi antaŭe la veron (aŭ, estu dirinta al mi la veron). (11) Mi volas diri al vi la veron. (12) Tuj kiam mi estos ricevinta vian leteron, mi foriros. (13) Kiam mi estis kolektinta la sumon, mi aĉetis novan libron. (14) Estas necese, ke vi estu² fininta (or, finu) vian laboron, antaŭ ol mi revenos.

¹ Always use the compound tense if the simple form is likely to confuse the meaning. Note that the words *jam* and *antaŭe* (already beforehand) show the action has passed, and that therefore the simple tense can be used. If these words be omitted, the compound tense must be used. The same remarks apply to the Sentences 8 and 10 (see para. 226 (a)).

² Note the imperative mood after verbs expressing "wish," "necessity," etc. (para. 200).

EXERCISES.

TRANSLATION 8.

(1) Now he tells (is telling) me the truth. (2) Yesterday he told me the truth. (3) He always told (habitually) me the truth. (4) When you saw us in the drawing-room, he already previously (had) told me the truth (or, he had told me the truth). (5) He will tell me the truth. (6) When you have (shall) come to me, he will already previously have told me the truth (or, will have told me the truth). (7) If I (should, were to) ask him, he would tell me the truth. (8) I should not have made the mistake if he previously told me the truth (or, had told me the truth). (9) When I (shall) come, tell me the truth. (10) When my father comes (shall come), tell me beforehand the truth (or, may you have told me the truth). (11) I wish to tell you the truth. (12) As soon as (immediately when) I (shall) have received your letter, I shall go away. (13) When I had collected the sum, I bought a new book. (14) It is necessary that you finish (have finished) your work before I (shall) return.

EXERCISE 9.

Verbs, Passive Voice (see paras. 169, 233).

(1) Mi estas amata. (2) Li estis amata. (3) Ni estos amataj. (4) Vi estus amata. (5) Mi estas lavita. (6) Si estis lavita. (7) Ili estis lavitaj. (8) Vi estos lavita. (9) Gi estus lavita. (10) Ni estas invitataj. (11) Mi estis invitata. (12) Li estus invitata. (13) Estu amata. (14) Estu lavita. (15) Tiu ĉi komercaĵo estas ĉiam volonte aĉetata de mi. (16) La surtuto estas aĉetita de mi, sekve ĝi apartenas al mi. (17) Kiam via domo estis konstruata, mia domo estis jam longe konstruita. (18) Mi sciigas, ke de nun la ŝuldoj de mia filo ne estos pagataj de mi. (19) Estu trankvila, mia tuta ŝuldo estos pagita

EXERCISES.

al vi baldaň. (20) Mia ora ringo ne estus nun tiel longe serêata, se ĝi ne estus tiel lerte kaŝita de vi. (21) Laŭ la projekto de la ingénieroj tiu ĉi fervojo estas konstruata en la daŭro de du jaroj; sed mi pensas, ke ĝi estos konstruata pli ol tri jarojn.¹ (22) Sur la kameno inter du potoj staras fera kaldrono; el la kaldrono, en kiu sin trovas bolanta akvo, eliras vapo; tra la fenestro, kiu sin trovas apud la pordo, la vapo iras sur la korton.²

¹ *Jarojn*, being in the accusative, shows that some preposition has been omitted (see para. 68 (b)).

² Accusative of direction (see para. 67 (a)).

TRANSLATION 9.

(1) I am (being) loved. (2) He was loved. (3) We shall be loved. (4) You would be loved. (5) I have been washed. (6) She had been washed. (7) They had been washed. (8) You will have been washed. (9) It would have been washed. (10) We are (about) to be invited. (11) I was (about) to be invited. (12) He would be about to be invited. (13) Be loved. (14) Be (having been) washed. (15) This merchandise is always willingly (being) bought by me. (16) The overcoat has been (was) bought by me, consequently it belongs to me. (17) When your house was being built, my house had already long been built. (18) I make known that from now my son's debts will not be paid by me. (19) Be tranquil, my entire debt will soon be (have been) paid to you. (20) My gold ring would not now be so long being looked for if it had not (should not have) been so cleverly hidden by you. (21) According to the project of the engineers this railway is (about) to be constructed in the space (duration) of two years; but I think it will take (be being constructed during) more than three years. (22) Upon the fireplace between two pots stands an iron kettle; from the kettle, in which is (finds itself) boiling water, issues steam; through the window, which is (finds itself) near the door, the steam goes into (on to) the yard.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 10.

Correlative Words (see paras. 139—157).

(1) *Ia, Ial, Iam, Ie, Iel, Ies, Io, Iom, Iu.* (2) La montritajn naŭ vortojn ni konsilas bone ellerni, ĉar el ili ĉiu povas jam fari al si grandan serion da aliaj pronomoj kaj adverboj. (3) Se ni aldonas al ili la literon K, ni ricevas vortojn demandajn aŭ rilatajn : *Kia, Kial, Kiam, Kie, Kiel, Kies, Kio, Kiom, Kiu.* (4) Se ni aldonas la literon T, ni ricevas vortojn montrajn : *Tia, Tial, Tiuj, Tie, Tiel, Ties, Tio, Tiom, Tiu.* (5) Aldonante la literon Ĉ, ni ricevas vortojn komunajn : *Ćia, Ćial, Ćiam, Ćie, Ćiel, Ćies, Ćio, Ćiom, Ćiu.* (6) Aldonante la prefikson NEN-, ni ricevas vortojn neajn : *Nenia, Nenial, Neniam, Nenie, Neniel, Nenies, Nenio, Neniom, Neniu.* (7) Aldonante al la vortoj montraj la vorton Ći, ni ricevas montron pli proksiman ; ekzemple : *Tiu* (pli malproksima), *Tiu ći* (aŭ, *Ći tiu*) (pli proksima) ; *Tie* (malproksime), *Tie ći* (aŭ, *Ći tie*) (proksime). (8) Aldonante al la vortoj demandaj la vorton AJN, ni ricevas vortojn sendiferencajn : *Kia ajn, Kial ajn, Kiam ajn, Kie ajn, Kiel ajn, Kies ajn, Kio ajn, Kiom ajn, Kiu ajn.* (9) Ekster tio, el la diritaj vortoj ni povas ankoraŭ fari aliajn vortojn, per helpo de gramatikaj finigoj kaj aliaj vortoj (sufiksoj) ; ekzemple : *Tiam, Ćiam, Kioma, Tiae, Ći-tiae, Tieulo, Tiamulo*, k.t.p. (kaj tiel plu).

TRANSLATION 10.

(1) *Ia*=some, any. *Ial*=for some reason. *Iam*=sometime, once (on a time). *Ie*=somewhere. *Iel*=in some manner. *Ies*=somebody's, anybody's. *Io*=something, anything. *Iom*=some, any (quantity). *Iu*=someone. (2) The nine words shown we recommend to be well learnt, for from them everyone can at once (already) make for himself a large series of other pronouns and adverbs. (3) If we add to them the letter K, we get interrogative or relative words : *Kia*=what (kind or sort of). *Kial*=why, wherefore, for what reason.

EXERCISES.

Kiam=when, at what time. *Kie*=where, at what place. *Kiel*=how, in what manner. *Kies*=whose, of which. *Kio*=what (thing). *Kiom*=how much, how many, what amount. *Kiu*=who, which, what one. (4) If we add the letter T, we get the demonstrative words: *Tia*=such, that sort of. *Tial*=for that reason, therefore. *Tiam*=then, at that time. *Tie*=there, in that place. *Tiel*=thus, so, in that manner, like (that). *Ties*=that one's, of that. *Tio*=that (thing). *Tiom*=so much, that much, so many. *Tiu*=that (relative or personal). (5) By adding the letter Ĉ we get general words: *Čia*=each, every, every kind of. *Čial*=for every reason, for all reasons. *Čiam*=always, for all time. *Čie*=everywhere. *Čiel*=in every way. *Čies*=everyone's, each one's. *Čio*=everything. *Čiom*=all, the whole (quantity). *Čiu*=each one, all, everyone. (6) By adding the prefix NEN- we get negative words: *Nenia*=no kind of, none. *Nenial*=for no reason. *Neniam*=never. *Nenie*=nowhere. *Neniel*=nobody, in no way. *Nenies*=no one's, nobody's. *Nenio*=nothing. *Neniom*=no quantity, none. *Neniu*=nobody, no one. (7) By adding to the demonstrative words the word Ĉi we obtain a nearer indication; for example: *Tiu*=that (the one further off); *Tiu ĉi* (or, *Či tiu*)=this (the nearer one); *Tie*=there (further off). *Tie ĉi* (or, *Či tie*)=here (nearer). (8) By adding to the interrogative words the word AJN we get the indefinite words (expressions): *Kia ajn*=whatever (kind). *Kial ajn*=for whatever cause. *Kiam ajn*=whenever. *Kie ajn*=wherever. *Kiel ajn*=however, in whatever manner. *Kies ajn*=whosoever. *Kio ajn*=whatever (thing). *Kiom ajn*=however much, or many. *Kiu ajn*=whoever, whichever. (9) Besides (outside) that, from the said words we can still make other words by help of the grammatical terminations and other words (suffixes); for example: *Tiamia*=of that time, contemporary (adj.). *Čiamia*=continual, permanent. *Kioma*=which, or what (number or quantity). *Tiea*=yonder (adj.), of there (that place). *Či-tiea*=of here (this place). *Tieulo*=an aborigine (man of there, of that place). *Tiamulo*=a contemporary (man of then, of that time), k.t.p.=etc. (and so on).

EXERCISE 11.

Correlative Words—continued (see paras. 139—158).

- (1) Čia(ia) plumo sufícos. (2) Čiu helpustian homon.
(3) Tiu virino ne estas tia virino, kian mi estimas.

EXERCISES.

(4) Ial li foriris Berlinon, kaj mi ne scias ĝuste kial ;
iu persono (aŭ, iu) diris, ke li foriris la urbon pro
malsano. (5) Kie estas mia naztuko ? Mi ĝin ne
vidas ie. (6) Ĝi kuſas tie, sub tiu kanapo. (7)
Kiam vi venos min viziti ? (8) Mi venos ĉe vin iam
morgaŭ. (9) Kies domo estas tiu ? (10) Mi neniam
aŭdis, al kiu ĝi apartenas. (11) Ĉu vi konis iun en la
ĉambro ? (12) Mi ne konis iun (aŭ, mi konis nenion).
(13) El ĉiuj miaj amikoj, li estas la plej intima. (14)
Kian ĉarman leteron vi estas skribinta ! (15) Kia
homo estas tiu, kiu rajdas sur la griza ĉevalo ? (16)
Mi ne scias, mi lin neniam vidis antaŭe. (17) Kiom
da ĉevaloj vi havas ? (18) Mi ne havas tiom, kiom
mi havis antaŭ tri monatoj. (19) Ĉia aĝo havas siajn
devojn. (20) Ĉial tio estas la plej bona. (21) Ĉiam
pripensu, antaŭ ol vi parolas. (22) Ĉies ideo estas
diversa. (23) Preskaŭ ĉiu amas sin mem.

TRANSLATION 11.

(1) Any (some) kind of pen will do (suffice). (2) Anyone (everyone) would help such a man. (3) That woman is not the (that) kind of woman (that) I esteem. (4) For some reason he left Berlin, and I don't know exactly why ; some person (or, a certain person, or, someone) said that he left the city on account of an illness. (5) Where is my handkerchief ? I do not see it anywhere (somewhere). (6) It lies there, under that sofa. (7) When will you come to visit me ? (8) I will come to you some time to-morrow. (9) Whose house is that ? (10) I never heard to whom it belongs. (11) Did you know anyone (someone) in the room ? (12) I did not know anyone (or, I knew no one). (13) Of all my friends, he is the most intimate. (14) What a charming letter you have written ! (15) What sort of man is that who is riding on the grey horse ? (16) I do not know, I never saw him before. (17) How many horses have you ? (18) I have not so many as I had three months ago. (19) Every age has its duties. (20) For every reason (all reasons) that is the best. (21) Always reflect before you speak. (22) Everyone's idea is different. (23) Nearly everyone loves himself.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 12.

Prepositions and Accusative of Direction (see paras. 67, 249—261).

(1) Ĉiu prepozicioj per si mem postulas ĉiam nur la nominativon. (2) Se ni iam post prepozicio uzas la akuzativon, la akuzativo tie dependas ne de la prepozicio, sed de aliaj kaŭzoj. (3) Ekzemple: Por esprimi direkton, ni aldonas al la vorto la finon N; sekve: *tie* = “en tiu loko,” *tien* = “al tiu loko”; tiel same ni ankaŭ diras: “La birdo flugis en la ĝardenon, sur la tablon,” kaj la vortoj “*ĝardenon*,” “*tablon*” staras tie ĉi en akuzativo, ne ĉar la prepozicioj “en” kaj “sur” tion ĉi postulas, sed nur ĉar ni volis esprimi direkton, tio estas, montri, ke la birdo sin ne trovis antaŭe en la ĝardeno aŭ sur la tablo kaj tie flugis, sed, ke ĝi de alia loko flugis al la ĝardeno, al la tablo (ni volas montri, ke la ĝardeno kaj tablo ne estis la loko de la flugado, sed nur la celo de la flugado); en tiaj okazoj ni uzus la finigon N tute egale ĉu ia prepozicio starus aŭ ne. (4) Morgaŭ mi veturos Parizon (aŭ, en Parizon). (5) Mi restos hodiaŭ dome. (6) Jam estas tempo iri domen. (7) Ni disigis kaj iris en diversajn flankojn; mi iris dekstren kaj li iris maldekstren. (8) Flanken, sinjoro!

TRANSLATION 12.

(1) All prepositions by themselves always require the nominative only. (2) If we ever, after a preposition, use the accusative, the accusative there (in that case) depends not on the preposition, but on other causes. (3) For example: In order to express direction we add to the word the termination N as follows: *tie* = “in that place” (there), *tien* = “to that place” (thither); thus in the same way we also say: “The bird flew into the garden, upon the table,” and the words “*ĝardenon*,” “*tablon*,” stand here in (the) accusative, not because the prepositions “en” and “sur” require this, but only because

EXERCISES.

we wished to express direction, that is, to show that the bird was not (did not find itself) previously in the garden or on the table and flew (about) there, but that it flew from some other place to the garden, to the table (we wish to show that the garden and table were not the place of the flying, but only the destination (aim, purpose) of the flying); in such cases we should use the termination *N* all the same whether any preposition were there (should stand) or not. (4) To-morrow I shall travel to Paris (or, into Paris). (5) I shall remain to-day at home. (6) It is already time to go home. (7) We separated and went in different directions; I went to the right and he went to the left. (8) To one side (stand aside), Sir!

EXERCISE 13.

Prepositions and Accusative of Direction—continued (see paras. 249—261).

- (1) Kie vi estas? (2) Mi estas en la ĉevalejo, sed mi estas enironta en la bovinejon. (3) Kien vi iras? (4) Mi iras en la preĝejon. (5) La birdo flugas en la ĉambro (ĝi estas en la ĉambro kaj flugadas en ĝi). (6) La birdo flugas en la ĉambro (ĝi estis ekster la ĉambro kaj flugas nun en ĝin). (7) El sub la kanapo la muso kuris sub la liton, kaj dum ĝi kuradis sub la lito, la kato ĝin ekkaptis. (8) Anstataŭ kafo la kelnero donis al mi teon kun sukero, sed sen kremono, tial mi ordonis al li, ke li alportu kremon, kaj kiam li ĝin alportis (aŭ, estis ĝin alportinta), mi enmetis en la tason da teo unu sukereron,¹ tiam mi enverŝis el la kremujo la kremon. (9) Mi metis la manon sur la tablon. (10) En la salono estis neniu krom li kaj lia fiancino. (11) La hirundo flugis trans la riveron, ĉar trans la rivero sin trovis aliaj hirundoj. (12) Kiam li estis ĉe mi, li staris tutan horon apud la fenestro. (13) Ili iris Parizon (aŭ, al Parizo).

¹ The suffix *-ER* denotes one of many objects of the same kind, therefore “one lump” out of the collection of lumps (see para. 273).

EXERCISES.

TRANSLATION 13.

(1) Where are you? (2) I am in the stable, but I am about to go into the cowshed. (3) Where are you going? (4) I am going into the church. (5) The bird flies in the room (it is in the room and is flying in it). (6) The bird flies into the room (it was outside the room, and now flies into it). (7) Out from under the sofa the mouse ran under the bed, and whilst it was running about under the bed the cat seized it. (8) Instead of coffee the waiter gave me tea with sugar, but without cream, therefore I ordered (to) him to bring (that he bring) cream, and when he brought it (or, had brought it), I put into the cup of tea one lump of sugar, then I poured in the cream out of the cream-jug. (9) I put my (the) hand on the table. (10) In the drawing-room was nobody except him and his fiancée. (11) The swallow flew across the river, because across the river were (found themselves) other swallows. (12) When he was at my house (with me) he stood (for) a whole hour near the window. (13) They went to Paris.

EXERCISE 14.

Prepositions—continued (see paras. 249—261).

(1) Ili ĝojis je niaj malfeliĉoj. (2) Volu montri al mi la dormoĉambro. (3) Estas nur tajloro, kiu povas fari al (or, por) si veston. (4) Ni eniris kafejon antaŭ ol reveni al la hotelo. (5) La kelnero metis antaŭ mi teleron, kuleron, kaj tranĉilon. (6) Anstataŭ kartludadi, li lernis Esperanton. (7) Mi staris apud la pordo dum li paroladis kun sia amiko. (8) La profesoro ĉe la lernejo venis kun mi ĉe vian patron. (9) Li sekvis post mi en la interspaco de ĉirkaŭ tri pašoj. (10) Si donis al mi moneron da unu franko. (11) Li restis ĉe ni de sabato ĝis mardo. (12) Sen mia scio, la birdo defluggis de la arbo. (13) Li paligis de timo, kaj mi, pro teruro, ne sciis kion fari. (14) Dum (aŭ, en) la aŭtuno mi vojaĝadis en Italujon. (15) La leporhundo estas ekster la domo. (16) Tiu ĉi estas la plej granda el ĉiuj arboj en la ĝardeno. (17) Ne miru pri mia saceremonieco kontraŭ vi. (18) Krom Esperanto, mi parolas la lingvon anglan. (19) Si estis bona, kaj krom tio, tre bela fraŭlino.

EXERCISES.

TRANSLATION 14.

(1) They rejoiced at our misfortunes. (2) Kindly (be willing) show me the bedroom. (3) It is only a tailor who can make (for) himself a coat. (4) We entered a café before returning to the hotel. (5) The waiter put before me a plate, spoon, and knife. (6) Instead of playing cards, he learnt Esperanto. (7) I stood near the door whilst he conversed with his friend. (8) The professor of (at) the school came with me to your father's (house). (9) He followed me at a distance of about three paces (steps). (10) She gave me a coin of one franc. (11) He stayed with us from Saturday till Tuesday. (12) Unknown to me (without my knowledge), the bird flew down from the tree. (13) He grew pale with fear, and I, from terror, did not know what to do. (14) During (or, in) the autumn I travelled about in Italy. (15) The greyhound (hare-hound) is outside the house. (16) This is the largest of all the trees in the garden. (17) Do not wonder at (concerning) my unceremoniousness towards you. (18) Besides Esperanto, I speak the English language. (19) She was good, and besides that, a very beautiful young lady.

EXERCISE 15.

Prepositions—continued (see paras. 249—261).

(1) Li fiancigis kun Fraŭliuno Berta, post kiam li estis parolinata kun sia patro. (2) Mi restadas tie ĉi laŭ la konsilio de mia kuracisto. (3) Malgraŭ mia konsilo, li eliris la urbon per flanka vojeto. (4) La domo konstruita de mia onklo estas kovrita per ardezoj. (5) Ekzistas tempo por ĝio. (6) Ni invitas ĉiujn vidi por si. (7) Por tiu ĉi prezo mi aĉetis por la infanoj tableton. (8) Mi devas ekiri post kvarono de horo. (9) Tagon post tago ni iris preter la fenestroj de la domo. (10) Ili sekvis unu post la alia. (11) Li demandis ŝin, pro kio ŝi ploras. (12) Ne sopiru pri via perdita feliĉo; ne peusu pri ĝi. (13) Sen vi, ni estas kvazaŭ sen kapo. (14) Spite miaj protestoj,

EXERCISES.

kaj spite ĉio, kion mi povis diri, li foriris. (15) La hundo kuris sub la tablon por ekkapti la katon, sed la kato forkuris, kaj la hundo ĝin mortigis sub la kanapo. (16) La birdo, kiu sidis sur la arbo, surflugis sur la tegmenton de la domo. (17) Li jetis ŝtonon super la muron. (18) Li iris tra la arbaro, kaj tiam pasis trans la ponton.

TRANSLATION 15.

(1) He became engaged (was affianced) to (with) Miss Bertha after he had spoken to (with) her father. (2) I am remaining here by (according to) the advice of my doctor. (3) In spite of my advice, he left the city by a by-path. (4) The house built by my uncle has been covered with slates. (5) There is a time for everything. (6) We invite all to see for themselves. (7) At this price I bought for the children a tiny table. (8) I must start in (after) a quarter of an hour. (9) Day by (after) day we went by (past) the windows of the house. (10) They followed one after the other. (11) He asked her why (because of what) she cried (cries). (12) Do not sigh for (about, concerning) your lost happiness; do not think of (about) it. (13) Without you, we are as without a head. (14) In spite of my protestations, and in spite of everything I could say, he went away. (15) The dog ran under the table to (in order to) seize the cat, but the cat ran away, and the dog killed it under the sofa. (16) The bird that sat on the tree flew on to the roof of the house. (17) He threw a stone over the wall. (18) He went through the wood, and then passed across the bridge.

EXERCISE 16.

Preposition "Je" and the Accusative (see paras. 65—69, 251, 256).

(1) Se ni bezonas uzi prepozicion kaj la senco ne montras al ni, kian prepozicion uzi, tiam ni povas uzi la komunan prepozicion "je." (2) Sed estas bone

EXERCISES.

uzadi la vorton "je" kiel eble pli malofte. (3) Anstataŭ la vorto "je" ni povas ankaŭ uzi akuzativon sen prepozicio. (4) Mi ridas je lia naiveco (aŭ, mi ridas pro lia naiveco, aŭ, mi ridas lian naivecon). (5) Je la lasta fojo (aŭ, la lastan fojon) mi vidis lin ĉe vi. (6) Mi veturis du tagojn kaj unu nokton. (7) Mi sopiras je mia perdita feliĉo (aŭ, mian perditan feliĉon). (8) El la dirita regulo sekvas, ke se ni pri ia verbo ne scias, ĉu ĝi postulas post si la akuzativon (t.e., ĉu ĝi estas aktiva) aŭ ne, ni povas ĉiam uzi la akuzativon. (9) Ekzemple, ni povas diri, "obei al la patro," kaj "obei la patron" (anstataŭ "obei je la patro"). (10) Sed ni ne uzas la akuzativon tiam, kiam la klareco de la senco tion ĉi malpermisas; ekzemple, ni povas diri, "pardoni al la malamiko," kaj, "pardoni la malamikon," sed ni devas diri ĉiam, "pardoni al la malamiko lian kulpon."

TRANSLATION 16.

(1) If we need to use a preposition, and the sense does not show (to) us what preposition to use, then we can use the general (common) preposition "je." (2) But it is well to use the word "je" as seldom as possible. (3) Instead of the word "je," we can also use an accusative without a preposition. (4) I laugh *at* his simplicity (or, I laugh *because of* his simplicity, or, I deride his simplicity). (5) On the last occasion (or, last time) I saw him with you. (6) I travelled two days and one night. (7) I sigh *for* (I bemoan) my lost happiness. (8) From the said rule (it) follows that if we, concerning any verb, do not know whether it requires after it the accusative (*i.e.*, whether it is active) or not, we can always use the accusative. (9) For example, we can say, "to obey *to* the father," and, "to obey *the* father" (instead of "to obey *je* the father"). (10) But we do not use the accusative (then) when the clearness of the sense forbids this; for example, we can say "to pardon *to* the enemy," and, "to pardon *the* enemy," but we must always say, "to pardon *to* the enemy his offence."

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 17.

Participles. Substantival, Adjectival, Adverbial (see paras. 203—213).

(1) Se la lernanto scius bone sian lecionon, la instruanto¹ lin ne punus. (2) Fluanta akvo estas pli pura, ol akvo staranta senmove. (3) Kiam Nikodemo batas Jozefon, tiam Nikodeumo estas la batanto kaj Jozefo la batato. (4) Al homo, pekinta senintence, Dio facile pardonas. (5) Trovinte pomon, mi ĝin mangis. (6) La falinta homo ne povis sin levi. (7) Ne riproĉu vian amikon, ĉar vi mem pli multe meritas riproĉon; li estas nur unufoja mensoginto, dum vi estas ankoraŭ nun ĉiam mensoganto. (8) La tempo pasinta jam neniak revenos; la tempon venontan neniu ankoraŭ konas. (9) Venu, ni atendas Cin (Vin), Savonto de la mondo! (10) En la lingvo Esperanto ni vidas la estontan lingvon de la tuta mondo. (11) Aŭgusto estas mia plej amata filo. (12) Mono havata estas pli grava ol havita. (13) Pasero kaptita estas pli bona, ol aglo kaptota. (14) La soldatoj kondukis la arrestitojn tra la stratoj. (15) Li venis al mi tute ne atendite.

¹ *Instruanto* = An occasional teacher. *Instruisto* = A teacher by profession.

TRANSLATION 17.

(1) If the pupil knew (should know) his lesson well, the teacher would not punish him. (2) Flowing water is purer than stagnant (standing without movement) water. (3) When Nicodemus beats Joseph, then Nicodemus is the beater (beating one) and Joseph the beaten. (4) God easily pardons (to) a person sinning (having sinned) unintentionally. (5) Having found an apple, I ate it. (6) The fallen man could not raise himself. (7) Do not reproach your friend, for you much more merit reproach; he is only a one-time liar (has been once a liar), while you are yet now always a liar (while you are a liar always now). (8) Time passed will never

EXERCISES.

more return ; time about to come no one yet knows. (9) Come, we await Thee (You), Saviour of the world ! (10) In the language Esperanto we see the future language of the whole world. (11) Augustus is my best loved son. (12) Money in hand (being had) is more important than that once had (than having been had). (13) A sparrow caught is better than an eagle about to be caught. (14) The soldiers led the prisoners through the streets. (15) He came to me quite unexpectedly.

EXERCISE 18.

Numerals and Suffixes -OBL-, -ON-, -OP- (see paras. 115—124, 284).

(1) Mi havas cent pomojn. (2) Mi havas centon da pomoj. (3) Tiu ĉi urbo havas milionon da loĝantoj. (4) Mi aĉetis dek du orangojn. (5) Mi aĉetis dekduon da kuleroj kaj du dekduojn da forkoj. (6) Mil jaroj (aŭ, milo da jaroj) faras miljaron. (7) Unue, mi redonas al vi la monon, kiun vi pruntis al mi; due, mi daŭkas vin por la prundo; trie, mi petas vin ankaŭ poste prunti al mi, kiam mi bezonas monon. (8) Por ĉiu tago mi ricevas kvin frankojn, sed por la hodiaŭa tago mi ricevis duoblan pagon, t.e. (tio estas), dek frankojn. (9) Kvinoble sep estas (or, faras) tridek kvin. (10) Tri estas duono de ses. (11) Ok estas kvar kvinonoj de dek. (12) Kvar metroj da tiu ĉi ŝtofo kostas naŭ frankojn; tial du metroj kostas kvar kaj duonon frankojn (aŭ, da frankoj). (13) Unu tago estas tricent-sesdek-kvinono, aŭ tricent-sesdek-sesono, de jaro. (14) Tiuj ĉi du amikoj promenas ĉiam duope. (15) Kvinope ili sin jetis sur min, sed mi venkis ĉiujn kvin atakantojn. (16) Por miaj kvar infanoj mi aĉetis dek du pomojn, kaj al ĉiu el la infanoj mi donis po tri pomoj. (17) Tiu ĉi libro havas sesdek paĝojn; tial, se mi legos en ĉiu tago po dek kvin paĝoj, mi finos la tutan libron en kvar tagoj.

EXERCISES.

- (18) Kioma horo estas ? La tria. (19) Je kioma horo ekiras la vagonaro por Berlino ? (20) Je tri kvaronoj de la tria (horo) (aŭ, je la dua kaj tri kvaronoj) (aŭ, unu kvarono antaŭ la tria) (aŭ, la dua kvardek kvin). (21) Kiun daton ni havas hodiaŭ ? (22) Hodiaŭ estas la dudek-sepa de marto. (23) Kiom kostas tio ĉi ? Naŭ frankojn¹ (aŭ, ĝi kostas naŭ frankojn). (24) Kiom estas la pezo de tiu kesto ? Kvardek funtoj.²

¹ Accusative, governed by the verb *kostas* in the question.

² Nominative, because *estas* does not govern accusative (see para. 64 (a)).

TRANSLATION 18.

- (1) I have a hundred apples. (2) I have a hundred of apples. (3) This town has a million (of) inhabitants. (4) I bought twelve oranges. (5) I bought a dozen (of) spoons and two dozen (of) forks. (6) A thousand years (or, a thousand of years) makes a millennium. (7) Firstly, I give back to you the money which you lent (to) me ; secondly, I thank you for the loan ; thirdly, I beg you also afterwards to lend to me when I (shall) need money. (8) For each day I receive five francs, but for this (to-day's) day I received double payment, *i.e.* (that is), ten francs. (9) Five times (five-fold) seven is thirty-five. (10) Three is (the) half of six. (11) Eight is four-fifths of ten. (12) Four mètres of this stuff cost nine francs ; therefore two mètres cost four and a-half francs (or, of francs). (13) One day is a 365th or 366th of a year. (14) These two friends always walk out two together (by twos). (15) Five together (by fives) they threw themselves upon me, but I vanquished all five assailants. (16) For my four children I bought twelve apples, and to each of the children I gave at the rate of three apples. (17) This book has sixty pages ; therefore if I (shall) read (in) each day at the rate of fifteen pages, I shall finish the whole book in four days. (18) What time (hour) is it ? Three o'clock (the third). (19) At what time does the train start for Berlin ? (20) At three quarters of the third (hour) (or, at the second and three quarters) (or, one quarter before the third) (or, two forty-five). (21) What is the date (what date have we to-day ?) ? (22) To-day is the 27th of March. (23) How much does this cost ? Nine francs (or, it costs nine francs). (24) How much is the weight of that box ? Forty pounds.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 19.

Suffixes -AĈ-, -AD- and Prefix EK- (see paras. 270, 288).

(1) En la daŭro de kelke da minutoj mi aŭdis du pafojn. (2) La pafado daŭris tre longe. (3) Mi eksaltis de surprizo. (4) Mi saltas tre lerte. (5) Mi saltadis la tutan tagon de loko al loko. (6) Lia hieraŭa parolo estis tre bela, sed la tro multa parolado lacigas lin. (7) Kiam vi ekparolis, ni atendis aŭli ion novan, sed baldaŭ ni vidis, ke ni trompiĝis. (8) Li kantas tre belan kanton. (9) La kantado estas agrabla okupo. (10) La diamanto havas belan brilon. (11) Du ekbriloj de fulmo trakuris tra la malluma ĉielo. (12) La vortoj "aŭdado, flarado, gustumado, pensado," k.t.p., esprimas niajn kapablojn; sed kiam ni uzas tiajn vortojn sen la sufikso *-ADO*, tiam ili esprimas apartajn agojn de tiaj kapabloj. (13) Prezentu al vi la virinacon dancanta antaŭ mi !

TRANSLATION 19.

(1) In the course (duration) of some minutes I heard two shots. (2) The fusillade (shooting) continued very long. (3) I started (jumped suddenly) with surprise. (4) I jump very cleverly. (5) I was jumping all day from place to place. (6) His yesterday's speech was very fine but (the) too much speaking fatigues him. (7) When you began to speak, we expected to hear something new, but soon we saw that we were mistaken. (8) He sings a very fine song. (9) Singing is an agreeable occupation. (10) The diamond has a beautiful brilliancy (lustre). (11) Two flashes of lightning ran through the dark sky. (12) The words "hearing, smelling, tasting, thinking," etc., express our faculties; but when we use such words without the suffix *-ADO*, then they express isolated acts of such faculties. (13) Fancy the hag dancing before me !

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 20.

Suffixes -AĴ-, -EC- (see para. 271).

- (1) Vi parolas sensencajōn, mia amiko. (2) Mi trinkis teon kunn kuko kaj konfitajo. (3) Akvo estas fluidaĵo. (4) Mi ne volis trinki la vinon, ĉar ĝi enhavis en si ian suspektan malklarajon. (5) Sur la tablo staris diversaj sukerajoj. (6) En tinj ĉi boteleoj sin trovas diversaj acidoj, vinagro, sulfuracido, azotacido, kaj aliaj. (7) Via vino estas nur ia abomena acidalo. (8) La acideco de tiu ĉi vinagro estas tre malforta. (9) Mi manĝis bongustan ovajon. (10) Tiu ĉi granda altejo ne estas natura monto. (11) La alteco de tiu monto ne estas tre granda. (12) Kiam mi ien veturas, mi neniam prenas kun mi multon da pakajo. (13) Ĉemizojn, kolumojn, manumojn, kaj ceterajn similajn objektojn ni nomas tolajo, kvankam ili ne ĉiam estas faritaj el tolo. (14) Glaciajo estas dolēa glaciigita frandajo. (15) La riĉeco de tiu ĉi homo estas granda, sed lia malsageco estas ankoraŭ pli granda. (16) Li amas tiun ĉi knabinon pro ŝia beleco kaj boneco. (17) Lia heroeco plaĉas al mi. (18) La tuta supraĵo de la lago estis kovrita per naĝantaj folioj kaj diversaj aliaj kreskajoj. (19) Mi vivas kun li en granda amikeco.

TRANSLATION 20.

- (1) You speak (a piece of) nonsense, my friend. (2) I drank tea, with cake and preserve (jam). (3) Water is a fluid (thing). (4) I would not drink the wine because it contained in it some suspicious muddiness. (5) Upon the table stood various sweetmeats. (6) In these phials are various acids, vinegar, sulphuric acid, nitric acid, and others. (7) Your wine is only some abominable sour stuff. (8) The acidity of this vinegar is very weak. (9) I ate a savoury (good-tasted) omelette. (10) This great height (eminence) is not a natural mountain. (11) The height of that mountain is not very great. (12) When I travel anywhere, I never take with me much luggage. (13) Shirts, collars, cuffs, and other similar objects we call linen, although they are not always

EXERCISES.

made out of lint-cloth. (14) An ice is a sweet frozen dainty.
(15) The wealth of this person is great, but his foolishness is still greater. (16) He loves this girl for her beauty and goodness. (17) His heroism pleases me. (18) The entire surface of the lake was covered with floating leaves and various other growths. (19) I live with him in great amity.

EXERCISE 21.

Suffixes -AN-, -ESTR-, -IST-, -UL- (see para. 272).

(1) Kiu okupas sin je meħaniko, estas meħanikisto, kaj kiu okupas sin je hemio, estas hemiisto. (2) Diplomatiiston oni povas ankaŭ nomi diplomato, sed fizikiston oni ne povas nomi fiziko, ēar fiziko estas la nomo de la scienco mem. (3) La fotografisto fotografis min, kaj mi sendis mian fotografaĵon al mia patro. (4) La dentisto eltiris du el la dentoj de mia fratino. (5) La ŝipanoj devas obei la ŝipestron. (6) Ĉiuj loĝantoj de regno estas regnanoj. (7) Urbanoj estas ordinare pli ruzaj, ol vilaganoj. (8) La regnistro de nia lando estas bona kaj saĝa reĝo. (9) La Parizanoj estas gajaj homoj. (10) Nia provincestro estas severa, sed justa. (11) Nia urbo havas bonajn policanojn, sed ne sufice energian policestron. (12) Luteranoj kaj Kalvinanoj estas kristanoj. (13) Germanoj kaj francoj, kiuj loĝas en Rusujo, estas Rusujanoj, kvankam ili ne estas rusoj. (14) Li estas nelerta kaj naiva provincano. (15) La loĝantoj de unu regno estas samregnanoj; la loĝantoj de unu urbo estas samurbanoj; la konfesantoj de unu religio estas sam-religianoj. (16) Niaregimentestro estas por siaj soldatoj kiel bona patro. (17) La botisto faras botojn kaj ūojn, sed tian homon en Anglujo oni nomas ordinare ūisto. (18) La lignisto vendas lignon, kaj la lignajisto faras tablojn, seĝojn, kaj aliajn lignajn objektojn. (19) Ŝteliston neniu lasas en sian domon. (20) La kuraga maristo dronis en la maro. (21) Verkisto verkas librojn, kaj skribisto simple transskribas paperojn. (22) Ni havas diversajn servantojn:

EXERCISES.

kuiriston, ĉambristinon, infanistinon, kaj veturigiston.
(23) La riĉulo havas multe da mono. (24) Ni ne
scias, ĉu li estas malsagulo aŭ ruzulo. (25) Timulo
timas eĉ sian propran ombron. (26) Li estas
mensogisto¹ kaj malnobulo.

¹ *Mensogisto* = Habitual, or professional, liar. *Mensoganto* = An occasional liar.

TRANSLATION 21.

(1) (He) who occupies himself with mechanics is a mechanic, and (he) who occupies himself with chemistry is a chemist. (2) A diplomatist one can also call a "diplomate," but a physicist cannot be called "physics," because physics is the name of the science itself. (3) The photographer photographed me, and I sent my photograph to my father. (4) The dentist drew two of my sister's teeth. (5) The crew must obey the captain. (6) All inhabitants of a state are *regnanoj* (members of a state). (7) Townspeople are usually more crafty than villagers. (8) The ruler of our land is a good and wise king. (9) The Parisians are a gay people (men). (10) Our provincial governor is strict, but just. (11) Our town has good policemen, but an insufficiently energetic chief constable. (12) Lutherans and Calvinists are Christians. (13) Germans and French, who live in Russia, are residents in Russia (Russian residents), although they are not Russians. (14) He is a dull and simple provincial. (15) The inhabitants of the same (one) state are fellow-countrymen ; the inhabitants of one city are fellow-citizens ; the professors (confessors) of one religion are co-religionists. (16) Our regiments chief is for his soldiers like a good father (is like a good father to his soldiers). (17) The bootmaker makes boots and shoes, but such a man in England they usually call a shoemaker. (18) The timber merchant sells wood, and the joiner makes tables, chairs, and other wooden articles. (19) A thief no one lets into his house. (20) The courageous seaman was drowned in the sea. (21) An author writes books, and a scribe simply transcribes papers. (22) We have various servants : a cook (male), a chambermaid, nursemaid, and coachman. (23) The rich man has much money. (24) We do not know whether he is a fool or a cunning man. (25) A coward fears even his own shadow. (26) He is an habitual liar and base fellow (ignoble man).

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 22.

Suffixes -AR-, -ER- (see para. 273).

(1) Mia skribilaro konsistas el inkujo, sablujo, kelke da plumoj, krajono, kaj inksorbilo. (2) Oni metis antau mi mangilon, kiu konsistis el telero, kulero, tranêilo, forko, glaseto por brando, glaso por vino, kaj buštuko. (3) En varmega tago mi amas promeni en arbaro. (4) Nia lando venkos, ĉar nia militistaro estas granda kaj brava. (5) Sur kruta ŝuparo li levis sin al la tegmento de la domo. (6) Mi ne scias la lingvon hispanan, sed per helpo de vortaro hispano-germana mi tamen komprenis iom vian leteron. (7) Sur tiuj ĉi vastaj kaj herboriĉaj kampoj paſtas sin grandaj brutaroj, precipice aroj da bellanaj ŝafoj. (8) Centimo, pfenigo, kaj kopeko estas moneroj. (9) Sablero enfalis en mian okulon. (10) Unu fajrero estas sufiĉa, por eksplodigi pulvon. (11) Vi ne trovos eĉ unu polveron sur lia vesto, aŭ unu koteron sur lia pantalono.

TRANSLATION 22.

(1) My writing materials consist of an inkstand, a sand box, some pens, a pencil, and blotting paper. (2) They put before me a table service (eating implements), which consisted of a plate, spoon, knife, fork, liqueur glass (small glass) for brandy, a glass for wine, and a serviette. (3) On (in) a hot day I love to walk in a wood. (4) Our country will conquer, for our army is large and brave. (5) On a steep ladder he raised himself to the roof of the house. (6) I do not know the Spanish language, but by help of a Spanish-German dictionary I nevertheless understood to some extent your letter. (7) On these vast and richly herbaged fields feed (themselves) large herds of cattle, especially flocks (collections) of fine-fleeced sheep. (8) A centime, a pfennig, and a copeck are coins. (9) A grain of sand fell into my eye. (10) One spark is sufficient (for) to explode gunpowder. (11) You will not find even one grain of dust on his coat, or one speck of mud on his trousers.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 23.

*Suffixes -*J*-, -*NJ*-, and *Mošto* (see paras. 274, 283).*

- (1) La gepatroj ĉiam nomas Johanon, Johanējo (aŭ Joĉjo), kaj Erneston ili nomas Erneĉjo (aŭ Erêjo).
- (2) Vilhelmo nomas sian fratinon Marinjo (aŭ Maujo), kvankam ŝi estas baptita Mario ; kaj Mario nomas sian fraton Vilhelējo (aŭ Vilheĉjo, aŭ Vilējo, aŭ Viĉjo).
- (3) Sofinjo estas baptita Sofio, sed kelkafoje ŝia frato, Nikolao, nomis ŝin Sonjo, kaj ŝi nomis lin Nikējo (aŭ Niĉjo).
- (4) Mi diris al la reĝo : via reĝa mošto, pardonu min !
- (5) El la kvar letero ĵunu estis adresita : Al Lia Episkopa Mošto, La Episkopo de N.; la dua : Al Lia Grafa Mošto de P.; la tria : Al Lia Mošto Sinjoro D.; la kvara : Al Sinjoro G.C.

TRANSLATION 23.

- (1) The parents always call John Johnnie (or Jack), and Ernest they call Ernste (or Ernie). (2) William calls his sister Polly (or Poll), although she has been christened Mary ; and Mary calls her brother Willie (or Will, or Billy, or Bill). (3) Sophy was christened Sophia, but sometimes her brother Nicholas called her Soph, and she called him Nickie (or Nick). (4) I said to the King : pardon me, your Majesty ! (5) Of the four letters one was addressed to the Right Reverend the Bishop of N.; the second to the Right Honourable the Earl of P.; the third to the Honorable D. (*or*, His Honour, *or*, His Worship, etc., D.); the fourth to Mr. G.C. (*or*, G.C., Esq.).

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 24.

Suffixes -EBL-, -EM-, -IND- (see para. 275).

(1) La ŝtalo estas fleksebla, sed la fero ne estas fleksebla. (2) La vitro estas rompebla kaj travidebla. (3) Ne ĉiu kreskajo estas mangeba. (4) Via parolo estas tute nekomprenebla kaj viaj leteroj estas ĉiam skribitaj tute nelegeble. (5) Rakontu al mi vian malfeliĉon, ĉar eble mi povos helpi al vi. (6) Li rakontis al mi historion tute ne kredebilan. (7) Ĉu vi amas vian patron? Kia demando! kompreneble, ke mi lin amas! (8) Mi kredeble ne povos veni al vi hodiaŭ, ĉar mi pensas, ke mi mem havos hodiaŭ gastojn. (9) Li estas homo ne kredinda. (10) Via ago estas tre laŭdinda. (11) Tiu ĉi grava tago restos por mi ĉiam memorinda. (12) Lia edzino estas tre laborema kaj ŝparema, kaj ŝi estas ankaŭ tre babilema kaj kriema, sed li estas tre ekkolerema kaj ekscitigas ofte ĝe la plej malgranda bagatelo; tamen li estas tre pardonema, li ne portas longe la koleron, kaj li tute ne estas venĝema. (13) Li estas tre kredema; eĉ la plej nekredeblajn aferojn, kiujn rakontas al li la plej nekredindaj homoj, li tuj kredas. (14) Li estas tre purema, kaj eĉ unu polveron vi ne trovos sur lia vesto.

TRANSLATION 24.

(1) Steel is flexible, but iron is not flexible. (2) Glass is breakable, and can be seen through (transparent=*diafana*). (3) Not every plant is eatable. (4) Your talk is quite incomprehensible, and your letters are always written quite illegibly. (5) Relate to me your misfortune, for possibly I can help you. (6) He told me a story quite incredible. (7) Do you love your father? What a question! Of course (it is understandable that) I love him! (8) I probably shall not be able to come to you to-day, because I think that I myself shall have guests to-day. (9) He is a person unworthy of belief. (10) Your action is very praiseworthy. (11) This important day will remain ever memorable for me. (12) His

EXERCISES.

wife is very industrious and thrifty, and she is also very loquacious and noisy, but he is very choleric, and often is excited at the least trifle; however he is very forgiving, he does not carry anger long, and he is not at all revengeful. (13) He is very credulous; even the most incredible things, that the most unbelievable people tell him, he believes at once. (14) He is very cleanly, and even a grain of dust you will not find on his coat.

EXERCISE 25.

Suffixes -EDZ-, -ID-, -IN- (see paras. 276, 279, 282).

Prefixes BO-, DUON-, GE-, PRA- (see para. 286).

- (1) Patro kaj patrino kune estas nomataj gepatroj.
- (2) Petro, Anno, kaj Elizabeto estas miaj gefratoj.
- (3) Gesinjoroj Smith bodiaū vespere venos al ni. (4) Mi gratnlis telegrafe la junajn geedzojn. (5) La gefianēoj staris apud la altaro. (6) La patro de mia edzino estas mia bopatro, mi estas lia bofilo, kaj mia patro estas la bopatro de mia edzino. (7) Ĉiujo parencoj de mia edzino estas miaj boparentoj, sekve ŝia frato estas mia bofrato, ŝia fratino estas mia bofratino; mia frato kaj fratino (gefratoj) estas la bogefratoj de mia edzino. (8) La edzino de mia nevo kaj la nevino de mia edzino estas miaj bonevinoj. (9) Virino kiu kuracas, estas kuracistino; edzino de kuracisto estas kuracistedzino. (10) La doktoredzino Jones vizitis hodiaū la gedoktorojn Robinson. (11) Li ne estas lavisto, li estas lavistinedzo. (12) La filoj, nepoj, kaj pranepoj de reĝo estas reĝidoj. (13) La hebreeoj estas Izraelidoj, ĉar ili devenas de Izraelo. (14) Ĉevalido estas nematura ĉevalo; kokido, nematura koko; bovido, nematura bovo; birdido, nematura birdo. (15) Miaj filoj kaj filinoj, miaj nepoj kaj nepinoj, miaj pranepoj kaj pranepinoj estas miaj idoj (aŭ, miaj posteuloj); sed miaj avoj kaj avinoj, miaj praavoj kaj praavinoj estas miaj prapatroj. (16) La edzino de mia patro estas mia patrino, kaj la avino de miaj infanoj.

EXERCISES.

(17) Sur la korto staras koko kun tri kokinoj. (18) Mia fratino estas tre bela knabino. (19) Mia onklino estas bona virino. (20) Mi vidis vian onklidon kun ŝiaj kvar nepinoj kaj kun mia nevino. (21) Lia duonpatrino estas mia bofratino. (22) Mi havas bovon kaj bovinon. (23) La juna vidvino fariĝis deuove fiancino. (24) La dua edzo de mia patrino estas mia duonpatro, kaj la infanetino, kiu estis naskita la lastan semajnon, estas mia duonfratino.

TRANSLATION 25.

- (1) A father and mother together are called parents.
(2) Peter, Anne, and Elizabeth are my brother and sisters.
(3) Mr. and Mrs. Smith will come to us this (to-day) evening.
(4) I congratulated by telegraph the young married couple.
(5) The affianced pair stood at the altar.
(6) My wife's father is my father-in-law, I am his son-in-law, and my father is my wife's father-in-law.
(7) All my wife's relations are my relatives by marriage (relations-in-law), consequently her brother is my brother-in-law, her sister is my sister-in-law; my brother and sister (gefratoj) are brother-and-sister-in-law of my wife.
(8) My nephew's wife and my wife's niece are my nieces-in-law.
(9) A woman who treats patients is a female doctor; the wife of a doctor is a *kuracistedzino*=a doctor's wife.
(10) Mrs. Doctor Jones visited to-day Dr. and Mrs. Robinson.
(11) He is not a washerman, he is a washerwoman's husband.
(12) The sons, grandsons, and great-grandsons of a king are princes (a king's descendants).
(13) The Jews are Israelites, for they descend (originate) from Israel.
(14) A foal is an immature horse; a chicken, an immature fowl; a calf, an immature ox; a fledgeling, an immature bird.
(15) My sons and daughters, my grandsons and grand-daughters, my great-grandsons and great-granddaughters, are my descendants; but my grandfathers and grandmothers, my great-grandfathers and great-grandmothers, are my ancestors.
(16) My father's wife is my mother, and the grandmother of my children.
(17) In (on) the yard are a cock and three hens.
(18) My sister is a very beautiful girl.
(19) My aunt is a good woman.
(20) I saw your aunt with her four grand-daughters and (with) my niece.
(21) His stepmother is my sister-in-law.
(22) I have an ox and a cow.
(23) The young widow became again engaged (a fiancée).
(24) The second husband of my mother is my stepfather, and the baby (female) which was born last week is my half-sister.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 26.

Sujh. -EG-, -ET- (see para. 277).

(1) Mi aĉetis por la infanoj tableton kaj kelke da seĝetoj. (2) En nia lando sin ne trovas montoj, sed nur montetoj. (3) Tuj post la hejto, la forno estis varmega, post unu horo ĝi estis jam nur varma, post du horoj ĝi estis nur iom varmeta, kaj post tri horoj ĝi estis jam tute malvarma. (4) En la somero ni trovas malvarmeton en densaj arbaregoj. (5) Li sidas apud la tablo kaj dormetas. (6) Mallargā vojeto kondukas tra tiu ĉi kampo al nia domo. (7) Sur lia vizago mi vidis ĝojan rideton. (8) Kun bruo oni malfermis la pordegon, kaj la kaleŝo enveturis en la korton. (9) Tiu ĉi estis jam ne simpla pluvo, sed pluvego. (10) Grandega hundo metis sur min sian antaŭan piedegon, kaj mi pro teruro ne sciis, kion fari. (11) Antaŭ nia militistaro staris granda serio da paflegoj.

TRANSLATION 26.

(1) I bought for the children a tiny table and some tiny chairs. (2) In our country there are no mountains (*lit.*, mountains do not find themselves), but only hills. (3) Immediately after the heating, the stove was hot, after an hour it was no more than (already only) warm, after two hours it was only just warm, and after three hours it was already quite cold. (4) In the summer we find coolness in thick forests. (5) He sits by the table and dozes. (6) A narrow path leads through this field to our house. (7) Upon his countenance I saw a joyful smile. (8) With noise they opened the gate, and the carriage drove into the courtyard. (9) This was no longer (already not) a simple shower, but a downpour (deluge). (10) An enormous dog put his huge forepaw upon me, and from terror I did not know what to do. (11) Before our army stood a great line of cannon.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 27.

Suffixes -EJ-, -ING, -UJ- (see para. 278).

(1) La domo, en kiu oni lernas, estas lernejo, kaj la domo, en kiu oni pregas, estas pregejo. (2) La kuiristo sidas en la kuirejo. (3) La kuracisto konsilis al mi iri en Ŝvitbanejon. (4) Magazeno, en kiu oni vendas cigarojn, aŭ ĉambro, en kiu oni tenas cigarojn, estas cigarejo; skatoleteto aŭ alia objekto, en kiu oni tenas cigarojn, estas cigarujo; tubeto, en kiun oni metas cigaron, kiam oni ĝin fumas, estas cigaringo. (5) Skatolo, en kiu oni tenas plumojn, estas plumujo, kaj bastoneto, sur kiu oni tenas plomon por skribado, estas plumingo. (6) Eu la kandelingo sidis brulanta kandelo. (7) En la poſo de mia pantalono mi portas monujon, kaj en la poſo de mia surtuto mi portas paperujon; pli grandan paperujon mi portas sub la brako. (8) La rusoj loĝas en Rusujo, kaj la germanoj en Germanujo.

TRANSLATION 27.

(1) The house in which one learns is a school, and the house in which one prays is a church. (2) The cook is (sits) in the kitchen. (3) The doctor advised me to go into a Turkish (sweat, vapour) bath. (4) A shop (warehouse, store) in which cigars are sold (they sell cigars), or a room in which cigars are kept, is a cigar shop (store); a small box or other thing into which cigars are put is a cigar-case; a little tube into which one puts a cigar when one smokes it is a cigarholder (mouthpiece). (5) A box in which one keeps pens is a penbox, and the little stick on which one has (keeps) a pen for writing is a penholder. (6) In the candlestick was (sat) a burning candle. (7) In my trousers' pocket I carry a purse, and in my overcoat pocket I carry a writing case (pocket book); a larger portfolio I carry under my arm. (8) (The) Russians live in Russia, and (the) Germans in Germany.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 28.

Suffixes -IG- and -IĜ- (see para. 280).

(1) En la kota vetero mia vesto forte malpuriĝis ; tial mi prenis broson kaj purigis la veston. (2) Li paliĝis de timo kaj poste li ruĝiĝis de honto. (3) Li fiancigis kun fraŭlino Berto; post tri monatoj estos la edziĝo ; la edziĝa soleño estos en la nova pregejo, kaj la edziĝa festo estos en la domo de liaj estontaj bopatroy. (4) Tiu ĉi maljunulo tute malsagigiĝis kaj infaniĝis. (5) Post infekta malsano oni ofte brulis la vestojn de la malsanulo. (6) Forigu vian fraton, ĉar li malhelpas al ni. (7) Si edziniĝis kun sia kuzo, kvankam ŝiaj gepatroy volis ŝin edzinigi kun alia persono. (8) En la printempo la glacio kaj la neĝo fluidiĝas. (9) Venigu la kuraciston, ĉar mi estas malsana. (10) Li venigis al si el Berlino multajn librojn. (11) Mia onklo ne mortis per natura morto, sed li tamen ne mortigis sin mem, kaj ankaŭ estis mortigita de neniу ; unu tagon, promenante apud la reloj de fervojo, li falis sub la radojn de veturnanta vagonaro kaj mortiĝis. (12) Mi ne pendigis mian ĉapon sur tiu ĉi arbeto ; sed la vento forblovis de mia kapo la ĉapon, kaj ĝi, flugante, pendigis sur la branĉoj de la arbeto. (13) Sidigu vin (aŭ, sidigu), sinjoro ! (14) La junulo aliĝis al nia militistaro, kaj kuraĝe batalis kune kun ni kontraŭ niaj malamikoj.

TRANSLATION 28.

(1) In the muddy weather my coat became very dirty ; therefore I took a brush and cleaned the coat. (2) He became (or grew) pale with (from) fear and afterwards he blushed (reddened) with shame. (3) He became engaged to (with) Miss Bertha ; in (after) three months will be the marriage ; the wedding ceremony will be in the new church, and the marriage festival will be in the house of his future parents-in-law. (4) This old man became quite foolish and childish. (5) After an infectious disease they often burn the

EXERCISES.

clothes of the patient. (6) Send away your brother, because he hinders us. (7) She was married to her cousin, although her parents wished to marry her to (with) another person. (8) In the spring (the) ice and (the) snow melt. (9) Send for (fetch, *lit.*, cause to come) the doctor, for I am ill. (10) He obtained (caused to come to him) many books from (out of) Berlin. (11) My uncle did not die (by) a natural death, but he nevertheless did not kill himself, and also was killed by no one; one day, walking by the rails of a railway, he fell under the wheels of a travelling train and was killed. (12) I did not hang my cap on this shrub; but the wind blew away the cap from my head, and it, in flying, got hung up on the branches of the shrub. (13) Seat yourself (or, be seated), Sir! (14) The young man joined (*lit.*, became to) our army, and courageously fought together with us against our enemies.

EXERCISE 29.

Suffix -IL- (see para. 281).

(1) La tranĉilo estis tiel malakra, ke mi ne povis tranĉi per ĝi la viandon, kaj mi devis uzi mian pošan tranĉilon. (2). Ĉu vi havas korktirilon, por malŝtopi la botelon? (3) Mi volis ŝlosi la pordon, sed mi perdis la ŝlosilon. (4) Si kombas al si la (*or*, siajn) harojn per argenta kombilo. (5) En somero ni veturas per diversaj veturiloj, kaj en vintro ni veturas per glitveturilo. (6) Hodiaŭ estas bela frosta vetero, tial mi prenos miajn glitilojn kaj iros *gli***ti**. (7) Per hakilo ni hakas, per segilo ni segas, per fosilo ni fosas, per kudrilo ni kudras, per tondilo ni tondas, per sonorilo ni sonoras, per fajfilo ni fajfas. (8) Plumo estas skribilo, kaj inksorbilo estas mola papero, kiun oni uzas por sorbi aŭ sekigi la inkon.

TRANSLATION 29.

(1) The knife was so blunt that I could not cut the meat with it, and I had to use my pocket knife. (2) Have you a corkscrew to open (unstop) the bottle? (3) I wanted to lock the door, but I had lost the key. (4) She combs (to herself) her (the) hair with a silver comb. (5) In summer we

EXERCISES.

travel by various vehicles, and in winter we travel by a sledge. (6) To-day is fine, frosty weather, therefore I shall take my skates and go skating (to skate). (7) With a hatchet we chop, with a saw we saw, with a spade we dig, with a needle we sew, with scissors we clip, with a bell we ring, with a fife (whistle) we fife (whistle). (8) A pen is a writing implement, and blotting paper is soft paper which we use to absorb or dry the ink.

EXERCISE 30.

Suffix -UM- (see para. 285).

- (1) Malfermu la fenestron por aerumi la ĉambron.
- (2) Ĉiuj hundoj en nia urbo devas porti bušumojn.
- (3) Ĉu vi havas butonumilon por butonumi miajn botojn?
- (4) La lavistino lavis miajn kolumojn kaj manumojn.
- (5) Li aĉetis nazumon.
- (6) Si portadas ventumilon, per kiu ŝi ventumadas sin.
- (7) Vi ne bušumis (estas bušuminta) vian hundon.
- (8) Gustumu tiun ĉi viandon, kaj diru al mi, ĉu ĝi estas bona aŭ ne.
- (9) La kalkanumoj de viaj botoj estas tro altaj.
- (10) Oni lotumis al mi dek du akciojn en la nova kompanio.
- (11) Mi ne povis plenumi miajn promesojn, ĉar mi havis tiom da aliaj aferoj por decidi.
- (12) La laktumo de haringo estas bongustaĵo.

TRANSLATION 30.

- (1) Open the window to air the room.
- (2) All dogs in our town have to wear muzzles.
- (3) Have you a button-hook to button my boots?
- (4) The washerwoman washed my collars and cuffs.
- (5) He bought a pince-nez.
- (6) She carries (about) a fan, with which she keeps fanning herself.
- (7) You have not muzzled your dog.
- (8) Taste this meat, and tell me whether it be good or not.
- (9) The heels of your boots are too high.
- (10) They allotted me twelve shares in the new company.
- (11) I could not fulfil my engagements, for I had so many other matters to settle.
- (12) The soft roe of a herring is a tasty morsel (thing).

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 31.

Prefixes DE-, DIS-, FOR- (see para. 287).

(1) Malfeliō ofte kunigas ja homojn, kaj feliō ofte disigas ilin. (2) Mi dissiris la leteron kaj disjetis ĝiajn pecetojn en ĉiujn angulojn de la ĉambro. (3) La prefiksoj DE-, DIS-, kaj FOR- ĉiuj montras ian forigon aŭ disigon, ekzemple :—Kiam ni disbatis la muron kaj disjetis la fortikajton, tiam la malamikoj dejetis la armilojn kaj forkuris. (4) La infano renversis la inkujon kaj disverĉis la ĩkon sur mian naztukon. (5) Li estas forkurinto, tial ke li ne revenis al sia regimento je la templimo de sia forpermeso. (6) Li demetas la ĉapelon, kiam li eniris (en) la ĉambrojn. (7) Kelkaj patrinoj debrustigas siajn infanetojn pli frue, ol aliaj. (8) Li disĝutis la sablon sur la plankon. (9) La servistino senordigis (dismetas) miajn librojn tiamaniere, ke mi ne povis trovi tiun, kiun mi bezonis.

TRANSLATION 31.

(1) Misfortune often unites men, and happiness often separates them. (2) I tore up the letter and threw away its fragments into all corners of the room. (3) The prefixes DE-, DIS-, and FOR- all denote some sort of abstraction or separation, for example :—When we beat down the wall and demolished the fort, then the enemy threw down their (the) weapons and fled (ran away). (4) The child upset the inkstand and spilled the ink over my handkerchief. (5) He is a deserter (a runaway), for he did not return to his regiment at the expiration of his leave of absence (permission to be away). (6) He took off his (the) hat when he entered the room. (7) Some mothers wean (take from the breast) their infants earlier than others. (8) He scattered the sand on the floor. (9) The maid-servant disarranged my books, so that I could not find the one (that which) I wanted.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 32.

Prefixes EK- and RE- (see paras. 288, 290).

(1) Li donis al mi monon, sed mi ĝin tuj redonis al li. (2) Mi foriras, sed atendu min, ĉar mi baldaŭ revenos. (3) La suno rebrilas en la klara akvo de la rivero. (4) Li venos al mi morgaŭ, por ke mi redonu al li la librojn. (5) Si ekrilis, kaj poste reekbruligis la kanelon. (6) Tuj kiam mi ekkantis, la infaneto ekdormis, kaj post kiam mi ĝin redonis al ĝia patrino, mi revenis domen. (7) Mi ne povas akepti vian afablan inviton, ĉar ia malsaneto min retenas en mia ĉambro. (8) Spegulo rejetas la radiojn de lumo, tuj kiam ili ekfalas sur ĝin. (9) Mi eksaltis de surprizo, kiam la pilko subite resaltis de la muro. (10) Kiam Johano reprenis la libron, kiun mi redonis al li, li diris, ke ĝi estas malpura, sed mi respondis, ke ĝi ne estis bonstate tiam, kiam mi ĝin ricevis.

TRANSLATION 32.

(1) He gave money to me, but I immediately gave it back to him. (2) I am going away, but await me, for I shall soon return (come back). (3) The sun is reflected in the clear water of the river. (4) He will come to me to-morrow, in order that I may return him the books. (5) She began to laugh, and then re-lighted the candle. (6) Directly (immediately when) I began to sing the baby fell asleep, and after (when) I had returned it to its mother, I returned home. (7) I cannot accept your kind invitation, because (an, some kind of) indisposition is keeping me (is retaining me) to (in) my room. (8) A mirror throws back the rays of light directly they begin to fall upon it. (9) I started with surprise when the ball suddenly bounded back from the wall. (10) When John retook the book which I returned to him, he said that it was (is) dirty, but I replied that it was not in a good state (then) when I received it.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 33.

Prefixes MAL-, NE-, SEN- (see para. 289).

(1) Mia frato ne estas granda, sed li ne estas ankaŭ malgranda; li estas de meza kresko. (2) Li estas tiel dikta, ke li ne povas trairi tra nia mallarĝa pordo. (3) Haro estas tre maldika. (4) La nokto estis tiel malluma, ke ni nenion povis vidi eĉ antaŭ nia nazo. (5) Tiu ĉi malfreša pano estas malmola, kiel ŝtono. (6) Malbonaj infanoj amas turmenti bestojn. (7) Li sentis sin tiel malfeliĉa, ke li malbenis la tagon en kiu li estis naskita. (8) Mi forte malestimas tiun ĉi malnoblan homon. (9) La fenestro longe estis nefermita; mi ĝin fermis, sed mia frato tuj ĝin denove malfermis. (10) Rekta vojo estas pli mallonga, ol kurba. (11) La tablo staras malrekte kaj kredeble baldaŭ renversiĝos. (12) Li staras supre sur la monto kaj rigardas malsupren sur la kampon. (13) Malamiko venis en nian landon. (14) Oni tiel malhelpis al mi, ke mi malbonigis mian tutan laboron. (15) Lia filo mortis kaj estas nun malviva. (16) La korpo estas morta, la animo estas senmorta. (17) La fremdulo sidigis neinvitite, kaj tuj ekparolis tute saceremonie. (18) Mi povis nur neregule sendi mian filon en lernejon, tial la lernejestro ĉiam plendadis pri lia neakurateco, neatenteco, kaj neordinara nekapableco. (19) La vitro estas facilrompa, kaj estas neeble ĝin fervoje sendi senriske (aŭ, sen risko). (20) Tiu ĉi objekto estas senutila, sed ĝi ne estas malutila. (21) Neniu estas senmakula. (22) Li estas tre nemodesta, kaj lia tromemfido estas senlima, sed li ne estas inalmodesta.

TRANSLATION 33.

(1) My brother is not tall (large), but he is not either (also) short (small); he is of medium growth. (2) He is so stout

EXERCISES.

(thick) that he cannot go through our narrow door. (3) A hair is very thin. (4) The night was so dark that we could see nothing even before our nose. (5) This stale bread is hard as a stone. (6) Bad children love to torment animals. (7) He felt himself so unhappy that he cursed the day in which he was born. (8) I strongly despise this vile (ignoble) person. (9) The window had long been unclosed : I closed it, but my brother immediately opened it again. (10) A direct way is shorter than a curved one. (11) The table stands aslant, and probably (credibly) will soon upset. (12) He stands above upon the mountain and looks down below upon the field. (13) An enemy came into our country. (14) They so hindered me that I spoiled my whole work. (15) His son died, and is now dead. (16) The body is mortal (of death); the soul is immortal (without death). (17) The stranger sat down uninvited, and at once began to speak without ceremony. (18) I could only irregularly send my son to (in) school, therefore the headmaster (schoolmaster) was always complaining of (concerning) his unpunctuality, inattention, and unusual incapacity. (19) Glass is fragile, and it is impossible to send it by rail without risk. (20) This article is useless, but it is not harmful. (21) No one is immaculate. (22) He is very consequential, and his self-conceit is unbounded, but he is not presumptuous.

EXERCISES ON SIMILAR WORDS.

The learner will find the following exercises useful in helping him to avoid errors in the meaning of words which are nearly alike in spelling.

EXERCISE 34.

(1) Laŭ la *aĝo* de la knabo, oni ne pensis, ke li estas kapabla je tia *ago*. (2) *Angelo* vidis *angilon* naĝantan en sitelo apud la *angulo* de la ĉambro. (3) La *bariloj* sur la stratoj estas faritaj el *bareloj* plenigitaj per sablo. (4) La *broño* estas trovita en *breĉo* de la muro. (5) Oni devas demeti la *ĉapelon*, kiam oni eniras *kapelon*. (6) La *cielo* heligas, kaj la *celo* de la abeloj, kiam ili flirtadas de floro al floro, estas kolekti mielon

EXERCISES.

por enmeti en la *ĉelojn* de la mieltavoloj. (7) Ni vespermaŭgis proksime de *dezerto*, sed ne staris *deserto* sur la tablo. (8) Ĉu vi *divenis* de kie la malbonodoro *devenis*? (9) La *fundo* da teo kuſis sur la *fundo* de la kesto, kiun oni trovis apud la *fonto*. (10) La *faktoro* diris, ke la *fakturo* estas ĝusta laŭ ĉiu ero, kaj tial, ĝi povas esti nomata, ne sole, "fakturo," sed ankaŭ "faktaro." (11) Ĉe la *festeno* estis pendigita, super la tablo, *festono* el rozoj. (12) La *gaso* ekbruligis pecon da *gazo*. (13) La *generala rango* estas pli *generala* en Anglujo, ol en Rusujo. (14) *Justa homo* estas *ĝusta* pri siaj aferoj, sed li ne estas, necese, homo kun *gusto*. (15) *Hirundo* glutas insektojn, sed *hirudo* suĉas sangon. (16) Je la naŭa *horo*, la *horo* ekkantis. (17) La *kanabo*, kiun havas la *knabo*, apartenas al lia patro. (18) Laŭ mia *juĝo*, tiu *jugo* estas tro larga. (19) La *Templo* de Jupitro en Romo, estas nomata "la *Kapitolo*." Kiam mia amiko ĝin vidis, li decidis konstrui domegon laŭ simila desegno, kun *kapitelo* sur ĉiu *kolono*; sed li trovis, ke li ne havas sufieĉe da *kapitalo* por tia celo. Baldaŭ poste, li iris al la *kolonio* Nataļo, kie li sin memmortigis per pafo tra la *tempio*. (20) "Lekanto" estas la nomo de floro, sed la sama vorto, esperante, ankaŭ signifas personon, kiu lekas ion, t.e., "lekanter." (21) La *vango* de la *gvidisto* estas difektita per la falo de la *lavango*. (22) "La *kaso* estas plena." En tiu ĉi frazo, "kaso" estas la subjekto de la verbo, tial ĝi estas en la *kazo nominativa*. (23) Li donis al sia amiko sian *logion* en la teatro, kaj tiel lin *logis*, ke li aĉetu la domon, en kiu ili ambaŭ *logis*.

TRANSLATION 34.

- (1) From the boy's age, they did not think him capable of such an *act*. (2) An *angel* saw an *eel* swimming in a bucket near the *corner* of the room. (3) The *barriers* in the streets are made of *buckets* filled with sand. (4) The *brooch* has been found in a *breach* of the wall. (5) One must take off one's

EXERCISES.

hat when one enters a *chapel*. (6) The *sky* is getting clear, and the *purpose* of the bees, as they flit from flower to flower, is to collect honey to deposit in the *cells* of the honeycombs. (7) We dined near a *desert*, but there was no *dessert* on the table. (8) Did you *guess* from whence the bad smell *emanated*? (9) The *pound* of tea lay at the *bottom* of the box, which they found near the *well-spring*. (10) The *factor* said the *invoice* was correct in every item, and, therefore, it might be called not only an *invoice*, but also a *collection of facts*. (11) At the *banquet* a *jestoon* of roses was suspended over the table. (12) The *gas* ignited a piece of *gauze*. (13) The rank of *general* is more *prevalent* in England than in Russia. (14) An *upright* (just) man is *exact* in his business, but he is not necessarily a man of *taste*. (15) A *swallow* swallows insects, but a *leech* sucks blood. (16) At 9 o'clock the *choir* began to sing. (17) The *hemp* which the *boy* has, belongs to his father. (18) In my *judgment*, that *yoke* is too wide. (19) The *Temple* of Jupiter at Rome is called the "Capitol." When my friend saw it, he decided to build a mansion of a similar design, with a *capital* on each *column*; but he found he had not sufficient *capital* for such a purpose. Soon afterwards he went to the *Colony* of Natal, where he committed suicide by a shot through his *temple*. (20) "*Marguerite*" is the name of a flower, but the same word, in Esperanto, also means a person who is licking something, i.e., a "*licker*." (21) The guide's *cheek* had been injured by the fall of the *avalanche*. (22) "*The money-box* is full." In this sentence "*moneybox*" is the subject of the verb, therefore, it is in the nominative case. (23) He gave his friend *his box* at the theatre, and thus induced him to buy the house in which they both *lived*.

EXERCISE 35.

(1) La *maço* estas sama, ĉu la nutraĵo estas pano ordinara aŭ *maco*. (2) La *maršado* de la soldatoj estis tra danĝera *marĉo*. (3) Dum La *Meso* estis solenata, la virino staris en la *mezo* de amaso da adorantoj; ŝia maso da haroj estas subtenita per reto, kies *maſo* estis rompita en diversaj lokoj. (4) La *mastro* de la domo estas *magistro* de artoj, kaj ankaŭ *majstro* en sia profesio. (5) Lia *morto* okazis pro *mordo* de hundo. (6) La *monarĥo* paroladis kun *monaĥo*, kiam mi lin vidis. (7) Venena serpenteto lin *mordis*, kaj preskaŭ tuj li *mortis*.

EXERCISES.

(8) *Muso kaj mušo* estis en la ĉambro de la poeto, kaj tuj kiam li ilin vidis, poeta *inspiro*, aŭ *muzo*, lin ekkaptis; li spiris rapide, kaj, post profunda *enspiro*, la *muso* kaj *mušo* rememorigis al li la naŭ filinojn de Zeuso, kaj, tie kaj tiam, li ekverkis sian gloran poemon, "La Batalo de la *Muzoj*." (9) "La *mosto*" estas vino nefermentita, kiun tre satis lia grafa *mosto*. (10) La homo ludanta la *organon*, ne sciis, ke ĝi estas malagorda, pro tio, ke li jam antaŭe perdis la *organon* de aŭdado. (11) La generalo, kiu eldonis la *ordnon*, portis la dekoracion de la *ordeno*, "la Stelo de Hinduo." (12) *Pastelo* estas kreta krajono, aŭ kretkrajona desegno, sed *pastelo* estas aroma konuso karba, kiu eldonas agrablan odoron, kiam oni ĝin ekbruligas. (13) Estis *paco* en la domo, tuj kiam la *peco* da ligno estis kovrita per *peco*. (14) La dekstra *pedalo* de la fortepiano, kiu apartenis al la *pedelo*, estas rompita. (15) La kesto *pezis* pli, ol la negocisto supozis, ĉar kiam ĝi estis metita sur la *pesilo*, kaj lia servisto ĝin *pesis*, oni trovis, ke *pezilo* da kvindek ses funtoj, ne estas sufice *peza* por ĝin *pesi*. (16) Li *pasis* antaŭen, kaj *pasis* tra la pordo. (17) Tuj kiam la *pišlo* ekmovis, la lokomotivo ekiris, kaj ĝiaj radoj *pistis* ŝtonon kušantan sur la *relo*; birdo, nomata "ralo," ektremis je la bruo, kaj flugis trans la fervojon. (18) Li desegnis ŝipon sur la *posto* de pošt-karto, kiun li sendis al Parizo per la *pošto*. (19) Li *penis* disrompi la ŝnuron per la mano, sed malsukcesis; poste li *provis* ĝin, kaj *pruvis*, ke ĝi povas subteni pezilon da kvarcent funtoj. (20) La *pulvo* estas *pulvoro* uzata por pafiloj, sed ĝiaj grajnoj ne estas tiel delikataj, kiel tiuj de *polvo*; alivorte, *pulvero* estas pli maldelikata, (*or*, malpli delikata) ol *polvero*. (21) La *pruno* ĝermigas el la florburĝono de la prunarbo, sed la burĝonoj estas kelkfoje detruitaj de la *prujno*. (22) Lia vesto estis subŝtofita per *pelto*, kaj estis tiel varma, ke *palto* ne estis necesa.

EXERCISES.

TRANSLATION 35.

(1) The *act* of *mastication* is the same, whether the food is ordinary bread or *unleavened bread*. (2) The *march* of the soldiers was through a dangerous *swamp*. (3) Whilst *Mass* was being celebrated, the woman stood in the *midst* of a *crowd* of worshippers; her *muss* of hair was supported by a net, the *mash* of which had been broken in various places. (4) The *master* of the house is a *master* of arts, and also a *master* in his profession. (5) His *death* occurred through a *bite* from a dog. (6) The *monarch* was conversing with a *monk* when I saw him. (7) A venomous snake *bit* him, and he *died* almost immediately. (8) A *mouse* and a *fly* were in the poet's room, and as soon as he saw them, a poetic *inspiration*, or *muse*, seized him; he breathed quickly, and, after a deep *inspiration*, the *mouse* and the *fly* reminded him of the Nine daughters of Zeus; and, there and then, he began to write his glorious poem, "The Battle of the *Muses*." (9) "*Must*" is unfermented wine, which His Excellency the Count much appreciated. (10) The man playing the *organ* did not know it was out of tune, for he had lost the *organ* of hearing. (11) The general, who issued the *order*, wore the *order* of the Star of India. (12) A *pastel* is a chalk pencil, or a chalk pencil drawing, but a *pastille* is an aromatic, charcoal cone, which, when lighted, gives an agreeable odour. (13) There was *peace* in the house as soon as the *piece* of wood had been covered with *pitch*. (14) The right *pedal* of the piano, which belonged to the *beadle*, is broken. (15) The box *weighed* more than the merchant supposed, for when it was placed on the *scales*, and his servant *weighed* it, it was found that a 56 lb. *weight* was not sufficiently *weighty* to *weigh* it. (16) He *stepped* forward and *passed* through the door. (17) As soon as the *piston* began to move, the locomotive started, and its *wheels* crushed a stone lying on the *rail*; a bird called a "rail" was startled at the noise, and flew over the railway. (18) He drew a ship on the *back* of a postcard, which he sent by *post* to Paris. (19) He *tried* to break the *cord* with his hand, but failed; then he *tested* it, and *proved* that it could sustain a weight of 400 lbs. (20) *Gunpowder* is a *powder* used for guns, but its grains are not so fine as those of *dust*; in other words, a *grain* of gunpowder is coarser than a *grain* of dust. (21) The *plum* is formed from the blossom of the plum-tree, but the buds are sometimes destroyed by *hoar frost*. (22) His coat was lined with *fur*, and was so *warm* that a *greatcoat* was not necessary.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 36.

(1) Si staris sur la *ponto*, kaj la *punto* de sia robo flirtis en la vento. (2) La *puso* elfluis el la karbunkolo kiam la kuracisto ĝin tranĉis, sed la malsanulo, je la *pušo* de la momento, ne povis ne ekkrii. (3) Li prenis la remilon el la boato, kaj *remetis* trans la riveron; atinginte la kontraŭan bordon, li *remetis* la remilon (*or*, metis la remilon *reen*) en la boaton kaj iris hejmen. (4) La matena *roso* estis ankoraŭ sur la *rozo*, kiam la *ruso*, per lerta *ruzo*, venkis la malamikojn. (5) Laŭ mia opinio (*or*, miaopinie) la *reno* de ŝafo estas pli bongusta, ol la *rano*, kiun oni mangas en Francujo. (6) La *rato* estis kaptita per *reto*. (7) Homo kiu *regas* estas reĝo, kaj la popolo, kiun li *regas*, estas liaj regatoj (*aŭ*, personoj regataj). La reganto de kolonio *regas* la kolonion, sed li ne *regas*. (8) Kiam mi vidis la *Romanon*, li legis *romanon*, kaj lia edzino kantis *romancos*. (9) La *rabo* de la *rubeno*, kiu estas tiel granda kiel! nigra *ribo*, okazis apud la loko, kie estas metita la *rubo*. (10) Li ekdormis kaj *songis*, sed vekiĝinte, li *revis* pri sia *songo*; tiam subite li ekkriis: “*Cu mi vere dormis, aŭ ĉu ĝi estis nur revo?*” (11) Se ni aĉetus *sagon* sen pafarko, ni ne montrus nian *saſon*, ĉar la unua sen la dua estus senutila. (12) La homo *ſargis* la ſarĝveturilon per *sakoj* da greno, poste li *ſargis* sian paſilon, saltis sur la *sakojn*, kaj ludis *ſakojn* kun sia amiko. (13) Kiam ni finis la *sarkadon* de la ĝardeno, ni promenadis apud (*or*, sur) la marbordo kaj vidis *ſarkon*. (14) Li *malsatis* tian nutraĵon kaj ne povis ĝin mangi, kvankam li tre *malsatis*; tial li mendis kokidon rostitan, kiun li tre *satis*, kaj lia *malsato* baldaŭ *satis*. (15) Poco da *ſelo* en la subſtofo de la *ſelo* brulumigis la dorson de la ĉevalo. (16) Kompreneble vi *ſercas* dirante, ke vi *ſerĉas* kudrilon en garbo da fojno! (17) Baro el *ſtalo* estas trovita en la *ſtalo* de la ĉevalido. (18) La *ſtato* ne estas bone regata, kaj la popolo estis (*or*, troviĝis) en

EXERCISES.

ribela *stato*. (19) La *stipo* estas arbeto, sed mallonga, dikas peco da ligno estas nomata *stipo*. (20) "Stofo" estas la nomo de rusa mezurilo, sed, se ni volas skribi pri la *stofo* el kiu oni faras veston aŭ robon, ni metas signon super la unuan leteron, kiu aliigas la elparoladon. (21) Poco da *stupo* kuſis sur la malsupra *stupo* de la ŝuparo. (22) Estis *tablo* en la mezo de la ĉambro, kaj sur ĝi estis *telero*, sur kiu kuſis *talero* kune kun aliaj moneroj; *tabulo* pendis sur la muro, sur kiu estis gluita *tabelo* de luveturilkostoj. (23) La *turdo* estas pli malgranda birdo, ol la *turto*. (24) Li *tuisis*, kiam oni *tuisis* lian traheon. (25) Li surmetis la *veston* kaj poste la *reston*.

TRANSLATION 36.

(1) She stood on the *bridge*, and the *lace* of her gown fluttered in the wind. (2) The *matter* flowed from the carbuncle when the doctor cut it, but the patient, on the *impulse* of the moment, could not help crying out. (3) He took the oar out of the boat and *paddled* (rowed leisurely) across the river; after reaching the opposite bank, he *put back* the oar into the boat and went home. (4) The morning *dew* was still on the *rose*, when the *Russian*, by a clever *stratagem*, overpowered the enemy. (5) In my opinion, the *kidney* of a sheep is more tasty than the *frog*, which is eaten in France. (6) The *rat* was caught with a *net*. (7) The man who *reigns* is a King, and the people he *governs* are his subjects (or persons being governed). The Governor of a Colony, *governs* the Colony, but does not *reign*. (8) When I saw the *Roman*, he was reading a *romance*, and his wife was singing a *romance* (song). (9) The *robbery* of the *ruby*, which was as big as a black *currant*, occurred near the spot where the *rubbish* had been put. (10) He fell asleep and *dreamed*, but, after awakening, he *mused* over his *dream*; then suddenly he cried out, "Was I really asleep, or was it only a *waking dream*?" (11) If we bought an *arrow* without a bow, we should not show our *wisdom*, for the one without the other would be useless. (12) The man *loaded* the wagon with *sacks* of corn, then he *loaded* his gun, jumped on to the *sacks*, and played *chess* with his friend. (13) When we finished the *weeding* of the garden, we walked near the seashore and saw a *shark*. (14) He *disliked* the (that kind of) food and could not eat it, although he was

EXERCISES.

very *hungry*; so he ordered a roast chicken, which he much *appreciated*, and his *hunger was soon satiated*. (15) A piece of *bark* in the lining of the *saddle* caused an inflammation on the horse's back. (16) Of course you are *joking* when you say you are *looking for* a needle in a truss of hay. (17) A *steel* bar has been found in the *stable*. (18) The *State* (one of a confederation, *regno=the State*) was not well governed, and the people were in a *rebellious state*. (19) *Broom* is a shrub, but a short thick piece of wood is called a *block of wood*. (20) "Slofo" is the name of a Russian measure, but if we wish to write about the *material* (or, *stuff*) of which a coat or gown is made, we put an accent over the first letter, which alters the pronunciation. (21) A piece of *tow* was lying on the bottom *step* of the staircase. (22) There was a *table* in the middle of the room, and on it was a *plate* in which was a *thaler*, together with other coins; a *board* hung on the wall, on which was pasted a *table* of fares for hired carriages (hackney coach fares). (23) The *thrush* is a smaller bird than the *dove*. (24) He *coughed* when they *touched* his windpipe. (25) He put on his *waistcoat* and afterwards his *coat*.

EXERCISE 37.

The following are Exercises in similar words in English. The words to be noted are in italics:—

Leave.

(1) *Cesinte* vetludadon, li iris ĉe sian advokaton kaj *lasis* siajn aferojn en liajn manojn, sed, antaŭ ol *eliri* la ĉambron, li faris sian testamenton kaj *testamentis* sian tutan havon al sia frato. (2) Li petis *permeson* doni al sia hundo la *manĝrestaĵon* de la vespermanĝo. (3) La generalo donis al li du monatan *forpermeson* (aŭ, *forpermesis* al li du monatojn). (4) Li *lasis* sian edzinon plorantan, kiam li *eliris el* la domo, sed *elirinte* ĝin, li renkontis sian fraton, kiu akompanis lin al la ŝipo, kaj tie lin *lasis*. La sekvantan tagon li *forlasis* la landon por ĉiam. (5) *Eliru* la ĉambron, vi malĝentilulo! (6) *Lasu* la ĉambron, kiel ĝi estas, ĉar mi ne intencas ĝin aliigi.

EXERCISES.

To turn.

(7) Kiam mi eniris en la *tornejon*, la *tornisto tornis* la *kruron* de *tablo* el *peco* da *ligno*, kiu *turniĝis* rapide ĉirkaŭ sia *akso*. Aŭdante miajn piedpašojn, li *turnis* sin, sed daŭrigis la *tornadon*. Kiam la *kruro* *turniĝis*, *okazis*, ke ĝi estas tro mallonga.

TRANSLATION 37.

Leave.

(1) After *leaving off* gambling, he went to his solicitor's, and *left* his affairs in his hands, but, before *leaving* the room, he made his will, and *left* all his property to his brother. (2) He asked *leave* to give the *leavings* of the dinner to his dog. (3) The general gave him two months' *leave of absence*. (4) He *left* his wife in tears when he *left* the house, but *after leaving* it he met his brother, who accompanied him to the ship, and there *left* him. The following day he *left* the country for ever. (5) *Leave* the room, you impudent fellow. (6) *Leare* the room as it is, for I do not intend to alter it.

To turn.

(7) When I entered the *turnery*, the *turner* was *turning* the leg of a table out of a piece of wood, which was *turning* rapidly on its axis. On hearing my footsteps, he *turned* round, but continued his *turning*. When the leg was *turned*, it *turned out* to be too short.

EXERCISE 38.

Do, Did (para. 237 (j)).

(1) Kiel vi *fartas*? Tre bone, mi dankas vin. (2) Ĉu vi *faris*, kion mi diris al vi? Jes, mi *faris*: Ne, mi ne *faris*. (3) Ĉu vi *mortigis* tiun teruran hundon? Jes, mi *mortigis*, ĉar mi diris al mia edzino: "Kian uzon ni povas *fari* el tia malbelega besto?" kaj ŝi respondis: "Forigu ĝin." (4) *Kunligu* tiujn dek paketojn,

EXERCISES.

kaj ankaŭ *ordigu* la ĉambrojn, kaj poste, se vi ne estos tro laca, ni *esploros* la *vidindajojn* de la urbo. (5) *Ja venu* (aŭ, *mi petegas, ke vi venu*), ĉar mi ja tre deziras vin vidi. (6) Estas malagrable *havi interrilatojn* kun personoj, kiuj penas nin *trompi*. (7) Tio ĉi *sufiĉos* por mi, sed por vi ĝi ne *decos*. (8) Hamleto estas *esperantigita* (aŭ, *tradukiĝis esperante*) de Doktoro Zamenhof. (9) Mi parolis kun mia patro, sed li *tute ne volis enmikiĝi* en la afero. (10) Li *progresadis* en la lernejo, sed li ne *sukcesis* negoce. (11) *Rebonigu*, (aŭ, *riparu*) por mi tiun ĉi poŝhorlogon, se ĝi valoras la koston tion *fari*.

TRANSLATION 38.

Do, Did.

(1) How do you do? Very well, thank you. (2) Did you do what I told you? Yes, I did. No I did not. (3) Did you do away with that awful dog? Yes, I did, for I said to my wife: "What can we do with such a hideous brute?" and she replied: "Do away with it." (4) Do up those ten parcels, and also do up the rooms, and afterwards, if you are not too done up, we will do the city. (5) Do come! for I do want to see you! (6) It is unpleasant to have to do with persons who try to do us. (7) This will do well enough for me, but it will not do for you. (8) Hamlet has been done into Esperanto by Doctor Zamenhof. (9) I spoke to my father, but he would have nothing at all to do with the matter. (10) He did well at school, but he did not do well in business. (11) Do up this watch for me, if it be worth the expense of doing so.

EXERCISE 39.

To get (para. 237 (k)).

(1) Mi levigis je la sesa, kaj tuj kiam mi vestis min, mi ordonis mian serviston, ke li alkonduku al mi mian ĉevalon. Kiam alvenis la ĉevalo, mi supreniris ĝin, kaj rajdis ĉe mian kuzon, kiu pretiĝis por la vulpoĉasado.

EXERCISES.

Ni *matenmanĝis*, *pretigis* la ĉevalojn kaj forrajdis. Sur la vojo, mia ĉevalo *ricevis* al si štonon en la hufon, tial mi *deiris*, kaj ĝin *elprenis*. Ĉar la vojetoj estis tre kotaj, la ĉevaloj *ſpruciĝis* per koto, ni ankaŭ tre *malpuriĝis*, sed la ĉasistoj *kutimiĝas* je tio. Ni baldaŭ *alrenis* al la kunvenejo, kaj ĝuis bonan kuradon kun la ĉashundoj. (2) La knabino *portis* grizan robon, kaj, kiam mi demandis ŝin de kiu ŝi ĝin *ricevis*, ŝi diris al mi, ke ŝi penis ĝin *akiri* ĉe sia kudristino, sed la kudristino diris, ke ŝi ne *havas* unu kun tiu koloro en la tenejo, sed, ke ŝi *farigos* al ŝi tian (unu tian). La knabino ankaŭ diris, ke ŝi ne mendis la robon, kaj tre bone *faris* sen ĝi, ĝis fine ŝi *decidigis* sian patrionon *havigi* al si tiun, kiun ŝi nun *portadas*. (3) Kiam vi *renkos* la malfacilaĵon parkere *lerni* tiun ĉi lecionon, ne *penu* *liberigi* *rin de* viaj aliaj lecionoj, ĉar vi ne povos min *trompi*, pretekstante, ke vi *jam elfaris* vian tutan taskon.

TRANSLATION 39.

To get.

(1) I *got up* at six, and as soon as I *got dressed*, I ordered my servant to *get* me my horse. When the horse came, I *got on to it*, and rode to my cousin's, who *was getting ready* for the fox hunt. We *got breakfast*, *got* the horses *ready*, and rode off. On the way my horse *got* a stone in its foot, so I *got off* and *got it out*. As the lanes were very muddy, the horses *got splashed* with mud, we also *got very dirty*, but huntsmen *get accustomed* to that. We soon *got to* the rendezvous and had a good run with the hounds. (2) The girl had *got on* a grey dress, and when I asked her from whom she *got it*, she told me that she had tried to *get* it at her dressmaker's, but the dressmaker said she had not *got* one of that colour in stock, but would *get* (such a) one *made* for her. The girl also said that she did not give an order for the dress, and *got on* very well without it, till at last she *got* her mother to *get for* her the one she had now *got on*. (3) When you have *got over* the difficulty of *getting* this lesson by heart, do not try to *get off* your other lessons, for you cannot *get round* me by pretending that you *have got through* all your work.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 40.

To appear, know, have.

(1) Kiam li unue *aperis* en la ĉambro, *sajnis* al mi, ke li estas malprudentulo, sed poste li *šajne* montris tiom da spriteco, ke mi ekvidis, ke mi trompiĝas. (2) Se la lernanto *sciis* bone sian lecionon, la instruanto lin ne punus. (3) "Kristano," li diris al mi, "vi ne *konas* la historion de naskiĝo de tiu ĉi folio?" "Mahometano, mi ne *konas*," mi respondis. (Krestomatio, paĝo 31^a). (4) Mi *sciis*, ke vi havas hundon, sed mi ne *konis* la hundon, kiam mi ĝin vidis. (5) Kiam mia amiko petis, ke mi vizitu lin, li ne *sciis*, ke mi ne *konas* lian domon; tamen mi *konis* la straton kie li loĝas, kaj mi ankaŭ *konis* lian hundon, tial, tuj kiam mi *rekonis* ĝin kuŝantan apud la pordo de domo, mi *eksciis*, ke tiu domo apartenas al mia amiko. (6) Mi *havas* libron, kiun mi *devas* redoni al la biblioteko tuj kiam mi ĝin estos traleginta.

TRANSLATION 40.

To appear, know, have.

(1) When he first *appeared* in the room, it *appeared* to me that he was (is) a fool, but afterwards he *appeared* to show so much wit that I perceived I was (am) mistaken. (2) If the pupil *knew* his lesson well, the teacher would not punish him. (3) "Christian," he said to me, "you do not *know* the story of the birth of this leaf?" "Mahometan, I do not *know*," I answered. (4) I *knew* that you had a dog, but I did not *know* the dog when I saw it. (5) When my friend asked me to call upon him, he did not *know* that I did not *know* his house ; however I *knew* the street where he lived, and I also *knew* his dog, therefore, as soon as I *recognised* it lying close to the door of a house, I *knew* that that house belonged to my friend. (6) I *have* a book which I *have* (must) to return to the library as soon as I (shall) *have* read it through (lit., as soon as I shall be *having* read it through).

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 41.

To bring, let, give, effect, affect.

(1) *Alportu* al mi mian ĉapelon kaj poste diru al Johano ke li *alkonduku* mian ĉevalon. (2) La tropunktado *malaltigas* la prezon de la komercaoj. (3) Kiam oni *sciigis* la edzon, ke lia edzino *naskis* filon, li *elprenis* el sia kelo sian plej bonan vinon, por trinki al la *bonfarto* (aŭ, *tosti* la sanon) de sia unuanaskito. La patrino *edukis* sian filon dum lia infanejo, kaj poste la patro *instruigis* lin en unu el la plej bonaj lernejoj en la lando. (4) Kiam la policano *liberigis* la viron, la frato de tiu ĉi *lasis* lin en sian domon, kaj *mallevis* la rulkurtenojn. (5) Li *perdis* la sanon, tial li devis *ĉesigi* multajn el siaj bonfarajoj, sed li ankoraŭ *disdonas* multe da mono al la malriĉuloj. (6) Oni *sciigis* lin, ke li devos *atesti*, ĉu la virino *naskis* filon aŭ filinon. (7) La *efiko* de tiu ĉi elpensajo, laŭ mia opinio (or, miaopinie), faros *efekton* ne ĝenerale supozitan, ĉar ĝi *faros* radikan ŝanĝon en multe da niaj industrioj, kvankam kiam ili estos *tuŝataj* (or, *influataj*) de ĝi, mi ne povas diri; kaj *efektive* estus *afekteco* miaparte peni certigi, kiam tiu ĉi *efekto* *efektiviĝos*.

TRANSLATION 41.

To bring, let, give, effect, affect.

(1) Bring me my hat, and then tell John to bring my horse.
(2) Overproduction brings down the price of goods. (3) When they brought news to the husband that his wife had brought forth a son, he brought forth the best wine in his cellar to drink to the well-being (or, toast the health) of his first-born. The mother brought up her son during his childhood, and afterwards the father had him brought up in one of the best schools in the country. (4) When the policeman let the man go, the brother of the latter let him into his house, and let down the blinds. (5) His health gave way, so that he had

EXERCISES.

to give up many of his good works, but he still gives away much money to the poor. (6) They gave him notice that he would have to give evidence whether the woman had given birth to a son or a daughter. (7) The effect of this invention, in my opinion, will produce an effect not generally supposed, for it will effect a radical change in many of our industries, although when they will be affected by it I cannot say, and it would in fact be affection on my part to attempt to assert when this effect will be effected (realised).

EXERCISE 42.

Can, could, may, might, must, ought, should, would (para. 237 (*l—p*)).

(1) Eble li venos, kaj eble ne. (2) Ĉu vi permesos, ke mi venu morgaŭ ? Jes, mi permesos (aŭ, jes, certe). (3) Ĉu vi povos veni morgaŭ ? Jes, mi povos. (4) Ĉu mi devos veni morgaŭ ? Ne, vi ne devos. (5) Ĉu mi devus vidi (aŭ, estas necese, ke mi vidu) la kuraciston ? Jes, vi devus (aŭ, jes, tre necese); vi jam devus vidi lin hieraŭ. Mi ne povas lin vidi hodiaŭ, ĉar mi ne havas la tempon; mi devas iri al la banko, mia oficejo, kaj aliaj lokoj. (6) Vi devus vidi la kastelon. Mi amus ĝin vidi, sed estus necese, ke mi iru sola, kaj oni povus ŝteli al mi sur la vojo. (7) Li devis atenti sian laboron, ĉar, alie, li estus ĝin malboniginta. (8) Li devus atenti sian laboron pli, ol li faris, kaj tiuokaze li ne estus ĝin malboniginta. (9) Ĉu vi volus, ke mi forlasu miajn amikojn ? Komprenable, ne. (10) Li insistas veni; mi ne povas malhelpi lin (al li). Li venos, se vi ne malhelpos lin. (11) Li insistis veni malgraŭ, ke mi faris ĉion, kion mi povis por malhelpi lin. Li venus, se vi invituj lin. (12) Li ne volis konfesi, ke li nenion vidis, se li efektive ion jam antaŭe vidis. (13) Mi skribas al li, ke li venu. Mi skribis al li, ke li venu.

EXERCISES.

TRANSLATION 42.

Can, could, etc.

(1) He may come, and he may not. (2) May I (will you allow me to) come to-morrow? Yes, you may (or, yes, certainly). (3) Can you come to-morrow? Yes, I can. (4) Must I (shall I have to) come to-morrow? No, you need not. (5) Ought I to see (or, is it necessary to see) the doctor? Yes, you ought (or, yes, very necessary): you ought to have seen him yesterday. I cannot see him to-day, for I have no time; I have to go to the bank, my office, and other places. (6) You ought to see the castle. I should love to see it, but I should have (it would be necessary) to go alone, and I might be robbed on the way. (7) He had to pay attention to his work, for, otherwise, he would have spoilt it. (8) He ought to have paid more attention to his work than he did, and then he would not have spoilt it. (9) Would you have me desert my friends? Of course, (I would) not. (10) He will come; I cannot stop him. He will come if you do (will) not stop him. (11) He would come, notwithstanding I did all I could to stop him. He would come if you invited (would invite) him. (12) He would not confess that he saw (sees) nothing. He would not have confessed that he saw nothing, if he really had seen (already before saw) something. (13) I am writing to him to come (or, in order that he may come). I wrote to him to come (or, in order that he might come).

EXERCISE 43.

Adverbial and Conjunctional Phrases.

(1) Ne faru tion *miakauze* (or, *pro mi*). (2) Ĉiu knabo *siavice legu verson*. (3) *Nenial li ĉesis kanti*. (4) *Ial li forlasis sian celon*. (5) *Unufoje por ĉiam mi diras al vi denove, ke mi ĝin ne permesos*. (6) *Mi tule ne scias tion, kion vi volas diri, se ne estas, ke vi bezonas monon*. (7) *Li turnis la librojn supre malsupren, kaj siajn poſojn el interne, sed li ne povis trovi la leteron*. (8) *Malgraŭ ĉio estas al mi tute egale, ĉu vi ĝin faros aŭ ne*. (9) *Ĉiuspecaj personoj ĉeestos la kunvenon, kiel ekzemple nobeloj, negocistoj, komercistoj, butikistoj, kaj tiel plu (k.t.p.)*,

EXERCISES.

sed, *kio ajn okazos* (aŭ, *čiuokaze*), mi tien iros,
proto, *ke* (aŭ, *čar*) ĝi fariĝas nur *unu fojon čiujare*. (10)
Li penis fari *sian elbon*, sed tio estis *tute senefike*. (11)
Miasurprize, li diris al mi, *ke li ĝin ne faris intence*.
(12) Nu, oni trovis, *ke tiel* (Hamleto V., 1). (13) Mi vizitis lin *antaŭ ne longe*. (14) Mi ŝin ne vidis *en la lasta tempo*, sed mi esperas, *ke ŝi vizitos min pli poste*.

TRANSLATION 43.

Adverbial and Conjunctional Phrases.

(1) Do not do that *on my account*. (2) Let each boy *in his turn* read a verse. (3) *For no reason* he left off singing. (4) *For some reason* he abandoned his purpose. (5) *Once for all*, I tell you *again* that I will not permit it. (6) I do *not know in the least* (or, *at all*) what you mean, *unless* it be that you want money. (7) He turned the books *upside down* and his pockets *inside out*, but he could not find the letter. (8) *After all*, it is *all the same* to me whether you do it or not. (9) *All sorts of* people will be at the meeting, *as, for example*, noblemen, merchants, traders, shopkeepers, *and so forth* (*etc.*), but *at all events* I shall go there, *for it takes place only once a year*. (10) He tried *to do his best*, but it was *all to no purpose*. (11) *To my surprise*, he told me that he did not do it *on purpose*. (12) Well, it was *so found*. (13) I called upon him *lately* (*not long ago*). (14) I have not seen her *of late*, but I hope she will call upon me *later on*.

EXERCISE 44.

La edzeço (para. 276).

Georgo fiancīgis kun ĉarma knabino, kaj estas edzīgonta je ŝi jaude, kaj lia fratino estas edzinigonta samtage. La fiancino dc Georgo parolis pri sia edzinigo kun la parohestro de la paroho hieraŭ, kaj li diris, *ke li edzīgis ŝiajn gepatrojn antaŭ dudek jaroj*, kaj, *ke nenio faros al li pli grandan plezuron*, ol edzinigi ŝin. Li proponis, *ke la edzīgo okazu en la paroha*

EXERCISES.

pregejo, kaj ŝi respondis, ke ŝi estas certa, ke ŝia fianĉo raviĝos edziĝi je ŝi en la sama pregejo, kie ŝiaj gepatroj edziĝis, kaj, ke la fratino de Georgo konsentos ankaŭ edziniĝi tie.

La edziĝa tago alvenis, kaj la pregejo pleniĝis je ĉiu edziĝebraj personoj el la vilaĝo, fraŭlinoj kaj fraŭloj; ankaŭ ĉeestis la pastredzino, kiu estas fortasubtenantino de la edzeo.

Kiam la du edzinigontoj alvenis, la du edziĝontoj atendis ilin en la pregejo, kaj baldaŭ la soleno komenciĝis. La du geedziĝontoj staris flanko ĉe flanko en la horejo kontraŭ la altaro. Dum la soleno, la pastro metis, al ĉiu edziĝonto, la jenan demandon: "Ĉu vi volas preni tiun ĉi virinon kiel vian edzinigon?" kaj poste, al ĉiu edziniĝonto: "Ĉu vi volas preni tiun ĉi viron kiel vian edzigon?" Poste, ĉiu edziĝanto metis ringon sur la kvaran fingron de sia edziniganto, samtempe dirante: "Per tiu ĉi ringo mi vin edziuigas."

Tuj kiam la edziĝa soleno finiĝis, la novedzoj kaj novedzinoj iris ĉe la patron de Georgo, kie farigis la edziĝa festo.

Kelke da jaroj poste, Georgo eksedziĝis; kaj jaron pli poste, mi vidis en la ĵurnaloj, ke lia fratino eksedzigis (*or*, forsendis) sian edzon.

TRANSLATION 44.

Matrimony.

George became engaged to a charming girl, and is to be married to her on Thursday, and his sister is to be married on the same day. George's fiancée spoke about her marriage to the vicar of the parish yesterday, and he said he had married her parents twenty years ago, and that nothing would give him greater pleasure than to marry her. He proposed that the marriage should take place in the parish church, and she replied that she was certain her fiancé would be delighted to be married to her in the same church where her parents had been married, and that George's sister would consent also to be married there.

EXERCISES.

The wedding day arrived, and the church was filled with all the marriageable persons of the village, maids and bachelors ; there was also present the clergyman's wife, who is a strong advocate of matrimony.

When the two brides¹ arrived, the two bridegrooms¹ were awaiting them in the church, and soon the ceremony commenced. The two bridal couples stood side by side in the chancel opposite the altar. During the ceremony the clergyman put the following question to each bridegroom : " Wilt thou have this woman to thy wedded wife ? " and then to each bride : " Wilt thou have this man to thy wedded husband ? " Afterwards each bridegroom put a ring on the fourth finger of his bride, at the same time saying : " With this ring I thee wed."

As soon as the marriage ceremony was over the brides and bridegrooms went to George's father's house, where the wedding banquet took place.

Some years afterwards George was divorced, and a year later I saw in the papers that his sister had divorced her husband.

¹ "Bride" and "bridegroom" are synonymous terms in English for persons who are *about to be* and *have been* married, but they are distinguished in Esperanto.

Edzinigonto=A bride before marriage.

Edziniganto=A bride who is being married.

Edziniginto, or, *Novedzino*=A bride after marriage.
(See paras. 208, 209).

PART IV.

PHRASES.

Jesaj Frazoj.

Estas vere. Tio estas vera.
Vi estas prava.
Estas certe, ke...
Mi estas certa je tio.
Mi poras vin certigi.
Mi vin certigas, ke jes.
Mi kredas, ke jes.
Tion mi kredas.
Mi diras, ke jes.
Vi poras kredi al mi (min).

*Mi diras al vi, ke ĝi estas la
vero (or, ke estas vere).*
*Mi donas al vi mian parolon
de honoro.*
Tio sufielas.
Estas li (si) (ili) mem.

Estas frue (malfrue).
Estas ankoraŭ tre frue.
Estas la dua horo.
Tiam pli bone.

Affirmative Phrases.

It is true. That is true.
You are right.
It is certain that...
I am sure of that.
I can assure you.
I assure you it is so.
I believe so.
So (that) I believe.
I say yes.
You may (can) believe
me.
I tell you it is true.

I give you my word (of
honour).
That is sufficient.
It is he himself (she her-
self) (they themselves).
It is early (late).
It is still very early.
It is two o'clock.
So much the better.

PHRASES.

Neaj Frazoj.

Ne estas vere, ke...
Estas malvere, ke...
Vi ne estas prava.
Vi estas malprava.
Neniu tion diras.
Li ne estas tie.
Mi ne diris tion.
Mi iras nenien.
Ne aŭskulti lin.
La tagmanĝo ne estas preta.
Mi ne kredas tion.
Ne estas eble.
Tio min ne koncernas.
Vi vin trompas.
Mi ne farus tion, se mi estus vi.
Mi ne scias bone, kion vi volus diri.
Mi ne povas trovi la libron, kiun vi deziras.

Negative Phrases.

It is not true that ..
 It is false that...
 You are not right.
 You are wrong.
 No one says so (that).
 He is not there.
 I did not say that (or, so).
 I am going nowhere.
 Do not listen to him.
 Lunch is not ready.
 I don't believe that.
 It is not possible.
 That does not concern me.
 You deceive yourself.
 I would not do that if I were you.
 I don't quite (well) know what you mean (what you wish to say).
 I cannot find the book you want.

Demandaj Frazoj.

Kio estas ? Kio okazis ?
Kiu estas ? Kiu estas tie ?
Kien vi iras ?
Kion vi faros, kiam... ?
Kion vi diris ?
Kion vi volas (deziras) (postulas) (bezonas) ?
Kie vi estas ?
Kioma horo estas ?

Interrogative Phrases.

What is it ? What is the matter ? What has happened ?
 Who is it ? Who is there ?
 Where (whither) are you going ?
 What will you do when... ?
 What did you say ?
 What do you wish (desire) (require) (need) ?
 Where are you ?
 What o'clock is it ?

PHRASES.

<i>Je kioma horo vi lerigas ?</i>	At what time do you get up (rise) ?
<i>Kion vi volas diri ?</i>	What do you mean ?
<i>Kiun daton ni haras ho-diaū ?</i>	What is the day of the month ? (lit., what date have we to-day ?)
<i>Cu vi aūdis ? Cu vi ne aūdis ?</i>	Did you hear ? Did you not hear ?
<i>Cu vi konas Sinjoron B. ?</i>	Do you know Mr. B. ?
<i>Cu vi min komprenas ?</i>	Do you understand me ?
<i>Cu vi parolas Esperanton ?</i>	Do you speak Esperanto ?
<i>Cu vi parolas malserce ?</i>	Do you speak seriously ?
<i>Certe vi ŝereas ?</i>	Surely you are joking ?
<i>Cu la ŝepemanĝo estas preta ?</i>	Is dinner ready ?
<i>Cu la returilo jam alvenis ?</i>	Has the carriage come (arrived) ?
<i>Cu estas tempo por foriri ?</i>	Is it time to go away ?
<i>Kio estas la nomo de tiu ĉi urbo ?</i>	What is the name of this town ?
<i>Cu vi venos kun mi ?</i>	Shall you come with me ?
<i>Cu estas leteroj por mi ?</i>	Are there any letters for me ?
<i>Cu vi estus tiel bona ?</i>	Would you be so good ?
<i>Cu vi harus la bonecon ?</i>	Would you have the goodness ?
<i>Kian aĝon vi haravas ?</i>	How old are you (what kind of age) ?
<i>Kie vi lin renkontis ?</i>	Where did you meet him ?
<i>Kial vi ne respondas ?</i>	Why don't you answer ?
<i>Kion vi bezonas ?</i>	What do you want ?
<i>Kiom kostas tiu ĉi objekto ?</i>	What does this article cost ?
<i>Kiam ni haltos por tag-manĝi ?</i>	When shall we stop for (to take) lunch ?
<i>Kia estas via opinio ?</i>	What is your opinion ?
<i>Kion vi diris al li ?</i>	What did you say to him ?
<i>Kie (kiam) vi renkontis ŝin ?</i>	Where (when) did you meet her ?

PHRASES.

<i>Cu vi vidis ŝin sur la strato aŭ ĉe sia domo ?</i>	Did you see her in the street or at her house ?
<i>Cu vi ne diris al ŝi tion, kion mi petis, ke vi diru ?</i>	Did you not tell her what I begged you to say ?

Ordonaj Frazoj.

*Venu tien ĉi. Foriru.
Rapidu. Haltu, veturisto !*
*Diru al li, ke li venu.
Restu tie ĉi momenton.
Aŭskultu min.
Komencu. Daŭrigu.
Atentu, ke vi ne falu.
Ne tiel rapide.
Iru pli malrapide.
Parolu al li.
Ne diru tion.
Faru al mi la plezuron.
Mi petas, ne ĝenu vin.

Ne kredu lin (al li).
Faru, kion mi diras.
Trankviliĝu ! Silentu !
Alkonduku la veturilon.
Alportu miajn bolojn.
Havigu (venigu) al mi
fiakron.
Donu al mi tiun libron.
Pruntu al mi vian ombrelon,
mi petas.
Brosu tiun ĉi vestaĵon.
Ne diru unu vorton.
Sidigu, mi petas. Sidigu
vin, mi petas.
Ne faru tion.*

Imperative Phrases.

Come here. Go away.
Make haste. Stop, coach-
man !
Tell him to come.
Stay here a moment.
Listen to me.
Begin. Continue.
Take care you don't fall.
Not so quick.
Go slower.
Speak to him.
Don't say that.
Do me the pleasure.
Pray do not trouble your-
self.
Do not believe him.
Do what I say.
Be quiet ! Be silent !
Bring the carriage.
Bring my boots.
Get me a cab.

Give me that book.
Please lend me your um-
brella.
Brush these clothes.
Don't say a word.
Pray be seated. Please
sit down.
Don't do that.

PHRASES.

<i>Pardonu al mi, Sinjoro, vi okupas mian sidejon.</i>	Excuse me, Sir, you are occupying my place.
<i>Pasigu al mi la salon (pipron) (mustardon), mi petas!</i>	Pass me the salt (pepper) (mustard), if you please!
<i>Kelnero, donu al mi la panon!</i>	Waiter, give me the bread!
<i>Fermu (malfermu) la por-don (la fenestron), mi petas.</i>	Shut (open) the door (window), please.
<i>Rigardu tiun beletan (gracian) knabinon.</i>	Look at that pretty girl.
<i>Ho! rigardu kia bela domo estas tiu!</i>	Oh! look what a beautiful house that is!
<i>Foriru de tie ĉi!</i>	Go away from here!
<i>Saru lin! li dronas!</i>	Save him! he is drowning!

Esprimoj de Danko. Expressions of Thanks.

<i>Mi dankas. Mi dankas vin (al vi).</i>	Thank you.
<i>Mi tre dankas vin. Dankon.</i>	Thank you very much. Thanks.
<i>Multe da dankoj. Multan dankon.</i>	Many thanks.
<i>Mil dankojn.</i>	A thousand thanks.
<i>Vi estastre bona (kompleza).</i>	You are very good (kind).
<i>Mi ne scias, kiel vin danki.</i>	I don't know how to thank you.
<i>Vi estas ja (efektive) tro bona.</i>	You are really too good.
<i>Vi faris al mi favoron (servon), kiun mi neniam forgesos.</i>	You have done me a favour (service), which I shall never forget.
<i>Mi volus pli multe fari.</i>	I wish I could do more.
<i>Mi estos ĉiam via ŝuldanto.</i>	I shall always be your debtor.

PHRASES.

<i>Mi neniam forgesos vian bonecon.</i>	I shall never forget your goodness.
<i>Mi petas, akceptu la esprimon de mia profunda dankeco.</i>	I beg you to accept the expression of my profound thankfulness.
<i>Estis por mi plenuro, ke mi povis esti utila al vi.</i>	It was a pleasure to me, to be able to be of service to you.
<i>Mi bedaŭras, ke mi ne povis pli multe fari.</i>	I regret that I could not do more.

La Vетero.

Kia estas la vетero?
Estas belega tago.
La suno brilas, sed la vento estas malvarmega.
Estas tre varmege.
Estas tre malvarmege.
Ĉu vi pensas, ke pluvos?
La nuboj amasiĝas.
Pluvis la tutan nokton.
Negos morgaŭ, mi pensas.
Ni havos baldaŭ pluvegon.

Pluregis la lastan nokton.
La vento levigas.
La pluovo falas.
La vетero estas tre ŝanĝema.

Ventego venas, kaj ŝajnas kvazaŭ estos uragano.

La hajlo nun ekĉesas.

The Weather.

What sort of weather is it?
 It is a lovely day.
 The sun is shining, but the wind is bitterly cold.
 It is excessively hot.
 It is intensely cold.
 Do you think it will rain?
 The clouds are gathering.
 It rained all night.
 It will snow to-morrow, I think.
 We shall soon have a deluge of rain (a down-pour).
 It rained in torrents (it poured) last night.
 The wind is rising.
 The rain is falling.
 The weather is very changeable.
 A storm is coming, and it appears as if it would be a hurricane.
 The hail is now ceasing.

CONVERSATION.

CONVERSATION (Interparolado).

*Pardonu al mi, Sinjoro, sed
ĉu vi parolas Esperanto?*

*Mi ĝin parolas iom, sed tre
malĝuste, ĉar mi ne
harismalte da ekzerciteco.*

*Sajnas al mi, ke vi ĝin
parolas tre bone.*

*Vi faras al mi komplimenton, mi timas, sed mi
ĝojas, ke mi ĝin parolas
sufiĉe bone por kom-
preniĝi. Se vi parolas
la franca lingvon, ĉu
vi bonrolos harigi al mi
bileton por Ĝenevo?*

*Kun multe da pluzuro. Mi
ankvū iras tien. En
kiu klaso vi veturos?*

*En la unua pro tia longa
returo.*

*Mi ankaŭ, tial ni poras
kunreturi (returi kune).
Sed, se vi haras pezan
pakajon, vi devos ĝin
enskribi.*

*Mi haras du rojaĝkestojn
kaj valizon; vi farus al
mi grandan komplezon, se
vi enskribigus ilin por
mi.*

Excuse me, Sir, but do
you speak Esperanto?

I speak it a little, but
very incorrectly, for I
have not had much
practice.

It appears to me that you
speak it very well.

You are paying me a
compliment, I fear, but
I am glad I speak it
sufficiently well to be
understood. If you
speak French, will you
kindly get me a ticket
for Geneva?

With much pleasure. I
also am going there.
By what class do you
travel?

By the first for such a
long journey.

I too, so we can travel
together. But if you
have heavy luggage,
you will have to register
it.

I have two trunks and a
portmanteau; you
would do me a great
kindness if you would
get them registered for
me.

CONVERSATION.

Mi tiel faros, tuj kiam mi ricevos la biletojn.

Mil dankojn ! Jen estas tri centfrunkaj bankbiletoj.

Mi enskribis vian pakajon, kaj jen estas via vojaĝbileto, la pakajbileto kaj la monrestaĵo. Mi pagis ducent dudek du frankojn por la bileto de iro kaj reveno, kaj dudek unu por la pakajenskribo.

Tre multan dankon ; kaj nun, ni prenu niajn sidejojn en la vagonaro.

Tiu ĉi fako estas plena. Jen estas alia, kiu havas du sidejojn neokupitajn. Ni eniru tiun.

Tre bone. Kiun sidejon vi pli volas ? Tiun, kiu kontraŭas la lokomotivon, aŭ la alian ?

Al mi estas tute egale. Elektu vi mem.

Nu, mi prenos tiun ĉi, ĉar mi ne amas veturi kun la dorso kontraŭ la lokomotivo.

Kiam la vagonaro ekiros ?

Post du aŭ tri minutoj

Nun, ni foriras.

Ĉu vi konas bonan hotelon en Genevo kontraŭ la lago ?

I will do so, as soon as I have got the tickets.

A thousand thanks ! Here are three 100-franc notes.

I registered your luggage, and here is your travelling ticket, the luggage ticket and change (money balance). I paid 222 francs for the return ticket, and 21 for the luggage registering.

Very many thanks ; and now let us take our seats in the train.

This compartment is full. Here is another that has two vacant seats. Let us enter that.

Very well. Which seat do you prefer ? That which faces the engine, or the other ?

It is all the same to me. Choose yourself.

Well, I will take this, for I do not like to travel with my back to the engine.

When does the train start ?

In two or three minutes.

Now we are off.

Do you know a good hotel in Geneva facing the lake ?

CONVERSATION.

*Mi konas diversajn, en unu
el kiuj mi mem iros, kaj
kiu estas tre komforta
kaj la prezoj moderaj.*

*Bonvolu diri al mi ĝian
nomon, ĉar tia hotelo tre
bone konvenus al (por)
mi, ĉar mi neniel estas
riĉulo.*

*Mi forgesas la nomon, sed
se vi kuniros tien kun mi,
mi ĝin montros al vi.*

*Ti estas tre komplexa;
plezuro mi akompanos
vi. Ĉu ni devos ragon-
sanĝi antau ol alveni
(en) Ĝenevon?*

*Ne. Tiu ĉi ragonaro estas
rapidira, kaj ni haltos
nur kvarfoje inter tie ĉi
kaj Ĝenevo, kien ni devus
alveni je la sesa (horo)
dudek sep morgaŭ matene.*

*Ni do havas ankoraŭ pli
ol sep horojn en la
ragonaro. Mi kaptos la
okazon por bona dormo;
tial mi diros "Bonan
nokton, Sinjoro."*

*Vekiĝu, Sinjoro! Jen ni
estas en Ĝenevo. Donu
al mi vian pakajbileton,
kaj mi kolektos viajn
ajojn kune kun miaj.*

I know several, to one of
which I am going my-
self, and which is very
comfortable and the
charges moderate.

Kindly tell me its name,
for such an hotel would
suit me very well, not
being in any way a
rich man.

I forget the name, but if
you will go there with
me, I will show it to
you.

You are very kind; I
will accompany you
with pleasure. Shall
we have to change
carriages before arriv-
ing at Geneva?

No. This train is express,
and we stop only four
times between here and
Geneva, where we
ought to arrive at 6.27
to-morrow morning.

Then we have still more
than seven hours of the
train. I shall take
the opportunity for a
good sleep, so I will
say "Good night, Sir."

Wake up, Sir! Here we
are at Geneva. Give
me your luggage
ticket, and I will
collect your things
with mine.

CONVERSATION.

Ĉu mi devas lui fiakron ?

*Ne estas necese. Ni povas
iri en la omnibuso ; la
hotelo ne estas tre mal-
proksime de la stacidomo.*

*Jen estas la hotelo. Ĉu
gi kontentigas vin ?*

*Perfekte, se la ĉambroj kaj
litoj estas puraj, kaj la
mangojo bona.*

*Cio estas kontentiga la
lastan fojon kiam mi
estis tie, kaj mi opinias,
ke la sama hotelastro
ankorau tenas la hotelon.
Jes, mi estas prava. Jen
li estas ! Tial vi povas
nun diri al li tion, kion
vi bezonas.*

*Bonan vesperon. Kion vi
deziras, Sinjoro ?*

*Bonan, aerplenan litéĉambron
sur la tria etaĝo, kontraŭ
la lago. Kiom vi postu-
las ?*

*Mi harus ĝuste la ĉambron,
kiun vi deziras, Sinjoro.
La prezo dependas de la
daŭro de la tempo, kiun vi
restas en la hotelo, kaj
ĉu vi luas la ĉambron kun
aŭ sen nutraĵo.*

*Mi restos almenau kvin
tagojn por la Kongreso,
kaj mi prenos ĉiujn
mangojn en la hotelo.*

Shall I hire a cab ?

It is not necessary. We
can go in the omnibus ;
the hotel is not very
far from the station.

There is the hotel. Does
it satisfy you ?

Perfectly, if the rooms and
beds are clean and the
food good.

Everything was satisfac-
tory the last time I
was there, and I fancy
the same landlord still
keeps the hotel. Yes,
I am right. Here he
is ! So you can now
tell him what you
want.

Good evening. What do
you desire, Sir ?

A good, airy bedroom on
the third floor, facing
the lake. What is
your charge (do you
ask) ?

I have exactly the room
you desire, Sir. The
charge depends on the
length of time you
stay in the hotel, and
whether you take the
room with or without
board.

I shall remain at least
five days for the Con-
gress, and I shall take
all meals in the hotel.

CONVERSATION.

*Tiu kaze la prezo estos po
ok frankoj por ĉiu tago :
aǔ, se vi restus tutan
semajnon, la tuta kosto
estus krindek frankoj, kiu
enharas la serradon kaj
la lumigon.*

*Nu, do, mi pensas, ke mi
restos unu semajnon, se
mi trovos la nutrajon
bona kaj la litrambron
pura kaj komforta. Je
kiomuj horoj okazas la
manĝoj?*

*Matenmanĝo je kia ajan
horo vi deziras; tag-
manĝo je la unua, kaj
respermanĝo je la sesa
kaj duono.*

*Bone. Bonvolu suprensendi
miajn pakajojn al mia
ĉambro.*

In that case the charge
will be (at the rate of)
eight francs a day (for
each day); or if you
should remain a whole
week, the entire cost
would be fifty francs,
which includes atten-
dance and light.

Well, then, I think I shall
stay a week, if I (shall)
find the food good and
the bedroom clean and
comfortable. At what
hours are the meals?

Breakfast at whatever
hour you wish; lunch at
one o'clock, and dinner
at half-past six.

Good. Kindly send my
luggage up to my room.

CORRESPONDENCE.

CORRESPONDENCE (Korespondado).

The following are some of the more usual forms of dates, commencements, and conclusions of letters :—

Dates.

<i>Londono, Anglujo.</i>
<i>ie la 24a de januaro 1906a.</i>
<i>„ „ 24a de jan^o „</i>
<i>la 10an de febo „</i>
<i>25 junio „</i>

N.B.—The preposition *je* is generally omitted and the accusative used in its place, as :—*La 12an de marto.* Most countries do not use capital letters for the months, and it is perhaps better to follow the example of the majority, and write *la 14an de decembro, 1906a.*

Reference to Dates.—In referring to dates, the preposition *de* is generally used, e.g.:—*Responde je (or, al) via letero de... = In reply to your letter of...*

De la 4a de la lasta monato = Of the 4th of last month.

De la 4a de la lasta = Of the 4th ultimo.

De la 4a de la nuna (kuranta) monato = Of the 4th of the present month.

De la 4a de la nuna (or, kuranta) = Of the 4th instant.

In speaking of future dates, *venonta* or *proksima* is used, with or without *monato*, as :—*Je la 4a de la venonta (or, proksima) monato* = On the 4th of next month, or on the 4th proximo. *Je* can be omitted and the accusative used, as :—*La 4an de la venonta.*

Commencement and Conclusion of Letters.

The style of address varies considerably among nations, but the following are some in more or less general use :—

Friends.

Commencement.—*Estimata* = Esteemed. *Kara* = Dear. *Mia kara Karlo* = My dear Charles. *Kara* (or, *mia kara*) *Sinjoro B.* = Dear (or, my dear) Mr. B. *Sinjorino B.* = Mrs. B. *Fraülino B.* = Miss B. (*Mia*) *kara Samideano* (or, *Samideanino*) = Fellow thinker(if an Esperantist), lit., partisan of the same idea.

CORRESPONDENCE.

Conclusion.—In the undermentioned examples *kun* may be omitted and the accusative used, as:—*Amikajn salutojn*. This shows some verb (such as *mi deziras*) is omitted (see para. 105, on ellipsis, and para. 65 (c) on accusative).

<i>Kun amika saluto</i> = With friendly salutation.	<i>(La) via (tre) sincere</i> = Yours (very) sincerely.
<i>Kun estimo kaj...</i> = With esteem and...	<i>(Tre) kore (la) via</i> = (Very) heartily yours.
<i>Kun kora saluto</i> = With hearty salutation.	<i>Tute (la) via</i> = Entirely yours.
<i>Kun saluto</i> = With salutation.	<i>Ciam (la) via</i> = Always yours.
<i>Kun ĉiu bondeziroj</i> = With all good wishes.	<i>Via fidela amiko</i> = Your faithful friend.
<i>Kun miaj bondeziroj</i> = With kind regards.	<i>(La) via</i> = Yours.
<i>Kun la plej granda estimo</i> = With the greatest esteem.	<i>Sindone via. Amike via.</i> <i>Mi restas via.</i> <i>Kredu min esti ciam, k.c.</i> <i>Vin salutas, k.t.p.</i>

Strangers.

Commencement.—*Sinjoro* = Sir. *Sinjorino* = Madam. *Fraŭlino* = Mademoiselle. *Estimata* = Esteemed, may precede the above, or, in some cases, *kara*, or, *tre estimata*.

Conclusion.—(*Tre*) *fidele (la) via* = (Very) faithfully yours. (*La*) *via (tre) vere* = Yours (very) truly. (*Tre*) *sincere (la) via* = (Very) sincerely yours.

Titles.—For the use of *Mosto* in addressing persons with titles, or in official positions, see para. 283.

Near Relatives.

In correspondence with near relatives, the following are some of the terms which might be written:—

Commencement.—*Mia kara...* = My dear... *Plek kara...* = Dearest... *Mia karegulo, or, karegulino...* = My darling... *Amata...* = Beloved... *Kare amata...* = Dearly beloved...

Conclusion.—*Kun multe da amo (por ĉiuj)* = With much love (to all). *I ia (tre) amanta* = Your (very) affectionate. *Via ameganta patrino* = Your loving mother.

Official or Commercial.

Commencement.—*Sinjoro* = Sir. *Sinjoroj* = Gentlemen, or, Sirs. *Estimata, estimataj, kara, karaj,* may precede the above.

Conclusion.—The modes of conclusion are numerous; the following are a few:—

(*Tre*) *fidele (la) via* = (Very) faithfully yours.

Kun alta estimo, or, Altestime = With high esteem.

CORRESPONDENCE.

Via obea, or obeema (humila) servanto=Your obedient (humble) servant.

Ricevu la certigon de la plej alta estimo de via obea servanto=Accept the assurance of the highest esteem from your obedient servant.

Mi restas kun tuta respekto, via plej humila servanto=I remain with all respect your most humble servant.

Specimens of Letters (Modeloj de leteroj).

Gesinjoroj M. havas la honoron invitî Gesinjorojn N. kaj ilian filinon, al vespermuñjo jaŭdon venontan je la oka horo.

Mr. and Mrs. M. have the honour of inviting Mr. and Mrs. N. and their daughter to dinner on Thursday next at eight o'clock.

Gesinjoroj N. kaj ilia filino akceptas kun multa plêzuro la afablan inviton de Gesinjoroj M. por vespermanĝo je lu venonta jaŭdo. Or,...tre bedaŭras, ke antaŭia promeso malhelpas ilin akcepti la...k.t.p.

Mr. and Mrs. N. and their daughter accept with much pleasure the kind invitation of Mr. and Mrs. M. to dinner on Thursday next. Or, ...very much regret that a previous engagement prevents them from accepting the...

Kara Sro. B.,—Mi proponas viziti vin morgaŭ posttagmeze, je la 5a horo, se tiu horo estos oportuna por vi; se ne, bonvolu sciigi min, per la alportanto de tiu ĉi, je kioma horo vi estos neokupata (senokupa).

Dear Mr. B.,—I propose calling upon you to-morrow afternoon at 5 o'clock, if that hour will be convenient to you; if not, kindly inform me by bearer (of this) at what hour you will be disengaged.

Mi ne ricevis vian leteron de la 30a lasta ĝis la 2a de la nuna.

I did not receive your letter of the 30th ultimo till the 2nd instant.

Mi bedaŭras, ke mi tiel longe prokrastis respondi vian leteron, sed efektive mi ne povis trovi la tempon...

I regret that I delayed so long in replying to your letter, but really I could not find time...

Mi tre ĝojas aŭdi, ke vi...

I am delighted to hear that you...

Mi kore gratulas vin pro (pri) via fiancigo kun Fraŭlino B.

I heartily congratulate you on your engagement to Miss B.

Mi ricevis vian leteron tro malfrue por ĝin respondi per la hodiaŭa poŝto (or, respondi hodiaŭ poste).

I received your letter too late to answer it by to-day's post.

CORRESPONDENCE.

ESPERANTISTA KLUBO,

18^an de aprilo, 1906^a.

LONDONO.

Kara Karlējo,

Kiam vi ricevos tiun ĉi leteron, eble vi diros: "Kio estas tio ĉi? Kia lingvo estas?" Sed, kiam vi malfermos la Ŝlosileton (tie ĉi enfermitan), kaj jam tralegos la unuajn ok paĝojn, vi diros: "Tio ĉi estas mirinda! Kiu ĝin kredus? Mi povas tute facile kompreni tiun ĉi strangan lingvon! Kio oni ĝin nomas? Ho! mi 'vidas, 'Esperanto!' Kion signifas 'Esperanto'?" Mi serĉu en la ŝlosilo. Jen estas! 'Esper' = *hope*, 'ant' = *present participle*, tio estas 'ing'; tio faras "hoping"; 'o' = ending of nouns; tial, 'esperanto' signifas *someone hoping*. Nu, se mi povas tiel facile, "unuavide, kompreni tiun ĉi lingvon, ĝia aŭtoro havas ĉian kaŭzon por esperi, ke li efektivigos sian "deziron, kaj mi kore deziras, ke li sukcesu. Mi "certe lernos esperanton kaj penos disvastigi ĝin kiel "eble plej multe."

Kaj nun, mia kara Karlo, skribu al mi leteron Esperante, kaj diru al mi, ĉu mi ne estas tute prava, imagante, ke la supreditiraj vortoj estas ĝuste tiuj, kiujn vi pensis, ricevinte tiun ĉi leteron.

Ĉiam la via,
G.C.

Postskribajo. P.S.—Tiu ĉi klubo estas tute esperantista. Ĉiuj anoj aŭ parolas Esperanton, aŭ lernadas ĝin; por tiuj ĉi, ni havas ĉambrojn aparte dediĉitan al la lernantoj, kaj unu el la anoj donas lecionojn ĉiutage. La kelneroj kaj ĉiuj servistoj parolas la lingvon. La mangokartoj kaj vinkartoj estas en Esperanto, kaj ni ĉiam parolas Esperante unu kun la aliaj. Mi esperas, ke vi anigos, kiam vi revenos Anglujon.

CORRESPONDENCE.

Translation.

ESPERANTIST CLUB,
18th April, 1906.

Dear Charlie,

When you receive this letter possibly you will say : "What is this? What language is it?" But when you open the tiny key (herewith enclosed), and have read through the first eight pages, you will say : "This is wonderful! Who would believe it? I can quite easily understand this queer language! What do they call it? Oh! I see, 'Esperanto!' What does 'Esperanto' mean? Let me look in the key. Here it is! 'Esper'=hope, 'ant'=present participle, that is to say, 'ing'; that makes 'hoping'; 'o'=ending of nouns; therefore 'esperanto' means 'someone hoping.' Well, if I can so easily, at first sight, understand this language, its author has every reason to hope that he will realize his desire, and I heartily hope that he will succeed. I shall certainly learn Esperanto, and try to spread it as much as possible."

And now, my dear Charles, write me a letter in Esperanto, and tell me if I am not quite right in imagining that the above-mentioned words are exactly what you thought, after receiving this letter.

Always yours,
G.C.

*Postscript. P.S.—*This Club is entirely Esperantist. All members either speak Esperanto or are learning it; for the latter we have a room specially set apart for learners, and one of the members gives lessons daily. The waiters and all the servants speak the language. The menus and wine cards are in Esperanto, and we always speak Esperanto to each other. I hope you will become a member when you return to England.

PART V.

LIST OF PRIMARY WORDS.

A

- Adiaū = *adieu, farewell, good-bye* (adv. and int.).
Ajn = *ever* (adv.).
Al = *to, towards* (prep.).
Almenaū = *at least* (conj. and adv.).
Ambaū = *both* (pron.).
Ankaū = *also, too* (conj. and adv.).
Ankoraū = *yet, still* (adv.).
Anstataū = *instead of* (prep. and conj.).
Antaū = *before, in front of, ago* (prep.).
Apenaū = *hardly, scarcely* (adv.).
Apud = *near to, close by, beside, at the side of* (prep.).
Aū = *or, either* (conj.).

B

- Baldaū = *soon* (adv.).
Bis = *once more, encore, again* (adv. and int.).

C

- Čar = *because, for, since* (conj.).
Če = *at, at...house* (prep.).

PRIMARY WORDS.

Cent = *hundred* (num.).
Ci = *thou* (per. pron.).
Ĉi = (*here*) *nearest* (adv.).
Ĉia = *each, every kind of* (pron. adj.).
Ĉial = *for every cause, for every reason* (adv.).
Ĉiam = *always, ever* (adv.).
Ĉie = *everywhere* (adv.).
Ĉiel = *in every way* (adv.).
Ĉies = *everyone's* (indef. pron.).
Ĉio = *everything* = (indef. pron.)
Ĉiom = *all, every quantity* (adv.).
Ĉirkaŭ = *round, about* (prep.).
Ĉiu = *each, each one* (pron. and pron. adj.).
Ĉu = *whether* (conj. and adv.).

D

Da = *of (for quantity)*, (prep.).
De = *of, from, since (time), by (agent)*, (prep.).
Dek = *ten* (num.).
Des pli = *so much the...* (conj. and adv.). As :—
 Des pli bone = *so much the better* (see *ju pli*).
Do = *then, indeed, therefore* (conj.).
Du = *two* (num.).
Dum = *while, whilst (conj.), (during) while* (prep.).

E

Ec = *even* (adv.).
Ekster = *outside* (prep.).
El = *out of* (prep.).
En = *in, into* (prep.).

F

Fi ! = *fie !* (int.).
For = *away, forth* (adv. and int.).

PRIMARY WORDS.

G

Gi = *it* (per. pron.).

Ĝis = *till, until, up to, down to, as far as* (prep. and conj.).

H

Ha! = *ah! ha!* (int.).

He! = *hey! halloa!* (int.).

Hieraŭ = *yesterday* (adv.).

Ho! = *ho! oh!* (int.).

Hodiaŭ = *to-day* (adv.).

Hura! = *hurrah! huzza!* (int.).

I

Ia = *some, some kind of (any)*, (pron. adj.).

Ial = *for some (any) cause* (adv.).

Iam = *ever, some (any) time* (adv.).

Ie = *somewhere, anywhere* (adv.).

Iel = *somewhat, in some (any) way* (adv.).

Ies = *someone's, anyone's* (indef. pron.).

Ili = *they* (per. pron.).

Inter = *among, between* (prep.).

Io = *something, anything* (indef. pron.).

Iom = *some quantity, somewhat, some, any* (adv.).

Iu = *some one* (indef. pron. and pron. adj.).

J

Ja = *in fact, indeed* (adv.), *indeed!* (int.).

Jam = *already, now, yet* (adv.).

Je = an indefinite preposition (see para. 251).

Jen = *here, there* (adv. and conj.), *lo! behold!* (int.).

Jen...jen = *now...now*.

Jes = *yes* (adv.).

Ju pli...des pli = *the more...the more* (conj. and adv.).

Jus = *just* (conj. and adv.).

PRIMARY WORDS.

K

Kaj = *and, both* (conj.).

Ke = *that* (conj.).

Kia = *what kind of* (interrogative and pron. adj.),
what! (int.).

Kial = *wherefore, why* (conj., adv., and interrogative).

Kiam = *when* (conj., adv., and interrogative).

Kie = *where* (conj., adv., and interrogative).

Kiel = *how, as, in what way* (conj., adv., and interrogative).

Kies = *whose* (interrogative and relative pron.).

Kio = *what (thing)*, (interrogative and relative pron.).

Kiom = *how many, how much* (adv. and interrogative).

Kiu = *who, which* (interrogative, pron., and pron. adj.).

Kontraū = *against, facing, opposite to* (prep.).

Krom = *not including, apart from*; hence it can be
used for "except, besides, save, without, but,"
etc. (prep.).

Kun = *with* (prep.), (not used in an instrumental
sense).

Kvankam = *although, though* (conj.).

Kvar = *four* (num.).

Kvazaū = *as if, as it were* (conj. and adv.).

Kvin = *five* (num.).

L

La = *the* (art.).

Laū = *according to* (prep.).

Li = *he* (per. pron.).

M

Malgraū = *notwithstanding* (prep.).

Mem = *self, selves, very* (pron.).

Mi = *I* (per. pron.).

Mil = *thousand* (num.).

Morgaū = *to-morrow* (adv.).

PRIMARY WORDS.

N

- Naǔ = *nine* (num.).
Ne = *no, not, nay* (adv.).
Nek = *neither, nor* (conj. and adv.).
Nenia = *none, no kind of* (pron. adj.).
Nenial = *for no cause (or, reason)*, (adv.).
Neniam = *never, at no time* (adv.).
Nenie = *nowhere* (adv.).
Neniel = *nowhow, in no way, not at all* (adv.).
Nenies = *no one's* (pron.).
Nenio = *nothing* (noun).
Neniom = *none, no quantity* (adv.).
Neniu = *nobody, no one* (noun and pron. adj.).
Ni = *we* (per. pron.).
Nu = *well!* (int.).
Nun = *now* (adv.).
Nur = *only* (adv.).

O

- Ok = *eight* (num.).
Ol = *than* (comparison), (conj.).
Oni = *they, one, people* (per. pron.).

P

- Per = *by, by means of, through, with* (prep.).
Plej = *most* (adv.).
Pli = *more* (conj. and adv.).
Plu = *further, farther, more* (adv.).
Po = *at the rate of, in the proportion of* (prep.).
Por = *for, in order to* (prep.).
Post = *after* (prep.).
Preskaǔ = *almost* (adv.).
Preter = *beyond, by, past* (prep.).
Pri = *concerning, of, about* (prep.).
Pro = *for, because of, by reason of, for the sake of, owing to* (prep.).

PRIMARY WORDS.

S

- Se = *if* (conj.).
Sed = *but* (conj.).
Sen = *without* (prep.).
Sep = *seven* (num.).
Ses = *six* (num.).
Si = *self* (reflexive pron.).
Ši = *she* (per. pron.).
Sub = *under* (prep.).
Super = *above, over* (prep.).
Sur = *on, upon* (prep.).

T

- Tamen = *however, yet, nevertheless, still* (conj.).
Tia = *that (or, such) kind of* (dem. pron. and pron. adj.).
Tial = *therefore, for that (or, such) cause (or, reason)* (adv. and conj.).
Tiam = *then, at that time* (adv.).
Tie = *there, in that place* (adv.).
Tie ēi = *here, in this place* (adv.).
Tiel = *thus, so, as, in that (or, such) way (or, manner)* (conj. and adv.).
Ties = *that one's, such a one's* (dem. pron.).
Tio = *that (thing)* (dem. pron.).
Tio ēi = *this (thing)* (dem. pron.).
Tiom = *so much, so many, as much* (adv.).
Tiu = *that one, the former* (dem. pron. and pron. adj.).
Tiu ēi = *this one, the latter* (dem. pron. and pron. adj.).
Tra = *through* (prep.).
Trans = *across, beyond, on the other side of* (prep.).
Tre = *very* (adv.).
Tri = *three* (num.).
Tro = *too, too much* (adv.).
Tuj = *at once, immediately* (adv.).

U

- Unu = *one* (num.).

V

- Ve ! = *woe ! alas !* (int.).
Vi = *you, ye, thou* (per. pron.).

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

LIST OF USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

In making use of the following list of Adverbs, Adjectives, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and adverbial and prepositional expressions, if the student has any doubt as to the correct Esperanto words he should select when more than one is given, he will generally find them explained (with examples) in the Alphabetical Lists of Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions at pages 160, 180, and 210.

A

- A. *per=en; por*, as :—*Kvar fojojn en tago*=Four times a day.
Tri juntojn en monato=Three pounds per month. *Drapo po ses frankoj por metro*=Cloth at six francs a (per) mètre.
About=*ĉirkaŭ*; *pri*: *pli-malpli*; *proksimume*.
Above=*super*; *supre*: *pli ol*.
,, all=*precipe*: *antaŭ ĉio*.
Absolutely=*absolute*.
Accidentally=*okaze*; *akcidente*.
According...as=*laŭ tio...se*.
,, to=*laŭ*; *konforme al (je)*; *depenante de*.
,, to circumstances=*laŭokuze*; *laŭcirkonstanco*.
Accordingly=*laue*; *tial*; *sekve*.
Across=*trans*; *laŭlarĝe*.
Actually=*efektive*; *fakte*; *ja*; *realu*.
Adieu=*adiau*.
Afar=*malproksime*; *malproksime de*.
After=*post*; *post kiam*; *poste*.
,, a time=*post kelka tempo*.
,, all=*malgraŭ ĉio*.
,, consideration=*konsiderinte*; *post pripenso*.
,, some time=*post kelke da tempo*.
Afterwards=*poste*.
Again=*ree*; *denove*; *ankoraŭ unufojon*; *bis*.
,, and again=*foje kaj ree*; *refoje*; *multfoje*.
Against=*kontraŭ*.
Agreed that=*konsente ke*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- All, all of it = *čiom*.
 " at once = *subile*.
 " right = *tute prave*; *čio bona*; *konsentite*; *bone*.
 " sorts of = *čiuspecaj* (adj.).
 " that = *čio tio*.
 " the better = *tiom pli bone*.
 " same = *tute egale*.
 " this = *čio tio ĉi*; *čio ĉi*.
 " together = *čiu ĵune*; *čiu ĵamtempe*.
 " ways (in every way) = *čiel*.
- Almost = *preskaŭ*.
 " always = *preskaŭ ĉiam*.
 Along = *laŭlonge de*; *laŭ*; *apud*; *flanke de*.
 " the river, road, etc. = *laŭ la rivero, vojo, k.c.*
 " . with = *kune kun*.
 Alongside = *tanke de*; *laŭlonge de*.
 Already = *jam*; *antaŭe*.
 Also = *ankāŭ*.
 Although = *kvankam*.
 Altogether = *tute*; *kune*; *samtempe*.
 Always = *ĉiam*; *ĉiufoje*; *senĉese*; *konstante*.
 Amid, amidst = *meze de*.
 Among, amongst = *inter*; *el*.
 Amongst other things = *interalie*; *inter aliaj aferoj*.
 And = *kaj*.
 " so forth (so on) = *k.t.p.* (*kaj tiel plu*); *k.c.* (*kaj ceteraj*).
 Anew = *denove*.
 Annually = *čiu ĵare*.
 Any = *ia* (some); *čia*; *iom*; *iom da*.
 " more = *ankoraŭ pli*; *pli multe*; *ankoraŭ iom da*.
 " time = *iam* (some time).
 Anybody, anyone = *iu* (someone); *čiu*.
 Anybody's, anyone's = *ies* (somebody's, someone's); *čies*.
 Anyhow = *iel* (somehow); *čiel* (in every way).
 Anyone (someone) else = *iu alia*; *čiu alia*.
 Anything (something) else = *io alia*; *čio alia*; *ankoraŭ io*.
 Anywhere = *ie* (somewhere); *čie* (everywhere).
 Apart from = *krom*; *ekster*.
 Approximately = *čirkaue*; *proksimume*; *pli-malpli*.
 Around = *čirkaŭ*.
 As = *kiel*; *same kiel*; *car*; *pro tio, ke*. As (time) = *kiam*; *dum*.
 As...as = *tiel...kiel*.
 " a whole = *enlute*; *sume*.
 " also = *kiel ankāŭ*.
 " early as possible = *kiel eble plej frue*.
 " far as = *ĝis*; *kiom*. As far as possible = *laŭeble*.
 " , , I know (remember) = *kiom mi scias* (*memoras*).

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- As far back (as long) as two years ago = *jam antaŭ du jaroj*.
 .. for = *pri* ; *rilate al* : *koncerne*.
 .. for example = *kiel ekzemple*.
 .. follows = *jene*.
 .. if = *karesaū* ; *kiel se*.
 .. if (it is) = *karesaū* (followed by indicative).
 .. if (it were) = *karesaū* (followed by conditional).
 .. it was (happened) = *kiel okazis*.
 .. long as = *tiel longi*, *kiel* : *se nur*.
 .. many (much) = *tiom*.
 .. many (much) as = *tiom, kiom*.
 .. regards = *pri* ; *konecne* ; *rilate al*.
 As...so = same...*kiel* : *kiel*...*tiel*.
 As soon as = *tuj kiam*.
 possible = *kiel eble plej haldaū*.
 .. though = *karesaū*.
 .. to = *pri* ; *rilate al*.
 .. well as = *kiel ankau* : *same kiel* ; *kune kun* ; *tiel bone*, *kiel*.
 .. yet = *jis nun* ; *jam* : *ankoraū*.
 Aside = *aparte* ; *flanke*.
 At = *ĉe* ; *je* ; *apud* ; *laŭ* ; *sur* : *po*, etc., according to sense.
 .. a distance = *malproksime* ; *en malproksimo*.
 .. gallop = *galope*.
 .. run = *kure* ; *kurante*.
 .. all = *tute*.
 events = *kio ajan okazos* : *en ĉia okazo*.
 times = *ĉiam* : *ĉiufoje*.
 .. any rate = *ĉiokaze* ; *almenaŭ*.
 time = *iatempe* (sometime) ; *intempe aja* ; *en ĉiu horo*.
 .. first = *unue* ; *komence* ; *en la komenco* ; *en la unua tempo* ;
unufoje : *unuon fojona*.
 sight = *unuarvide*.
 .. hand = *apud* ; *apude* ; *sub la mano* ; *proksime*.
 .. home = *hejme* ; *dome*, as :—*Mi estas hejme* = I am at home ;
 or, *mi estas dome*, or, *en la domo*.
 .. last, at length = *fine* ; *en la fino*.
 .. least = *almenaŭ* ; *malpleje* ; *plej malmulte*.
 .. most = *plej multe* ; *pleje*.
 .. once = *tuj* ; *samtempe*.
 .. option = *laŭrole* ; *laŭ elektro* ; *laŭ (via) bontrovo* ; *laŭ deziro*.
 .. our house = *ĉe ni* ; *en nia domo* ; *hejme*.
 .. present = *nun* ; *nune* ; *nuntempe*.
 .. some distance = *en kelkaj malproksim-o-eco*.
 .. that = *ĉe ti*.
 time = *tiam* ; *en tiu tempo*.
 .. the distance of = *en la interspaco de*.
 earliest = *la plej frue*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- At the latest = *la pliej malfrue*.
 „ „ least = *la pliej malnulte*.
 „ „ moment = *jus*; *en la momento*.
 „ „ most = *la pliej multe*.
 „ „ outset = *en la unua tempo*; *komence*.
 „ „ rate of = *po*.
 „ „ same time = *samtempe*.
 „ „ side of = *apud*; *flanke de*.
 „ „ this = *ĉe tio ĉi*.
 „ „ times = *iaſoje*; *kelkaſoje*.
 „ „ what time = *kiam*; *je kioma horo*.
 „ will = *laŭvolte*; *laŭplace*; *laŭdeziro*; *laŭ bontrovo*.
 Athwart = *laŭlarĝe*.
 Away = *malproksime*; *for*.
 „ from = *for de*; *malproksime de*.

B

- Backwards = *malantaŭ-e-en*.
 „ and forwards = *tien kaj reen*.
 Because = *ĉar*; *tial, ke*; *pro tio, ke*; *tiel, ĉar*.
 „ of = *pro*; *kaŭze de*.
 Before = *antaŭ*; *antaŭ ol*; *autaŭe*; *pli frue, ol*.
 „ everything = *antaŭ ĉio*.
 „ long = *baldaŭ*; *post ne longatempe*; *post ne longe*.
 Behind = *post*; *malantaŭ*; *malantaŭe*.
 Behold ! = *jen !*
 Below = *sub*; *sube*; *malsupre de*.
 Beneath = *sub*; *sube*.
 Beside = *apud*; *flanke de*; *laŭlonge de*.
 Besides = *ekster*; *krom*; *krom tio*; *krome*; *cetere*.
 „ that... = *krom tio, ke ..*
 Betimes = *frue*; *frutempe*.
 Between, betwixt = *inter*.
 Beyond = *trans* (across); *preter* (past).
 „ measure = *supermezuro*.
 Both = *ambaŭ*; *la ambaŭ*.
 Both...and = *kaj...kaj*; *tiel...kiel*.
 Broadways = *laŭlarĝe*.
 But = *sed*; *krom*; *nur* (only); *tamen*.
 „ then = *sed do*; *sed tiuokaze*; *sed tiuam*.
 By = *per*; *de*; *laŭ*; *po*; *apud*; *preter*; *apude*, etc., according to sense.
 By-and-by = *baldaŭ*; *tre baldaŭ*; *iom poste*.
 By all means = *per ĉinj rimedojo*; *certege*; *kompreneble*.
 By chance = *okaze*.
 „ consent = *konsente*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- By day = *tage* ; *en la tago*.
 .. degrees = *grado* ; *lāngrade* ; *iom post iom*.
 .. express = *rapidire* ; *per ekspreso*.
 .. half = *poluone*.
 .. heart = *prirkere*.
 .. means of = *per* ; *per helpo de*.
 .. night = *nokte* ; *en la nokto*.
 .. no means = *neniel* ; *tute ne* ; *per neniaj rimedojoj*.
 .. no other means = *neniel alie ol* ; *per neniaj aliuj rimedojoj*.
 .. reason of = *pro* ; *kauze de*.
 .. some means, somehow = *iel* ; *per iuj rimedojoj*.
 the day = *lāntage*.
 hour = *lānhour*.
 month = *lānumonate*.
 side of = *apud* ; *flanke de* ; *lāu* ; *lāudunge de*.
 way = *okaze* ; *pasante* ; *rilate al tio* ; *pasante mi volus diri*.
 week = *lātis; majne*.
 year = *lānjare*.
 .. this means = *per tio ĉi* ; *per tiu ĉi rimedo*.
 time = *jam de nun* ; *ankoraŭ* ; *nun*.
 .. twos and threes = *du-triope*.
 .. way of = *en la celo de*.

C

- Careful of = *zorga pri*
 Close by = *apud* ; *apude* ; *proksime*.
 .. to = *apud* ; *proksime de* ; *sempere apud*.
 Compared with = *kompares kun*.
 Concerning = *pri* ; *konecerne* ; *cilate al*.
 Consequently = *do* ; *sekre* ; *tiel* ; *konsekvenco*.

D

- Daily = *ĉiutage*.
 Day after (by) day = *tago(n) post tago*.
 to-morrow = *postmorgaŭ*.
 before yesterday = *antaŭhierau*.
 Despite = *spite*.
 Direct = *rekte* ; *sempere*.
 Directly = *tu* ; *baldaŭ* ; *tuj kiam*.
 Down = *malsupren*.
 .. to = *gis* (if down is implied by the context).
 Downwards = *malsupren*.
 During = *en* ; *en la daŭro de* ; *dum* ; or, the accusative.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

E

- Each one's = *čies*.
 Early = *frue*; *frua*; *unua*.
 Either = *aň*; *ambaň*; *nek mi ankaň* (nor I either).
 Either...or = *aň.. aň*.
 Else = *alie*; *aliu*; *se ne*.
 Elsewhere = *aliloke*; *aliloken*.
 Encore = *bis*.
 Enough = *sufiē*.
 Entirely = *tute*; *plenc*.
 Ere = *antaň*; *antuň ol*.
 Especially = *precipe*; *aparte*.
 " as = *precipe čar*.
 Even = *eč*; *mem*.
 " if = *eč se*; *en lu okazo, se*.
 Ever = *iam*; *ajn*; *čiam*.
 " since = *de tiu tempo*.
 Every = *čia*; *čiu*.
 " day = *čiutage*.
 " kind of (sort of) = *čia*; *činspeca*.
 " other = *čiu alia*.
 " " day = *čiudutage*.
 " quantity = *čiom*.
 " time when = *činsoje, kiam*; *čiun fojon, kiam*.
 " two days = *čiudutage*.
 Everyone's = *čies*.
 Everything = *čio*.
 " else but = *čio ulia, ol*.
 " " is = *čio alia (četru) estas*.
 Everywhere = *čie*; *čien*; *tutmonde*.
 Evidently = *videble*; *eridente*.
 Exactly = *guste*; *precize*; *akurate*.
 " the same as = *tute egale, kiel*.
 Exceedingly = *treege*.
 Except = *escepte de*; *krom*; *esceptinte*; *se ne*.
 Excepting = *esceptinte*.
 " that = *se ne, ke*; *esceptinte, ke*; *escepte, se*.
 Excessively = *treo*.
 Expressly = *speciale*; *guste*; *precize*.
 Extremely = *treege*; *ekstreme*.

F

- Facing = *kontraň*; *antaň*.
 Far from = *malproksime de*.
 " off = *malproksime*.
 Farther = *pli malproksime*; *plu*.
 Favourable to = *favora al*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- Few**=*ne multe da*; *malmulte da*; *malmultaj*.
 .. *a*=*kelke da*; *iom da*.
 .. *days ago*, *a*=*antaŭ kelkaj tagoj*; *antaŭ nemulte da tagoj*.
Finally=*fine*; *laste*; *en la fino*.
First-ly=*unue*; *komence*.
then=*unue...tiäm* (or, *due*).
 .. *of all*=*antaŭ ĉio*.
 .. *time, the*=*unuaj/oje*; *unuaj fojon*; *en la unua fojo*.
For=*por*; *por*: *pro*, etc., according to sense.
 .. *a long time*=*de longe*; *jam de longe*; *longan tempon*.
 .. *all reasons*=*ĉial*.
 *that*=*malgraŭ ĉio*; *spite ĉio*.
 .. *better or worse*=*por pli uñ malpli bone*.
 .. *ever*=*por ĉiam*.
 .. *evermore*=*je eterne*.
 .. *every reason*=*ĉial*.
 .. *example*=*ekzemplo*.
 .. *fear that*=*timante, ke*; *pro timo, ke*.
 .. *many reasons*=*pro multe da kaŭzoj*.
 .. *no cause*=*neniad*.
 *other cause than (but)*=*nenial atie, ol*.
 .. *some (any) cause (or, reason)*=*ial*.
 .. *such a purpose*=*tavale*; *en tia celo*.
 .. *that reason*=*tial*; *pro tio*; *kaŭze de tio*.
 .. *the benefit of*=*por*; *por la projito de*.
 *last time*=*por la lasta fojo*.
 *most part*=*plejparte*; *pleje*.
 *purpose of*=*por*; *en la celo de*.
 *reason that*=*pro tio, ke*; *tial, ke*.
 *rest*=*celere*.
 *sake of (owing to)*=*pro*; (with a view to) *por*.
 .. *the same purpose*=*samele*.
 *reason*=*similaĵo*.
 *this reason*=*tial*; *kaŭze de tio ĉi*.
 .. *want of*=*pro manko de*.
 .. *what reason*=*kial*; *pro kio*.
Formerly=*antaŭe*.
Fortnightly, (*ĉiu*) *dusemajne*; (*ĉiu*) *duonmonate*.
Forwards=*antaŭen*.
Frequently=*ofte*; *multipre*.
From=*de*; (in sense of "out of" = *el*); (cause = *pro*).
 .. *above*=*de supre*; *el supre*.
 .. *among, amongst*=*de inter*.
 .. *another cause*=*alikaŭze*.
 *quarter*=*de aliloke*; *de aliparte*.
 *day to day*=*tagon post tago*; *de tago al tago*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

From inside = *el interne*.

,, now = *de nun*.

,, outside = *el ekstere*; *de ekster (la domo)*.

,, the time when = *de la tempo*, *kiam*.

,, time to time = *de tempo al tempo*.

,, top to bottom = *de supro gis fundo*; *de supre malsupren*.

,, under = *de sub*.

,, within the = *de en la*; *el interne de lu*.

,, without the = *de ekster la*.

Full of = *plenum de* (or, *je*).

Further = *plie*; *plu*.

Furthermore = *plie*; *krom tio*.

G

Generally = *plejoste*; *generule*; *ordinare*; *kutime*.

Good-bye = *adiau*.

Good enough = *sufice bona*.

H

Half...half = *duone...duone*.

Hardly = *apenaū*; *preskaū ne*.

Hence = (cause) *tial*; *pro tio*; *kañze de tio*; (time) *de nun*; *post*; (place) *de tie ĉi*.

Henceforth = *de nun*.

Here = *jen*; *tie ĉi*; *ĉi tie*.

Here is (or, are) = *jen estas*.

Here and there = *tie ĉi kaj tie*; *tie aŭ aliloke*.

Hereafter = *de nun*; *estonte*.

Herewith = *per tio ĉi*; *tie ĉi aldonitu (enfermita)*; *ĉi kune*.

High up = *alte supre*.

Hither = *tien ĉi*; *ĉi tien*; *pli proksima*.

Hither and thither = *tien ĉi kaj tien*.

Hitherto = *gis nun*.

Hour by hour = *horo(n) post horo*.

Hourly = *ĉiu hore*.

How = *kiel*; *kiamaniere*.

,, long = *gis kiam*.

,, many (much) = *kiom*; *kiom da*.

However = *kiel ajn*; *tamen*.

,, little = *kiel ajn malmulte*.

,, many (much) = *kiom ajn*.

I

Identically = *idente*; *precize same*; *tute same*; *guste*.

If = *se*.

,, ever (at any time) = *se iam*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

If however = *se tamen*.

.. not = *se ne*.

.. only = *se nur*.

.. perchance = *se okaze*.

.. so = *se tiel*; *se tio estas*.

.. still = *se tamen*; *se ankoraŭ*.

.. then (therefore) = *se do*; *se tial*.

.. though = *se tamen*.

Immediately = *tuj*.

.. after = *tuj post*; *tuj post kiam*; *tuj poste*.
 .. when = *tuj kiam*.

In = *en*; *laŭ* : *post*, etc., according to sense

.. a few days = *post kelkaj* (or, *nemultaj*) tagoj.

.. .. weeks = *post kelkaj* (or, *nemultaj*) semajnoj.

.. .. words = *per kelkaj* (or, *nemultaj*) vortoj.

.. .. great measure = *grandamezure*.

.. .. little while = *post iom da tempo*; *post kelka (kelke da) tempo*; *post nelonge*.

.. .. short time = *post mallonga tempo*; *post nelonga tempo*.

.. .. word = *per unu vorto*.

.. .. accordance with = *laŭ*; *konforme al* (*je*); *en konsento kun*.

.. .. addition to = *aldone al*; *plie*; *krom*.

.. .. all cases = *ĉiuokaze*.

.. .. particulars = *ĉindetale*.

.. .. respects = *ĉiel*; *ĉiumaniere*; *en ĉiu rilatoj*.

.. .. sorts of ways = *ĉiel*; *ĉiumaniere*.

.. .. another manner, way = *alimaniere*.

.. .. answer to = *responde je*; *responde al*.

.. .. any case = *ĉiuokaze*; *ĉiusupoze*; *en ĉiu okazo*.

.. .. other way = *alie*; *alimaniere*; *alimaniere ajn*.

.. .. place = *cie*; (*ie*).

.. .. way = *ĉiel*; (*iel*).

.. .. bad condition = *malbonstate*.

.. .. breadth = *luarfarge*.

.. .. case = *en la okazo*, *se*; or, *se*.

.. .. of = *en okazo de*.

.. .. comparison with = *kompare kun*; *en komparo kun*.

.. .. conclusion = *fine*; *laste*; *finante*.

.. .. conformity with = *konfume kun* (or, *je*); *laŭ*.

.. .. consequence = *sekve*; *konskvenco*; *sekve (de tio)* (of that).

.. .. " of which = *sekve de kio*.

.. .. countenance (likeness) = *vizaĝo*.

.. .. " (unabashed) = *senhonte*.

.. .. course of = *en la daŭro* (*irado*) *de*.

.. .. " time = *en la daŭro de tempo*.

.. .. due course = *dece*; *sistempe*; *giatempe*; *gustatempe*.

.. .. effect = *en la efektiveco*; *efektire*; *laŭesence*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- In every case = *ĉiuokaze*.
 ,, every manner (or, way) = *ĉiel*; *ĉiumaniere*.
 ,, excess = *troe*.
 ,, fact = *efektive*; *fakte*; *ja*.
 ,, favor of = *por*.
 ,, form = *forme*.
 ,, front = *antaŭe*.
 ,, „ of = *antaŭ*.
 ,, good condition = *boustate*.
 ,, „ time = *gustatempe*.
 ,, harmony with = *harmonie kun*; *ayorde kun*; *interkonsente kun*; *konforme al*.
 ,, large quantities = *grandanombre*.
 ,, length = *laŭlonge*.
 ,, lieu of = *anstataŭ*.
 ,, my opinion = *miaopinie*; *laŭ mia opinio*.
 ,, no other way = *ne alie*; *per neniuj aliaj rimedoj*.
 ,, „ way, not in any way = *naniel*.
 ,, „ „ whatever = *tute naniel*; *naniel ujn*.
 ,, number = *nombre*.
 ,, order = *luuordo*; *laŭvice*.
 ,, „ that = *por ke*.
 ,, „ to = *por* (with infinitive).
 ,, other respects = *en aliaj rilatoj*.
 ,, other words = *alivorte*; *alidire*.
 ,, particular = *precipe*; *aparte*.
 ,, point of fact = *fakte*; *efektive*.
 ,, reality = *efektive*; *en realeco*.
 ,, regard to = *rilate al*: or, *rilate* (with accusative).
 ,, relation to = *rilate al*; to be in relation to = *riliati al*.
 ,, reply to = *responde je*; or, *responde ul*; *respondante*.
 ,, rotation = *rice*: *laŭrice*; *laŭ rico*.
 ,, shape = *forme*.
 ,, short = *mallonge*; *malmultarorte*.
 ,, so many words = *per tiom da vortoj*.
 ,, „ much = *tial*, *ke*; or, *tiom*, *ke*.
 ,, some cases = *en kelkaj okazoj*; or, *iukaze*.
 ,, „ degree = *gis ia grado*; *iagrade*; *iom*.
 ,, „ manner = *iamaniere*.
 ,, „ other way = *laŭ ia alia maniero*.
 ,, „ respects = *en kelkaj rilatoj*.
 ,, „ way = *iel*.
 ,, spite of = *spite*.
 ,, „ „ everything = *spite ĉio*.
 ,, succession = *rice*; *intersekve*.
 ,, such a case = *tiaokaze*; *en tia okazo*.
 ,, „ „ degree = *en tia grado*; *tiagrade*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- In such a manner = *tiamaniere* : *tiel*.
 " " " that = *tiamaniere, ke* : *tiel, ke*.
 " " manner (way) = *title* : *tiamaniere*.
 " that case = *tiukazē* ; *tiusupoze*.
 " way = *tiel* : *tiumaniere* : *tiel*.
 the afternoon = *posttagmeze*.
 " best way = *per la plej bona metodo*.
 " evening = *respoze* : *en la respero*.
 " event of = *se okaze* ; *en la okazo, se*.
 " former case = *en tiu okazo* ; *en la unua okazo*.
 " latter case = *en tiu ĉi okazo* ; *en la dua okazo*.
 " least = *la plej malmulte*.
 " main = *plej* ; *plejmulte* : *principie*.
 " meantime = *intertempe*.
 " midst = *meze de*.
 " morning = *matene* : *matenon* ; *en la mateno*.
 " proportion of = *po* : *proporcio je*.
 " same proportion = *samproporcio*.
 " " " way = *sammaniere* : *per la sama metodo*.
 " " " as = *tiel same, kiel*.
 " space of = *en la daŭro de* (time) ; *en la interspaco de* (distance).
 " this respect = *pri tio ĉi* ; *rilate al tio ĉi* ; *rilate tion ĉi*.
 " time = *gustatempe*.
 " turn = *rice* : *laŭrice* ; *laŭ rico*.
 " vain = *vane* ; *senfrukte*.
 " what manner (or, way) = *kiel*.
 " whatever manner = *kiel ajn*.
 " width = *laŭlarĝe*.
 Inasmuch as = *ĉar* ; *tiel, ke*.
 Incidentally = *okaze* ; *iom planke de tio*.
 Indeed = *ja* ; *efektive*.
 Inevitably, infallibly = *nepre*.
 Inside = *en* ; *interne de*.
 Inside out = *el interne* ; *kun la interna eksteren*.
 Insomuch as = *tiel, ke* ; *tiom, ke*.
 Instead of = *anstataŭ*.
 Internally = *interne*.
 Into = *en* (with accusative).
 Inwardly = *interne*.
 Is it not so ? = *ĉu ne vere* ? or, *ne vere* ? or, *ĉu ne* ?
 It is a pity = *estus domage*.
 " " so = *jes* ; *ja jes* ; *tiel estas*.
 " may be = *eble* ; *verŝajne*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

J

Jointly = *kune*.

- Just* = *jus*; *guste*; *tuj*; *nur*; *tute, same*, etc.
- „ *as* = *guste kiam* (time); *same kiel*; *guste kiel* (comparison).
- „ *as...so* = *same kiel...tiel*.
- „ *as if* = *tute kiel, se*; *tute krazaŭ*.
- „ *as well as* = *egale bone, kiel*.
- „ *in time* = *gustatempe*.
- „ „, *the same way as* = *tute tiel, kiel*; *tute same, kiel*.
- „ *now* = *tuj*; *unntempe*; *en la unua tempo*.

L

Last but one = *antaŭlasta*.

- „ *night* = *hieraŭ nokte*: *estintan nokton*; *en la estinta nokto*.
- „ *Tuesday* = *la lastan (pasintan) mardon*.
- „ „ *week* = *la unuālastan mardon*.
- „ *week* = *la lastan semajnon*.

Lastly = *fine*; *laste*.

Lately = *antaŭ ne longe*; *en la lasta tempo*.

Later on = *pli poste*.

Least = *malplej*.

Lengthways = *laŭlonge*.

Less = *malpli* (or, *pli* with a negative adjective).

Less and less = *malpli kaj multpli*.

Less...than = *malpli...ol*.

Lest = *timante ke*; *ke...ne*; *por ke...ne*.

Like = *kiel*; *simil-e-a al*; *krazaŭ*.

„ *that* = *tiel*; *tiele*; *tiamaniere*; *simil-e-a al tio (tiu)*.

Likewise = *ankaŭ*; *simile*.

Little, a = *iom (da)*; *ne multe (da)*; *malmulte (da)*.

Little by little = *iom post iom*.

Long = *longe*.

„ *ago (since)* = *de longe*; *or, jam de longe*.

„ *time* = *longe*.

„ „, *afterwards* = *longatempe poste*.

M

Many, many a = *multe da*.

„ *more of them* = *multe pli multe da ili*.

„ *times* = *multfoje*.

Meantime, meanwhile = *dume*; *en la intertempo*; *atendante tiun tagon*.

Merely = *nure*; *pure*; *nur*; *sole*.

Moment ago, a = *antaŭ momento*; *jus*.

Monthly = *ciu monate*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

- More**=*pli* : *pli multe* : *ankoraŭ* : *plu* (further). More (of something)=*pli da*.
More and more=*pli kaj pli*.
More or less=*pli aŭ malpli* : or, *pli-malpli*.
More...than=*pli...ol.*
Moreover=*plie* ; *krom tio*.
Most=*plej* ; *pleje* : *la plej granda nombro (da)* ; *la plejmulto (da)*.
Most often=*plejofte* : *pleje*.
Mostly=*plej* ; *pleje* : *la plej multe*.
Much=*multo* ; *multe da*.
 .. more=*multe pli multe* ; *multe pli*.

N

- Namely**=*nome* : *tio estas*, or, i.e.
Nay=*ne*.
Near (to)=*apud* : *proksimi (de)* ; *proksime*.
Nearest, the=*la plej proksima*.
Nearly=*preskaŭ*.
Neither=*nek*.
Neither, nor=*nek...nek*.
Never=*neniam*.
 .. mind=*ne ĝenu vin* : *ne (estas) grava* : *nenio grava*.
Nevertheless=*tamen*.
Next=*apuda* : *proksima* : *sekranta* : *bahlaña*.
 .. day=*la morgaŭan (sekeantan, sekrontan) tagon* ; *en la sekranta tago*.
 .. Sunday=*la proksiman dimanicon*.
 .. time=*la proksiman fojon, kiam* : *kiam denove*.
 .. week=*la proksiman semajnon* : *en la proksima semajno*.
Night after night=*nokto(n) post nokto*.
Nightly=*ĉiunokte* : *nokta* (adj.).
No=*ne*.
 .. doubt=*nedube* ; *sendube*.
 .. farther (further)=*ne plu*.
 .. longer=*jam ne* ; *ne plu*.
 .. matter=*ne malhelpas*.
 (whether)=*tute egale (en)*.
 .. more than=*ne pli, ol* ; *ne pli multe, ol*.
 .. one's=*nenies*.
 .. one else=*neni alia*.
 .. quantity=*neniom*.
 .. sooner than=*tuj kiam* : *tuj post kiam*.
 .. use=*sennite* : *senutila*.
Nobody's=*nenies*.
Nohow=*neniel*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

None = *neniom*.

Nor = *nek*.

Nor...also (either) (too) = *nek...ankaň*.

Not = *ne*.

„ altogether (entirely) = *ne tute*.

„ any = *neniom*; *ne...iom*.

„ at all = *tute ne*; *neniell*.

„ in the least = *neniell*; *tute ne*.

„ long ago (since) = *antaň nelonge*; *antaň nelonga tempo*.

„ „ afterwards = *ne longe poste*; *post nelonge*.

„ many (much) = *nemulte (da)*.

„ more than = *ne pli, ol*.

„ only = *ne nur*; *ne sole*.

„ till after that = *ne pli frue, ol post tio*.

„ yet = *aukorauň ne*; *ne gis nun*.

Nothing = *neno*.

„ at all = *neniom*.

„ more = *neno pli*.

Notwithstanding = *tamen*; *malgraň*.

„ all that = *malgraň čio*.

„ that = *malgraň ke*.

Now = *nun*; *nune*.

Now...now = *jen..jen*.

Now and then = *iafoje*; *okaze*.

Nowadays = *nuntempe*.

Nowhere, not anywhere = *nenie*.

o

Of = *da*; *de*; *el*; *en*; *inter*; *pri*, etc., according to sense.

„ course = *komprenable*.

„ late = *en la lasta tempo*; *de mallonga tempo*.

Off = *for de*; *de*.

Often = *ofte*; *multfoje*.

On = *de*; *en*; *por*; *sur*, etc., according to sense.

„ account of = *kaňze de*; *pro*.

„ arrival = *alvenante*; *alveninte*.

„ behalf of...*por*; *por la profitō de*.

„ condition that = *kondiče, ke*; *or, kuu la kondičo, ke*.

„ consideration = *konsiderinte*; *pripensinte*.

„ every occasion = *en čiu okazo*; *čiuokaze*.

„ first thoughts = *ekpensinte*.

„ (for) hire = *luebla*; *luata*.

„ loan = *prunte*.

„ my account = *por mi* (for my sake); *pro mi* (because of me).

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

On my part = *mia flanke* : *de mia flanko*.

.. no account = *neval*.

.. one's own account = *pro (por) si mem*.

.. purpose = *intencie*.

.. sale = *vendata* : *vendebla*.

.. second thoughts = *post plua konsiderado*.

.. that = *či tio*.

.. that account = *pro tio* : *tial*.

.. the contrary = *kontraŭe* : *male* ; *inverse*.

.. .. day = *en la tago* ; *la tagon*.

.. .. other hand = *aliflanke* : *aliparte*.

.. side of = *trans* : *aliflanke de*.

.. .. supposition = *supozite*.

.. .. part of = *flanke de*.

.. .. way = *en (sur) la vojo* ; *survoje*.

.. .. whole = *entute*.

.. this = *či tio ĉi*.

.. .. account = *pro tio ĉi*.

Once = *foje* : *iam* (sometime), *unufoje* (once) : *unu fojon* (one time, on one occasion).

.. a week = *unu fojon en semajno*.

.. again = *denore* ; *ankoraŭ unu fojon*.

.. for all = *unufoje por ĉiam* : *unu fojon por ĉiam*.

.. in a way = *por unu fojo* ; *okaze*.

.. more = *bis* ; *denore* ; *ree* ; *ankoraŭ unufoje (unu fojon)*.

.. upon a time = *iam* ; *foje*.

.. when = *foje kiam*.

One = *unu*.

.. after another = *unu post (la) alia*.

.. and the other = *ambaa* : *la ambaa*.

.. another = *unu la alian* ; *sin reciproke*.

.. at a time = *unuope*.

.. by one = *unu post unu*.

.. day = *iam* ; *en unu tago* ; *foje* ; *unu tagon*.

.. .. when = *foje kiam* ; *tagon kiam* ; *en unu tago, kiam*.

.. .. or other of them = *tiu ĝu alia el ili*.

.. .. to another = *unu al alia*.

Only = *nur* ; *sed* (but) ; *sole* ; *sola*.

Opposite to = *kontraŭ*.

Or = *aŭ* ; *alie*.

Other = *alia*.

.. .. kinds = *alispocoj* ; *or, aliaj specoj*.

.. .. than = *krom* ; *alia ol*.

Others, the = *la aliaj* ; *(the rest remaining = la ceteraj)*.

Otherwise = *alie* ; *se ne* ; *alimuniere* ; *en alia okazo*.

Out of = *el*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

Out of date = *malnormoda*; *ne luň modo*; *ne luňmoda*.

„ „ order = *malorda*; *malordigita*; *nevice*.

„ „ place = *ne ġustaloke*.

„ „ print = *elrendita* (sold out); *elčerpita* (exhausted).

Outside = *ekster*; *ekstere de*.

Over = *super*; *pli ol*.

„ against = *kontraň*.

„ and above = *pli ol*; *troe*.

Overlooking = *kontraň*; *rigurduante sur*.

Owing to = *kuňze de*; *pro*; *dunk'ul*; *šuldatu ul*; *pere*; *per la pero de*.

P

Particular = *aparta*; *speciula*.

Particularly = *precipe*; *aparte*.

Per, see "A."

Possibly = *eble*.

Post free = *afrankite*; *afranke*.

Precisely = *juste*; *precize*.

„ the same as = *tute same*, *kiel*.

Presently = *baldaň*; *tuj*; *post iom da tempo*.

Probably = *kredeble*; *verštjue*; *probable*.

Promptly = *rapide*; *tuj*; *akurate*; *buldaňe*.

Provided that = *se nur*; *supozite*; *koudiče*, *ke*.

Putting aside the question = *lasante flanke la demandon*.

Q

Quite = *tute*.

„ at home = *tute hejme*; *komforta*.

„ right = *tute prava*; *tute ġusta*.

R

Rarely = *malofte*.

Rather = *plivole*; *prefere*. *Mi preferis pli, ke...ol* = I preferred rather that...than.

Readily = *volonte*; *preteme*; *facile*.

Recently = *antaň nelonge*; *freše*.

Regarding, respecting, re = *pri*; *rilate at*.

Relative to = *rilate al*; *pri*.

Rest, the (those remaining) = *la ceteraj*.

Right through = *trae*; *tute tra*; *tra la tutu*.

Round = *čirkaň*; *ronde*.

Round about = *čirkaue*; *čirkaüen*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

S

Save, saving = *krom*.

" one = *čvora unu*.

Scarcely = *apenau*.

Secondly = *due*.

Seeing that = *tial, ke*; *vibunte, ke*; *konsiderinte, ke*.

Seldom = *maloſte*.

Self, selves = *mem*; *si*; *sia*.

Several = *diversaj*; *kelkaj*.

" times = *kelkaju ſojon*; *diversjoje*.

Short time, a = *mallongatempa*.

" " .. afterwards = *mallongatempa poste*.

" " .. ago = *antaū nelonge*.

Shortly = *mallonge*; *baldaue*; *lakone*; *abrupte*.

" afterwards = *iom poste*.

Since = *čar*; *tial, ke*; *pro tio, ke*; *de*; *de la tempo, kiam*;

" *de kiam*; *de tiām*; *de tiū tempo*.

" then = *de tiū tempo*; *d. tiām*; *de post*.

Spite of = *spite*.

So = *ial*; *tiel*; *tiāmaniere*,

" and so = *ta kaj tia*.

" as to = *por ke*; *tiel, ke*; *tiāmaniere, ke*.

" far as = *gis*. So far, so good = *gis tiū*, bone.

" many (much) = *tiom*.

" many (much) that = *tiom, ke*.

" much so = *tiel*; *tiom*.

" " so that = *tiel, ke*; *tiom, ke*.

" " the better = *des pli bone*; *tiom pli bone*.

" " more = *tiom pli*.

" " worse = *des pli malbone*; *tiom pli malbone*.

" that = *por ke*; *tiāmaniere, ke*; *tiel, ke*.

So to say = *tiel diri*.

Some = *iom*; *kelke*; *kelke da*; *kelkaj*; *unuj*; *inj*; *iaj*.

" days ago = *antaū kelkaj tagoj*.

" manner = *iel*.

" of = *iom da*; *kelke da*.

" one's = *ies*.

Some...or other = *tiā.. aū alia*.

" other = *iu alia*; *iu alia*.

" quantity = *tiom*.

" time = *itempa*; *iam venos la tempo*.

" time ago = *antaū kelkatempo*.

" way = *iel*.

Somebody, some one = *in*.

" else = *in alia*.

Somebody's = *ies*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- Somehow = *iel* ; *iamaniere*.
 „ in that way = *iel tiel*.
 Something = *io*.
 „ else = *io alia*.
 „ of that kind = *io tinspeca*.
 Sometime = *iam*.
 Sometimes = *kolkaſoje*.
 Sometimes...at other times = *jen...jen*.
 Somewhat = *iom*.
 „ later = *iom poste*.
 Somewhere = *ie*.
 Soon = *baldaň*.
 Soon afterwards = *baldaň poste*.
 Sooner or later = *pli aŭ m-ol pli baldaň* ; *baldaň aŭ pli poste*
 „ than = *pli frue*, *ol* (time) ; *plirole ol* (rather than).
 Specially = *aparte* ; *precipe* ; *speciale*.
 Still = *ankoraŭ* ; *nun ankoraŭ* ; *tamen*.
 Subsequently = *plue* ; *poste*.
 Such = *tia* ; *tiaj*.
 „ (a one), the like = *tiela* ; *tielaj*.
 „ a one's = *ties*.
 „ and such = *tia kaj tia* ; *tin kaj tin*.
 „ as = *tia*, *kia* ; *tia*, *kiel*.
 „ being the case = *en tin okazo*.
 „ that = *tia*, *ke*.
 Suddenly = *subite*.
 Suffice it to say = *sufiĉas diri*.
 Suppose = *supozile*.
 Supposing that = *supozinte*, *ke*.
 Surely = *certe* ; *nepre*.

T

- Taking into consideration that = *konsiderante ke* ; *ne forge-sante ke*.
 Than = *ol*.
 Thanks to (your advice) = *dank' al* (*ria konsilo*).
 That = *ke*.
 „ is = (t.e.) *tio estas* ; *or, nome*.
 „ „ the reason = *jen kial* ; *jen (estas) la kaŭzo* ; *tio estas la kaŭzo*.
 „ „ why = *tio estas*, *kial* ; *jen kial*.
 „ one's = *ties*.
 The day after (following), the next day = *la morgaŭan* (*proksiman, sekantan*) *tagon*.
 „ „ „ to-morrow = *postmorgaŭ*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

- The day before yesterday = *antaūhieraň*; *la antaūhieraňan tagon*.
- " .. but one after = *la duan tagon poste*.
- " less...the less = *ju malpli..des malpli*.
- " less...the more = *ju malpli..des pli*.
- " more...the less = *ju pli ..des malpli*.
- " more...the more = *ju pli..des pli*.
- " more so, as (that) = *des pli tid, ēar (ke)*.
- " sooner the better = *ju pli baldaň (frue) des pli bone*.
- " time will come when = *renos iam la tempo, kiam*.
- Then = *do* : *tiam* : or, *tiam, kiam* ; *poste* ; *tiuokaze*.
- Then, when = *tiam, kiam*.
- Thence = *tien* ; *de tie* ; *el tie*.
- There = *tie* : *tien*.
- " and back again = *tien kuj reen*.
- Thereabouts = *pli aň malpli* ; *pli-malpli*.
- Therefore = *tial* : *sekre* ; *do*.
- Thereupon = *post tio* ; *sekre de tio*.
- Thither = *tien*.
- This afternoon = *hodiaň posttagmeze*.
- " day week = *hodiaň postsemajne*.
- " evening = *hodiaň respere*.
- " moment = *jus*.
- " morning = *hodiaň matene*.
- Though = *krankam*.
- Through = *per* ; *pro* ; *tra*, etc., according to sense.
- Throughout = *tute tra*.
- Thus = *tiel*.
- " for example = *tiel ekzemple*.
- Till = *jis* ; or, *jis kiam*.
- Time after time = *fojo(n) post fojo* ; *foje kaj ree*.
- To = *al* ; *ēe* ; *jis* ; *kun* ; *por*, etc., according to sense.
- " a great extent = *grandamezure*.
- " and fro = *tien kaj reen*.
- " my surprise = *miasurprise*.
- " no purpose = *seneſike* ; *vane*.
- " no place = *nienien*.
- " some extent = *iom* ; *en ia amplekso*.
- " that effect = *en (laň) tiu senco*.
- " the effect that = *tiel, ke* ; *por ke*.
- " " end that = *por ke*.
- " " full extent = *en tuta amplekso*.
- " " left = *maldekstren*.
- " " right = *dekstren*.
- " " same extent = *samamplekse* ; *laň sama grudo*.
- " what extent = *luň kia mezuro*.
- " wit = *nome* ; *tio estas*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

To-day = *hodiaū*.

Together = *kune*.

„ with = *kune kun*; *kun*.

To-morrow = *morgaū*.

„ afternoon = *morgaū postlagmeze*.

„ evening = *morgaū vespere*; or, *morgaū nokte*.

„ morning = *morgaū matene*.

To-night = *hodiaū nokte*.

Too = *ankauū*; *tro*.

„ much = *tro*.

„ many, much (of) = *tro da*.

Touching = *pri*; *tušante*; *rilute* ad.

Towards = *al*; *kontraū*.

Truly = *vere*.

Twice = *dufoje*.

„ a day = *du fojojn en unu tago*; *dufoje ciatage*.

„ as large (much) = *duoble pli granda* (*multa*).

U

Ultimately = *laste*, *fine*: *en la fino*.

Under = *sub*; *sube*.

„ any (all) circumstances = *čiaokaze*.

„ consideration = *konsiderata*.

„ no circumstances = *neniel*; *neniaokaze*.

„ some circumstances = *iel*; *iaokaze*.

„ such circumstances = *tiaokaze*.

„ these circumstances = *tiuokaze*.

Unless = *escepte se*; *esceptinte, ke; se ..ne*.

Until = *gis*; *gis kiam*; *gis la tempo*, *kium*; *tiel longe*, *gis*.

„ late at night = *gis profunda nokto*.

„ now = *gisnune*; *gis nun*.

„ then = *gis tiām*; *gis tiu tempo*.

Up = *supre*; *supren*.

„ and down = *tien kaj reen*.

„ to = *gis* (if *up* is implied by the context).

„ „ date = *gishodiaū-e-a*; *progresema*.

„ „ now = *gisnune*.

„ „ then (that time) = *gis tiām*; *gistiama* (adj.).

„ „ this = *gisnune*.

Upon = *sur*. ('To depend) upon = (*dependi*) *de*.

„ that = *ēe tio*.

„ the whole = *entute*.

„ this = *ēe tio ēi*.

„ which = *ēe kio*.

Upside down = *supre malsupren*; *renversite*; *la fundo supren*.

Upstairs = *supre*; *supren*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

Upwards = *supren*,
 „ „ of = *pli, ol*.

Utterly = *tute* : *tutegē*.

V

Verily = *vere*.

Very = *tre*,

„ seldom = *tre malojc*.

„ soon = *tre baldaū*.

Vice versa = *kontraūe* : *inverse*.

Virtually = *praktike* ; *laūintence*.

W

Weekly = *čiu...majue*.

Well = *bone* ; *nu!*

Well-nigh = *pre-koū*.

What = *kio* ; *kia*,

„ else = *kia alia* ; *kio alia*.

„ is to be done ? = *kion jarī?*

„ matters it ? = *kio grara ĝi estas?*

Whatever = *kia ajn*.

„ quantity = *kiom ajn*.

When = *kiam* ; or, *tiam*, *kiām*.

Whence = *de kie* : or, *el kie*.

Whencesoever = *de kie ajn* ; or, *el kie ajn*.

Whenever, whensoever = *kiam ajn* ; *čiufoje kiam* ; *čiu fojon kiam*.

Where = *kie* ; *kien*.

Whereas = *kiam efektive* ; *rilate al kio* ; *ear* ; *dume*.

Whereby = *per kio*.

Wherefore = *kial*.

Wherever, wheresoever = *kie ajn* ; *kien ajn*.

Wherein = *en kio*.

Whereof = *pri kio* ; *pri kiu* ; *el kio*.

Whereupon = *pro kio* ; *sekre de kio* ; *tuj post kio*.

Whether = *ĉu*.

Whether...or = *ĉu... aŭ*.

Whether...whether = *ĉu...ĉu*.

Which = *kio* ; *kiu*.

„ of the two = *kiu el (la) ambaū*.

Whichever, whoever = *kiu ajn*.

While, whilst = *dum* ; *kiam efektive*.

Whither = *kien*.

Whithersoever = *kien ajn*.

Whose = *kiek*.

Why = *kial* ; *pro kio* ; *por kio*.

Willingly = *volonte*.

USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

With = *kun* ; *per* ; *če* ; *el*, etc., according to sense.
,, a view to = *por ke* ; *en la celo de*.
,, advantage = *profite* ; *utile*.
,, difficulty = *malfacile*.
,, reference (regard, respect) to = *rilate al* ; or, *pri*.
,, that object = *tiucele*.
,, the exception of = *escepte de*.
,, „ intention = *intencante* ; *por*.

Within = *en* ; *interne*.

Without = *ekster* ; *krom* ; *sen* ; *ekstere* ; etc., according to sense.
,, any cause, reason = *sen ia kaŭzo* ; *sen kia ajan kaŭzo* ;
 nenial.
,, „ exception = *sen ia escepto* ; *tule senescepte*.
,, cause, reason = *senkaŭze* ; *neniu*.
,, comparison = *senkompare*.
,, contradiction = *senkontraŭdire*.
,, doubt = *sendube*.
,, exception = *senescepte*.

Word for word = *luŭvorte*.

Y

Year by year = *jaro(n) post jaro*.

Yearly = *ciujare*.

Yes = *jes*.

Yesterday = *hieraŭ*.

„ afternoon = *hieraŭ posttagmeze*.
„ evening = *hieraŭ vespere*.
„ morning = *hieraŭ matene*.

Yet = *ankoraŭ* ; *tamen*.

Yonder = *tie* ; *tien*.

HINTS TO LEARNERS.

HINTS TO LEARNERS.

These hints are principally for learners teaching themselves. Follow the advice of your instructor, if you have a good one.

(1). First study carefully the pronunciation (paras. 5—19).

(2). Learn, in the following order, Grammatical Terminations (para. 53); Suffixes and Prefixes (paras. 54, 55); Pronouns (paras. 126, 131); List of Prepositions (page 174); Correlative Words (para. 147); List of Primary Words (page 321); Use of the Accusative (paras. 65—68).

(3). Read *aloud* daily some portion of the "Krestomatio," and Exercises on pages 248—304.

(4). Translate daily some portion of the "Krestomatio," or Kabe's "Unua Legolibro," into English, and then back into Esperanto, and compare. At first, translate the Esperanto fairly literally, so as to get a good idea of the usual order of words in Esperanto, and where it differs from English in construction. Afterwards translate into fluent English, and then back into Esperanto.

(5). Get readiness of expression by constantly asking yourself aloud questions, and then replying to them; by saying in Esperanto what you see when walking out, what you are doing, etc., as, "Now I must go to bed," "It is time to get up," "I must cross the street," "I wonder who lives there," etc.

(6). Read anecdotes in the "Krestomatio," or in Kabe's "Unua Legolibro," and then try and repeat them, as if you were telling them to someone. Keep on repeating an anecdote until you can tell it as

HINTS TO LEARNERS.

fluently in Esperanto as in English, but not necessarily in the exact words of the book.

(7). In writing, say aloud the sentences as you write them. Your ear will then often prevent errors.

(8). Write your diary in Esperanto.

(9). Read the *best* authors, and mark in pencil any words or phrases which strike you as useful to remember. Write these in a notebook for future reference.

(10). Don't slavishly copy in your style any particular author. Note the good points in each, and remember that what is not easily understood is not good style, however correct it may be grammatically.

(11). After about a week's study, look out for recruits and teach them what you have learnt. In teaching others you teach yourself.

(12). When you read your daily newspaper, translate aloud a few sentences; that will give you facility of expression in many subjects.

(13). Always bear in mind the following:—

(a). Every letter and syllable is pronounced (para. 16).

(b). Do not clip or drag the vowels (paras. 8—10).

(c). The tonic accent is always on the last syllable but one (para. 17).

(d). Do not use the *compound* forms of verbs in the *active* voice unless necessary for the sense (paras. 167—170, 222—226).

(e). Remember that each preposition in Esperanto, except *je*, has a fixed meaning (paras. 250, 251).

(f). Note carefully the use of the accusative case (66—68).

(g). Avoid conundrums in the shape of long compound words of three or more different roots. A sentence in Esperanto is not a riddle !

INDEX.

	PARAS.
ACCUSATIVE CASE	65—69
(1). <i>To show direct object</i>	66
After participles	66 (b)
,, transitive verbs	66 (a)
When a verb is omitted in exclamations ..	66 (c)
(2). <i>To show motion towards</i>	67
Adverbs	67 (b)
Direction	67 (a)
(3). <i>To show preposition omitted</i>	68
After doubtful verbs	68 (a)
Denoting duration of time	68 (b)
,, price, weight, etc.	68 (c)
(4). <i>General remarks on</i>	69
Nouns and pronouns in apposition ..	69 (c)
Proper names „ „ ..	69 (d)
Qualifying and predicative adjectives... ..	69 (a)
,, adverbs	69 (b)
Use of with adjectives	108
,, „ nouns	109
,, „ „ prepositions	256
,, „ „ proper names	69 (d)
,, „ when ellipsis occurs	105
,, „ in reply to questions	64 (a)
ADJECTIVES	107—114
Classes of	108
Comparison of	112
Degree of intensity of, how shown ..	114

INDEX.

PARAS.

ADJETIVES (*continued*).

Numeral adjectives	116
Participial	111, 209 (b)
not used when they have form of					
their own	213
Place of	84
Predicative	108 (b)
place of	77
Qualifying	36, 108 (a)
Rules as to case of	108, 110
Superlative	113
Use, in place of apostrophe	106 (c)
in compound words	106 (c)
When adverbs are used for	245, 269 (a)
used in a possessive sense	106 (c)

ADVERBS

...	238—248
Adverbial participles and accusative	66 (b)
Classes of	242
Comparative and superlative	248
List of	248 (b)
No influence over case	243
Numeral adverbs	117
Of quantity followed by <i>da</i>	246
Participial	209 (c), 245 (a)
Place of	87, 88, 241
Use of expressions <i>pli aū malpli</i> , etc.	246 (a)
Remarks on, and the accusative	247
When participles take the form of	245 (a)
When they take the place of preposition and complement	244, 252
When used for adjectives	245, 269 (a)

AFFIRMATION

...	63—64
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-------

ARTICLE

...	96—102
Before numeral adjectives	101
proper names	99 (b)
Cases of optional use	101 (a)
Does not vary	97
Instead of possessive pronoun	100
Use of	98
Use, when omitted in English, etc.	99

CAPITAL LETTERS, Use of

...	70
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	----

INDEX.

	PARAS.
COMPLEMENT :—	
Circumstantial	32, 80
Direct	29, 30, 66, 78
Indirect	31, 79
.. accusative for	251, 253
.. adverb for	239, 252
COMPOUND WORDS , definition of	39 (<i>c</i>)
Order of component parts	46—48
When composed of complete words ...	49
CONJUNCTIONS	262—268
Connect same cases	266
Co-ordinating	264
Diversity of case after, due to ellipsis ...	105, 266
List of	268 (<i>a</i>)
Place of	90
Some, in English are also adverbs and prepositions	268
Sometimes omitted	267
Subordinating	265
CONVERSATION	Pages 311—315
CORRELATIVE WORDS	139—158
Demonstrative	143, 144
Interrogative and relative	145
Meaning of initial and terminal letters ...	141
Parts of speech of	140
Series ending in -A 149, -E 152, -O 155	
-AL 150, -EL 153, -OM 156	
-AM 151, -ES 154, -U 157	
CORRESPONDENCE	Pages 316—320
Titles and addresses	283
DEFINITIONS	37—39
ELISION	56, 57
ELLIPSIS . Its influence on case ...	105
Of verb	58 (<i>a</i>), 64 (<i>a</i>), 237 (<i>m</i>)
EXERCISES AND TRANSLATIONS ...	Pages 248—304
FOREIGN WORDS	39 (<i>d</i>), 52
FORMATION OF WORDS	40—50
Changes of English spelling in the ...	52
Classes of words	39
Definitions	37—39

INDEX.

	PARAS.
FORMATION OF WORDS (<i>continued</i>).	
Foreign words	52
Grammatical terminations explained ...	42
Idea conveyed by the root	50
List of grammatical terminations ...	53
,, „ prefixes	55
,, „ suffixes	54
Roots, definition of	38
When full words are compounded ...	49
GRAMMATICAL TERMINATIONS	42
List of	53
Of verbs	160
What they show	42
GRAMMAR AND COMMENTARY	94—290
Parts of Speech	95
Adjectives	107—114
Adverbs	238—248
Article	96—102
Conjunctions	262—268
Interjections	269
Nouns	103—106
Prepositions	249—261
Pronouns	125—157
Verbs	159—237
Rules of	94
HINTS TO LEARNERS	Page 349
INTERJECTIONS AND EXCLAMATIONS ...	269
<i>Fi</i> as a prefix	269 (b)
INTERROGATION	58
Examples of	64, 170
Place of Interrogative	91
MODS OF VERBS	171—202
Conjunctions have no influence over ...	171, 263
Different from English	171
How to determine	172
Conditional	190—194
,, after conjunction <i>se</i>	193
,, to soften an expression	194
,, use of	192
Imperative	195—202
,, after <i>por ke</i>	201
,, use of	197—200

INDEX.

	PARAS.
Moods of Verbs (<i>continued</i>).	
Indicative ...	186—189
,, use of ...	188
,, when obligatory ...	189
Infinitive ...	173—185
.. as a noun ...	181
.. place of ...	82
.. prepositions that can be used with ...	177
.. use of ...	180
.. .. suffix <i>-ebla</i> for the ...	183, 275 (c)
.. used for the gerund ...	182
.. participle or other mood ...	184, 185
.. used generally without a preposition ...	176
.. what it expresses ...	175
.. when another mood is used for ...	183
MoSTO, use of ...	283
NEGATION ...	59—62
Double negative ...	60
Negative questions and replies ...	64, 170
Place of negative ...	92
NOMSS ...	103—106
Case, nominative or accusative ...	105, 109
Declension of ...	104
Elision of final O ...	56, 57
Formed from participles ...	209 (a), 210 (a)
Infinitive used as ...	180
Numeral nouns ...	118
Place of ...	83
Possessive case ...	106
,, .. adjective used for ...	106 (c)
Predicative ...	35, 109
Proper names, form of accusative ...	69 (d)
NUMERALS ...	115—124
Cardinal ...	115
Collective ...	121
Distributive ...	123
Fractional ...	120
Multiple ...	119
Ordinal ...	116—118
Reiterative ...	122
Substantive ...	118
Use of <i>unu</i> ...	115 (f)
,, .. suffixes <i>-IGI</i> and <i>-IGI</i> with ...	280 (j)

INDEX.

	PARAB.
OBJECT	28, 75
ORDER OF WORDS	73—93
Almost any position	73, 74
For emphasis	76
Place of circumstantial complement ...	80
" " direct and indirect complements ...	78, 79
" " infinitive	82
" " interrogative	91
" " negative... ...	92
" " predicate	77
" " subject and object ...	75
" " the different parts of speech... ...	83—90
Very similar to English... ...	93
PARTICIPLES	203—213
Agree in case and number with nouns, etc. ...	207
" but adverbial, are invariable ...	209 (c)
" predicative, agree only in number ...	209 (b)
Can be used as adjectives, adverbs, and nouns	208—210
Govern the accusative in active voice... ...	66 (b), 208
How prepositions are rendered with a participle	212
Infinitive used for, in English... ...	185
" " " " Esperanto ...	184
Not to be used for adjectives that have a form of their own	213
Participial adverbs, when used ...	245 (a)
Passive, not used with suffix -IGI ...	280 (g)
Place of	87
Terminations of	203, 204
Use of -ata, -ila, -ota ...	233—236
PARTS OF SPEECH	95
PHRASES	Pages 305—310
POSSESSION	106
PREDICATE	24, 33
PREFIXES	286—290
Definition of	44
List of	55
Order of, in a word ...	45
Remarks on BO- 286, EK- 288,	NE- 289
DE- 287, FOR- 287,	PRA- 286
DIS- 287, GE- 286,	RE- 290
DUON- 286, MAL- 289,	SEN- 289

INDEX.

	PARAS.
PREPOSITIONS	249—261
Adverbs for	252
" with	258
As prefixes	254
Classes of	259
Definition of	249
Denoting movement	257
English <i>at, by, for, from, in, of, on, to, with,</i> <i>how rendered</i> 261 (a)—(i)
Govern the nominative	255
Indefinite <i>je</i>	251
List of	259
Place of	89
Prepositional expressions	258
Relation of, to complement	259
Signification of	250
Sometimes omitted	106 (d), 233
When accusative of direction may follow ...	256
When omitted, accusative shows this ...	68, 258
PRIMARY WORDS	51
Conversion of, into other parts of speech ...	51
Definition of	39 (a)
List of	Pages 321—326
PRONOUNS	125—157
Classes of	125
Correlative words, some are	140
Demonstrative	143
Interrogative and relative	145
Personal	126
" with <i>al</i> , for possessive ...	134 (a)
Place of	85
Possessive	130—138
" article, used instead of ...	100
" as a term of affection ...	133
" use of <i>sia, lia</i> , etc. ...	135
" when omitted ...	134
" with or without article ...	132
Reflexive <i>si</i>	128
When <i>gi</i> may be omitted ...	129, 164
PRONUNCIATION	5—19
PUNCTUATION	71, 72
QUESTIONS (affirmation, negation) ...	58—64
" replies to, when accusative is used ...	64 (a)

INDEX.

	PARAS.
RULES OF GRAMMAR 94
SUFFIXES ...	270—285
List of 54
Object of 43
Order of, in a word 46
Remarks on -AÇ- 270, -EJ- 278, -IND- 275 -AJ- 270(1), -EM- 275, -ING- 278 -AJ- 271, -ER- 273, -IST- 272 -AN- 272, -ESTR- 272, -NJ- 274 -AR- 273, -ET- 277, -OBL- 284 -CJ- 274, -IL- 279, -ON- 284 -EBL- 275, -IG- 280, -OP- 284 -EC- 271, -IG- 280, -UJ- 278 -EDZ- 276, -IL- 281, -UL- 272 -EG- 277, -IN- 282, -UM- 285	
Use of -IGI, -IGI with numerals, prepositions, etc. 280 (j)
SYNTAX ...	20—36
Complement, direct 29, 30
,, circumstantial 32
,, indirect 31
Object 28
Predicate 24, 33
Proposition 22
Subject 23, 25, 26
,, omitted 27
TENSES ...	214—236
Action, commencement of, shown by <i>ek</i> 216 (b)
,, continuation of, „ „ „ <i>ad</i> 216 (a)
,, soon to happen, „ „ „ <i>tuj</i> 225, 229
,, just happened, „ „ „ <i>jus</i> 225
Emphatic form of, expressed by <i>ja</i> 217
Future 227—232
,, compound form 230
,, for the present or subjunctive 232
Names of 215
Passive voice 233—236
„ „ „ use of -ATA, -ITA, -OTA 236
Past, simple 223
,, compound 224
Pluperfect 226
Present, simple 218
,, compound 222
,, use of, for the past or future 219—221
Use of <i>jam antaüe</i> for compound forms	... 226 (a)

INDEX.

	PARAS.
TIME OF DAY, to express	124
VERBS	159—237
Auxiliary, <i>esti</i>	163, 234
Compound forms rarely used in <i>active</i> voice	
...	167, 195, 222—226
Conjugations	167—170
" active verb	168
" compound forms	169
" <i>esti</i>	167
" reflexive	170
Duration of action of	216, 225, 229
Ellipsis of	58 (a), 64 (a), 237 (m)
Emphatic English form, "do," "did," how to express	217
English verbs. How to translate "do," "get," "can," and "could," "may and might," "must and ought," "shall and will," "should and would"	237 (<i>j—p</i>)
Grammatical terminations of	160
Impersonal use of	164
Intransitive	162
Meaning of compound tenses	169
Moods of	171—202
Omitted in questions and replies ...	58 (a), 64 (a)
Participles	203—213
" of suffix -IGI, used only in active voice	280 (<i>g</i>)
Place of	86
Reflexive	165
" conjugation of	170
Tenses of	214—236
Transitive	161
" govern accusative	68 (a), 161 (a)
Use of <i>deri</i> , <i>kuši</i> , <i>koni</i> , <i>scii</i> , <i>lasi</i> , <i>pesi</i> , <i>pezi</i> , <i>povi</i> , <i>sidi</i> , <i>sin trori</i>	237 (<i>a—h</i>)
Use of <i>česi</i> , <i>daūri</i> , <i>pasi</i> ...	} 237 (<i>i</i>), 280 (<i>h</i>) (<i>i</i>)
" <i>fini</i> , <i>komenci</i> ...	}
" <i>jam antaūe</i> for compound tenses and forms	226 (a)
VOCABULARIES :—	
List of primary words	Pages 321—326
Useful words and expressions ...	Pages 327—348
WORDS. <i>See</i> Formation of and Compound Words.	

The British Esperanto Association

(INCORPORATED)
(BRITA ESPERANTISTA ASOCIO).

Founded 14th October, 1904.

Hon. President—DR. L. L. ZAMENHOF.
President—JOHN POLLON, C.I.E., LL.D., Lt.-Col. B.V.R. (R.), V.D.

Vice-Presidents—

C. E. COWPER, F.B.E.A.	H. BOLINGBROKE MUDIE.
MAJOR-GEN. G. COX, B.A., F.B.E.A.	REV. J. C. RUST, M.A.
H. F. HÖVELER.	W. T. STEAD.
PROF. J. E. B. MAYOR, D.C.L., D.D.	J. M. WARDEN, F.B.E.A.

Secretary—HARALD CLEGG.

OFFICE OF THE ASSOCIATION, where all communications should be addressed
MUSEUM STATION BUILDINGS, 133-6, HIGH HOLBORN, LONDON, W.C.

THE British Esperanto Association is the Union of Esperanto Societies throughout the Empire, and has been established to promote in every way the spread of the "International Auxiliary Language, Esperanto," especially by—

- (a). Promoting the formation of new Local Groups;
- (b). Distributing information and publishing propaganda literature;
- (c). Organising Examinations and granting Certificates of Proficiency;
- (d). Promoting Lectures and arranging loans of Literature, etc.;
- (e). Making arrangements for Congresses at home and abroad;

and to maintain headquarters in London where all Esperantists may obtain information and assistance in their work.

A list of Groups affiliated to the B.E.A. can be obtained from the Secretary post free.

There are two Examinations of Proficiency: Preliminary and Advanced. Both may be taken by Correspondence. Full particulars of the Examinations can be obtained from the Secretary free.

The Subscription for "Members" is 5s. per annum, which includes a free copy monthly of **THE BRITISH ESPERANTIST**. "Fellows" are elected by the Council after they have passed the Advanced Examination or have qualified by having rendered some special service to the cause of Esperanto.

The Association is greatly in need of a large addition to the number of SUBSCRIBING MEMBERS, in order to carry on efficiently and energetically propaganda work which has been so successfully begun. Members have privilege of purchasing Esperanto Publications sold by the B.E.A. and take lessons by correspondence at reduced prices.

THE BRITISH ESPERANTIST,

with which is incorporated "THE ESPERANTIST."

THE OFFICIAL JOURNAL OF THE BRITISH ESPERANTO ASSOCIATION.

Monthly, 3d.: Yearly Subscription, Post free 3s.

FREE TO MEMBERS OF THE ASSOCIATION.

THE BRITISH ESPERANTIST is printed in Esperanto and English, and besides the Official Records of the Association, contains Reports of Interest from Local Groups, Articles on the Grammar of the Language, Original and Translated Literary Matter in Esperanto, Reviews, Correspondence, Foreign News, and is indispensable to every English Student of Esperanto.

Members of the B.E.A. have the privilege of inserting their names and addresses free of charge in the column inviting Foreign Correspondence.

It is hoped that every Esperantist in the country will support the cause by subscribing to the B.E.A.

PUBLISHED BY

The British Esperanto Association (Incpd.), 133-6, High Holborn, 1

-8. JUN. 1995

20. FEB. 1996



C3 2934 01405 3674

499.9925
C877G 1914

COX, GEORGE, 1838-1909
A GRAMMAR AND
COMMENTARY ON THE
INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGE
014053674 (95155)

GEN

